



# HDCVI DVR

## User's Manual



# Foreword

## General






This user's manual (hereinafter referred to be "the Manual") introduces the functions and operations of the DVR devices (hereinafter referred to be "the Device").

## Models

DHI-XVR5108HS-4K  
DHI-XVR5116H-4KL  
DHI-XVR5216AN-4KL  
DHI-XVR5116HS-S2  
DHI-XVR5116H-S2  
DHI-XVR5216AN-S2  
DHI-XVR5232AN-S2  
DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL  
DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL  
DHI-XVR7416L-4KL  
DHI-XVR7816S-4KL

## Safety Instructions

The following signal words might appear in the manual.

Signal Words	Meaning
 DANGER	Indicates a high potential hazard which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 WARNING	Indicates a medium or low potential hazard which, if not avoided, could result in slight or moderate injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates a potential risk which, if not avoided, could result in property damage, data loss, reductions in performance, or unpredictable results.
 TIPS	Provides methods to help you solve a problem or save time.
 NOTE	Provides additional information as a supplement to the text.

## Revision History

Version	Revision Content	Release Time
V1.1.0	Added DHI-XVR5116H-S2, DHI-XVR5216AN-S2, DHI-XVR5232AN-S2, DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL, DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL, DHI-XVR7416L-4KL, and DHI-XVR7816S-4KL.	August 2021
V1.0.0	First release.	July 2021

## Privacy Protection Notice

As the device user or data controller, you might collect the personal data of others such as their face, fingerprints, and car plate number. You need to be in compliance with your local privacy protection laws and regulations to protect the legitimate rights and interests of other people by implementing measures which include but are not limited: Providing clear and visible identification to inform people of the existence of the surveillance area and provide required contact information.

## About the Manual

- The manual is for reference only. Slight differences might be found between the manual and the product.
- We are not liable for losses incurred due to operating the product in ways that are not in compliance with the manual.
- The manual will be updated according to the latest laws and regulations of related jurisdictions. For detailed information, see the paper user's manual, use our CD-ROM, scan the QR code or visit our official website. The manual is for reference only. Slight differences might be found between the electronic version and the paper version.
- All designs and software are subject to change without prior written notice. Product updates might result in some differences appearing between the actual product and the manual. Please contact customer service for the latest program and supplementary documentation.
- There might be errors in the print or deviations in the description of the functions, operations and technical data. If there is any doubt or dispute, we reserve the right of final explanation.
- Upgrade the reader software or try other mainstream reader software if the manual (in PDF format) cannot be opened.
- All trademarks, registered trademarks and company names in the manual are properties of their respective owners.
- Please visit our website, contact the supplier or customer service if any problems occur while using the device.
- If there is any uncertainty or controversy, we reserve the right of final explanation.

# Important Safeguards and Warnings

The following description is the correct application method of the device. Read the manual carefully before use to prevent danger and property loss. Strictly conform to the manual during application and keep it properly after reading.

## Operating Requirements

- Install the PoE front-end device indoors.
- The device does not support wall mount.
- Do not place and install the device in an area exposed to direct sunlight or near heat generating device.
- Do not install the device in a humid, dusty or fuliginous area.
- Keep its horizontal installation, or install it at stable places, and prevent it from falling.
- Do not drip or splash liquids onto the device; do not put on the device anything filled with liquids, in order to prevent liquids from flowing into the device.
- Install the device at well-ventilated places; do not block its ventilation opening.
- Use the device only within rated input and output range.
- Do not dismantle the device arbitrarily.
- Transport, use and store the device within allowed humidity and temperature range.

## Power Requirements

- Use the designated battery type. Otherwise there might be explosion risk.
- Use batteries according to requirements. Otherwise, it might result in fire, explosion or burning risks of batteries!
- When replacing batteries, use the same type of batteries.
- Dispose the exhausted batteries according to the instructions.
- Use electric wires (power wires) recommended by this area and within its rated specification.
- Use standard power adapter matched with this device. Otherwise, the user shall undertake resulting personnel injuries or device damages.
- The power supply must conform to the requirements of ES1 in IEC 62368-1 standard and be no higher than PS2. Note that the power supply requirements are subject to the device label.
- Products with category I structure shall be connected to grid power output socket, which is equipped with protective grounding.
- Appliance coupler is a disconnecting device. During normal use, please keep an angle that facilitates operation.



# Table of Contents

Foreword.....	I
Important Safeguards and Warnings.....	III
<b>1 Introduction.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Overview .....	1
1.2 Functions.....	1
<b>2 Getting Started .....</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1 Checking the Components .....	3
2.2 Installing HDD .....	3
2.2.1 DHI-XVR5108HS-4KL/DHI-XVR5116H-4KL/DHI-XVR5116HS-S2/DHI-XVR5116H-S2/DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL/DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL .....	3
2.2.2 DHI-XVR5216AN-4KL/DHI-XVR5216AN-S2/DHI-XVR5232AN-S2.....	5
2.2.3 DHI-XVR7416L-4KL .....	8
2.2.4 DHI-XVR7816S-4KL.....	10
<b>3 The Grand Tour .....</b>	<b>14</b>
3.1 Front Panel.....	14
3.1.1 DHI-XVR5108HS-4KL/DHI-XVR5116H-4KL/DHI-XVR5116HS-S2/DHI-XVR5116H-S2/DHI-XVR5216AN-S2 .....	14
3.1.2 DHI-XVR5216AN-4KL/DHI-XVR5232AN-S2.....	14
3.1.3 DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL/DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL.....	15
3.1.4 DHI-XVR7416L-4KL .....	15
3.1.5 DHI-XVR7816S-4KL.....	16
3.2 Rear Panel .....	16
3.2.1 DHI-XVR5108HS-4KL/DHI-XVR5116HS-S2 .....	16
3.2.2 DHI-XVR5116H-4KL .....	17
3.2.3 DHI-XVR5216AN-4KL .....	18
3.2.4 DHI-XVR5116H-S2.....	20
3.2.5 DHI-XVR5216AN-S2/DHI-XVR5232AN-S2 .....	21
3.2.6 DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL/DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL.....	22
3.2.7 DHI-XVR7416L-4KL .....	23
3.2.8 DHI-XVR7816S-4KL.....	25
3.3 Remote Control Operations .....	27
3.4 Mouse Operations .....	28
<b>4 Connection .....</b>	<b>30</b>
4.1 Typical Connection Diagram.....	30
4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output.....	31
4.2.1 Video Input .....	31
4.2.2 Video Output .....	31
4.2.3 Audio Input .....	32
4.2.4 Audio Output .....	32
4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output.....	32
4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port.....	33
4.3.2 Alarm Input .....	33

---

4.3.3 Alarm Output .....	34
4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters .....	34
4.4 Connecting to RS-485 Port .....	35
4.5 Replacing Battery .....	35
<b>5 Local Configurations .....</b>	<b>36</b>
5.1 Initial Settings .....	36
5.1.1 Booting up .....	36
5.1.2 Initializing the Device .....	36
5.1.3 Resetting Password .....	40
5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard .....	45
5.2 Live View .....	62
5.2.1 Live View Screen .....	63
5.2.2 Live View Control Bar .....	64
5.2.3 Navigation Bar .....	67
5.2.4 Shortcut Menu .....	68
5.2.5 Color Setting .....	70
5.2.6 Live View Display .....	72
5.2.7 Configuring Tour Settings .....	77
5.3 Entering Main Menu .....	80
5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras .....	82
5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings .....	82
5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel .....	84
5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions .....	86
5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions .....	88
5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu .....	90
5.5 Configuring Camera Settings .....	91
5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings .....	91
5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings .....	94
5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings .....	95
5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings .....	96
5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings .....	97
5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type .....	98
5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera .....	99
5.6 Configuring Remote Devices .....	100
5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices .....	100
5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices .....	113
5.7 Configuring Record Settings .....	117
5.7.1 Enabling Record Control .....	117
5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule .....	118
5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings .....	118
5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger .....	118
5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule .....	123
5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP .....	123
5.9 Playing Back Video .....	124
5.9.1 Enabling Record Control .....	124

---

5.9.2 Instant Playback .....	125
5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback.....	125
5.9.4 Smart Search.....	130
5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video.....	131
5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots.....	133
5.9.7 Playing Back Splices .....	134
5.9.8 Using the File List .....	134
5.10 Alarm Events Settings.....	136
5.10.1 Video Detection .....	136
5.10.2 IVS Function.....	145
5.10.3 Face Detection.....	158
5.10.4 System Events.....	161
5.10.5 Alarm Input Settings.....	167
5.10.6 Alarm Output Settings .....	174
5.11 IoT Function .....	177
5.11.1 Configuring Sensor Settings .....	177
5.11.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera.....	185
5.11.3 Configuring Wireless Siren.....	196
5.12 Configuring POS Settings.....	197
5.12.1 Searching the Transaction Records .....	197
5.12.2 Configuring POS Settings.....	198
5.13 Configuring Backup Settings .....	199
5.13.1 Finding USB Device .....	199
5.13.2 Backing up Files .....	200
5.14 Network Management .....	201
5.14.1 Configuring Network Settings.....	201
5.14.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings .....	216
5.15 Configuring Account Settings .....	221
5.15.1 Configuring User Account.....	221
5.15.2 Configuring Group Account.....	227
5.15.3 Configuring ONVIF Users.....	231
5.16 Audio Management.....	232
5.16.1 Configuring Audio Files.....	232
5.16.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files .....	234
5.17 Storage Management.....	236
5.17.1 Configuring Basic Settings.....	236
5.17.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule .....	237
5.17.3 Configuring HDD Manager.....	237
5.17.4 Configuring HDD Group .....	238
5.17.5 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings .....	240
5.17.6 Configuring Quota Settings .....	245
5.17.7 Configuring Record Estimate.....	246
5.17.8 Configuring FTP Storage Settings.....	248
5.18 Configuring System Settings.....	250
5.18.1 Configuring General System Settings.....	250

5.18.2 Configuring RS-232 Port Settings.....	252
5.18.3 Configuring Security Settings.....	254
5.18.4 Configuring System Maintenance Settings.....	255
5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings .....	256
5.18.6 Restoring Default Settings.....	258
5.18.7 Upgrading the Device .....	259
5.19 Viewing Information.....	262
5.19.1 Viewing Version Details .....	262
5.19.2 Viewing Log Information .....	263
5.19.3 Viewing Event Information .....	265
5.19.4 Viewing Network Information .....	266
5.19.5 Viewing HDD Information .....	268
5.19.6 Viewing Device Status .....	269
5.19.7 Viewing Channel Information.....	270
5.19.8 Viewing Data Stream Information.....	271
5.20 Logout the Device .....	272
<b>6 Web Operations .....</b>	<b>273</b>
6.1 Connecting to Network .....	273
6.2 Logging in to the Web.....	273
6.3 Resetting Password .....	274
6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu.....	277
<b>7 FAQ .....</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>Appendix 1 Glossary .....</b>	<b>285</b>
<b>Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation.....</b>	<b>287</b>
<b>Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices.....</b>	<b>289</b>
Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list.....	289
Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list.....	290
Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list .....	290
Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List.....	290
Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List.....	291
Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List .....	291
<b>Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List.....</b>	<b>296</b>
<b>Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List.....</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher.....</b>	<b>298</b>
<b>Appendix 7 Earthing .....</b>	<b>299</b>
Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge.....	299
Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes .....	300
Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System.....	301
Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter.....	302
<b>Appendix 8 RJ45-RS232 Connection Cable Definition.....</b>	<b>305</b>
<b>Appendix 9 Cybersecurity Recommendations .....</b>	<b>307</b>

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Overview

The Device is an excellent digital monitor product for security industry. The embedded LINUX OS assures the stable operation. The H.264 and G.711 technologies assure the high quality image and low bit stream. The frame-by-frame play function displays more details for analysis, and provides the functions such as record, playback, and monitor and assures the synchronization for audio and video. The Device also adopts the advanced control technology and great network data transmission capability.

The Device adopts embedded design to achieve high security and reliability. It can work in the local end and, with strong networking capability it can get connected to the professional surveillance software (Smart PSS) to form a security network to show its powerful remote monitoring function.

The Device is applicable to the areas such as bank, telecom, electricity, traffic, intelligent residential district, factory, warehouse, resources, and water conservancy facilities.

## 1.2 Functions



The functions might be different depending on the software and hardware version of the model you purchased.

### Real-time Surveillance

- Support VGA port and HDMI port to realize the surveillance through monitors.
- Support HDMI, VGA, and TV output at the same time.

### IoT Management

Provide specific management module for IoT features including humidity and temperature data reports and alarms linkage.

### Sensor Integration

Integrate coaxial cameras with diverse array of sensors such as temperature, humidity and wireless alarm devices.

### Storage Management

- Special data format to guarantee data security and avoid the risk of modifying data viciously.
- Support digital watermark.

### Compression Format

Support multiple-channel audio and video signal. An independent hardware decodes the audio and video signal from each channel to maintain video and audio synchronization.

**Backup Function**

- Support backup operation through USB port (such as USB storage disk, portable HDD, and burner).
- Client-end user can download the file from local HDD through network to backup.

**Record & Playback**

- Support each channel real-time record independently, and simultaneously support the functions such as search, backward play, network monitor, record search, and download.
- Support various playback modes: slow play, fast play, backward play and frame by frame play.
- Support time title overlay so that you can view event accurate occurred time.
- Support zooming in the selected area in the live view.

**Network Operation**

Support network remote real-time monitor, remote record search and remote PTZ control.

**Alarm Activation**

- Several relay alarm outputs to realize alarm activation and on-site light control.
- The alarm input port and output port have the protection circuit to guarantee the Device safety.

**Communication Port**

- RS-485 port can realize alarm input and PTZ control.
- RS232 port can connect to keyboard, COM port of PC or the matrix control.
- Standard Ethernet port can realize network remote access function.
- The dual-network port has the multiple-address, fault tolerance, load balance setup mode.

**PTZ Control**

Support PTZ decoder through RS-485 port.

**Intelligent Operation**

- Support mouse operation function.
- Support "copy and paste" function for the same settings.

**UPnP (Universal Plug and Play)**

Establish mapping connection between LAN and WAN through UPnP protocol.

**Camera Self-adaptive**


Auto-recognize and work with the PAL or NTSC camera and HD camera.

## 2 Getting Started

### 2.1 Checking the Components

When you receive the Device, please check against the following checking list. If any of the items are missing or damaged, contact the local retailer or after-sales engineer immediately.

Table 2-1 Checking list

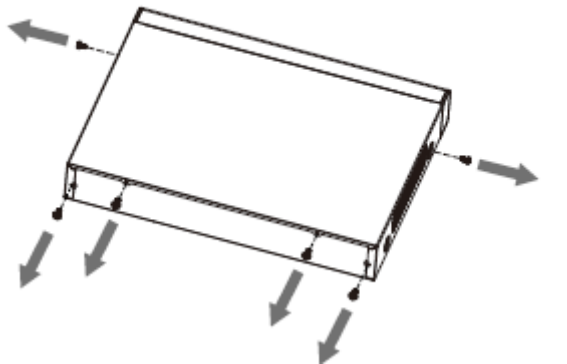
Sequence	Checking items		Requirement
1	Package	Appearance	No obvious damage.
		Packing materials	No broken or distorted positions that could be caused by hit.
2	Labels	Labels on the device	<p>Not torn up.  </p> <p>Do not tear up or throw away the labels; otherwise the warranty services are not ensured. You need to provide the serial number of the product when you call the after-sales service.</p>
3	Device	Appearance	No obvious damage.
		Data cables, power cables, fan cables, mainboard	No connection loose.

### 2.2 Installing HDD

#### 2.2.1 DHI-XVR5108HS-4KL/DHI-XVR5116H-4KL/DHI-XVR5116HS-S2/DHI-XVR5116H-S2/DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL/DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL

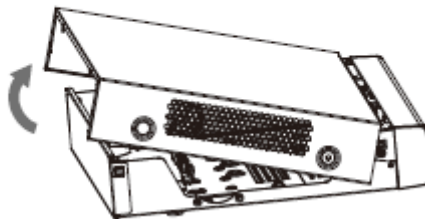
Step 1 Loosen the screws of the upper cover and side panel.

Figure 2-1 Loosen screws



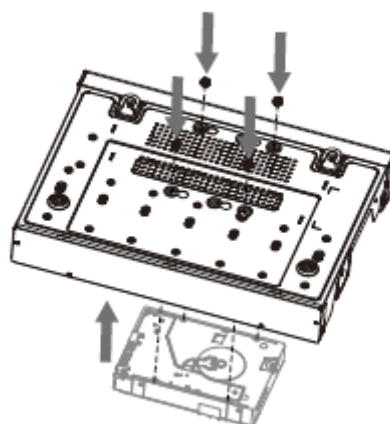
**Step 2** Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow as shown in the figure below.

Figure 2-2 Remove cover



**Step 3** Turn over the device, and align the HDD to the four holes of bottom panel, and then fix the HDD with screws.

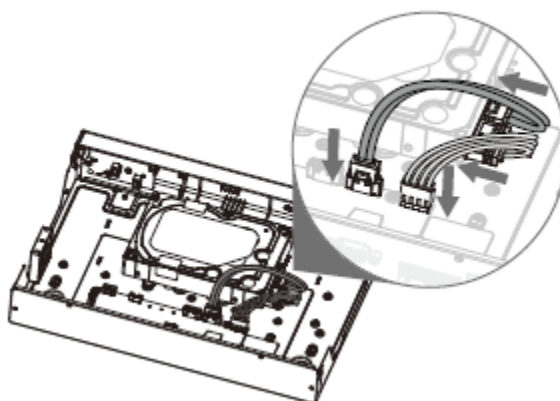
Figure 2-3 Fix HDD



**Step 4** Connect HDD to the device using data cable and power cable.

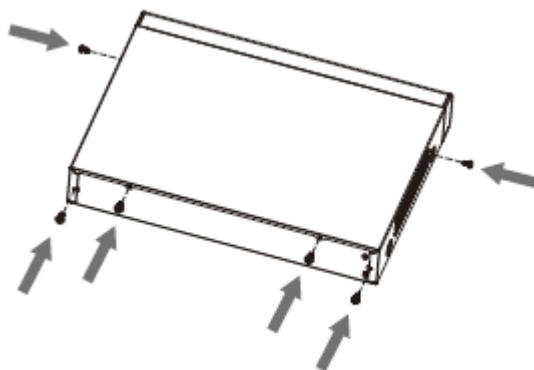


Figure 2-4 Connect cables



**Step 5** Put the cover in accordance with the clip and then fix the screws on the rear panel and side panel.

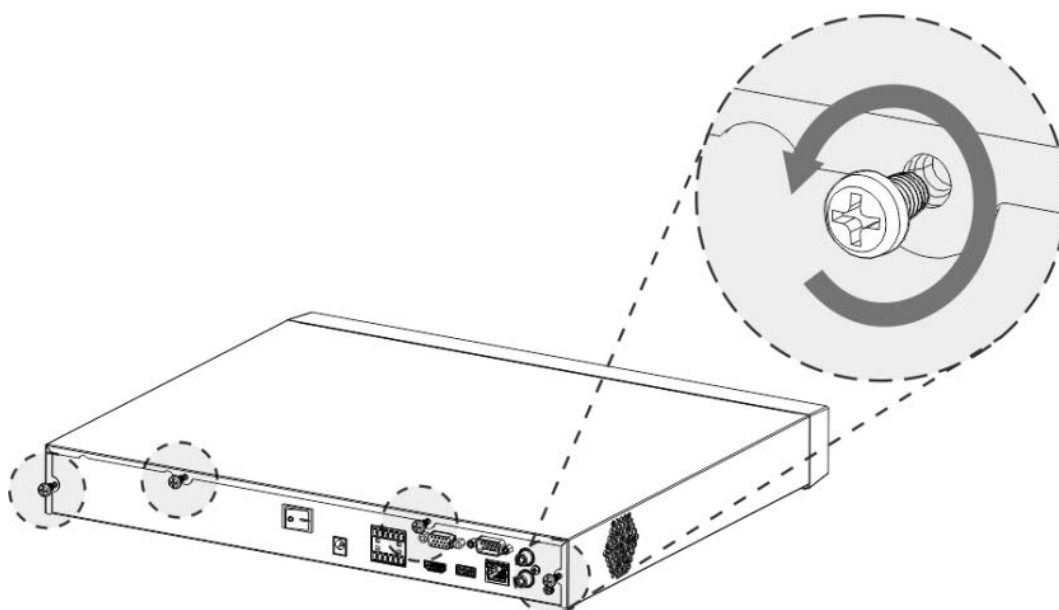
Figure 2-5 Fix screws



## 2.2.2 DHI-XVR5216AN-4KL/DHI-XVR5216AN-S2/DHI-XVR5232AN-S2

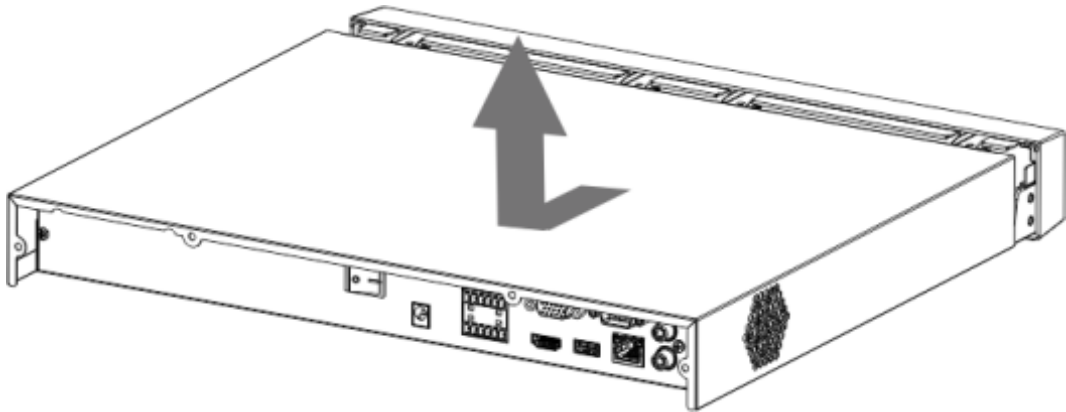
**Step 1** Remove the four fixing screws on the rear panel.

Figure 2-6 Remove screws



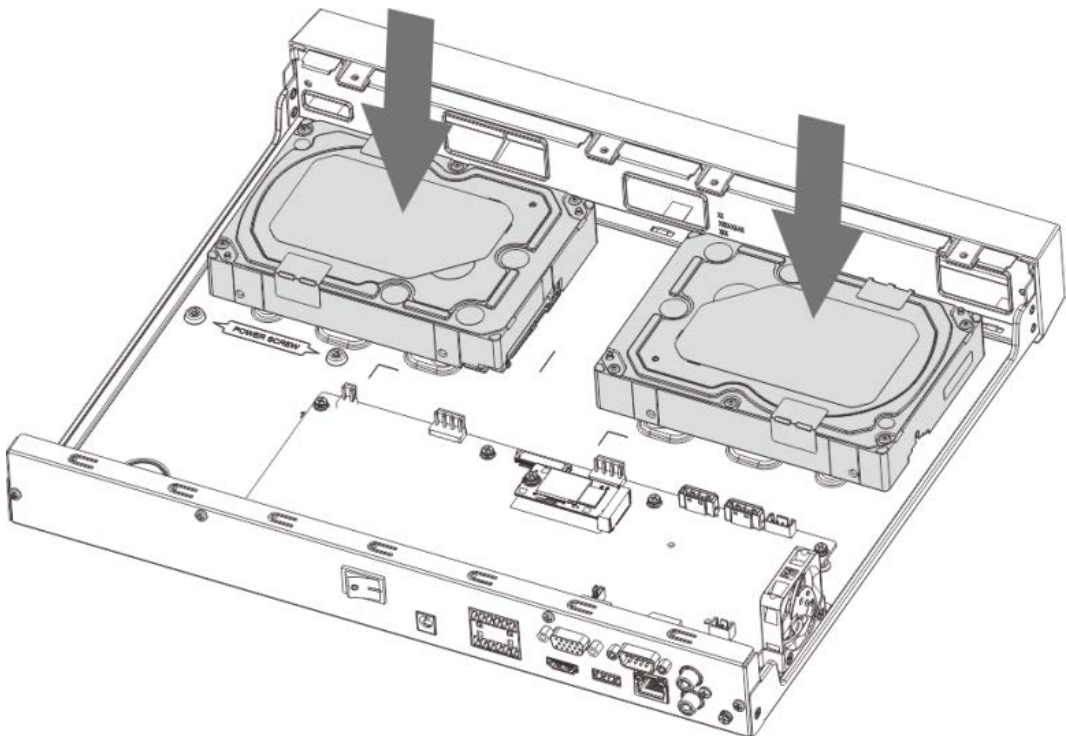
**Step 2** Remove the case cover along the direction shown in the following arrow.

Figure 2-7 Remove cover



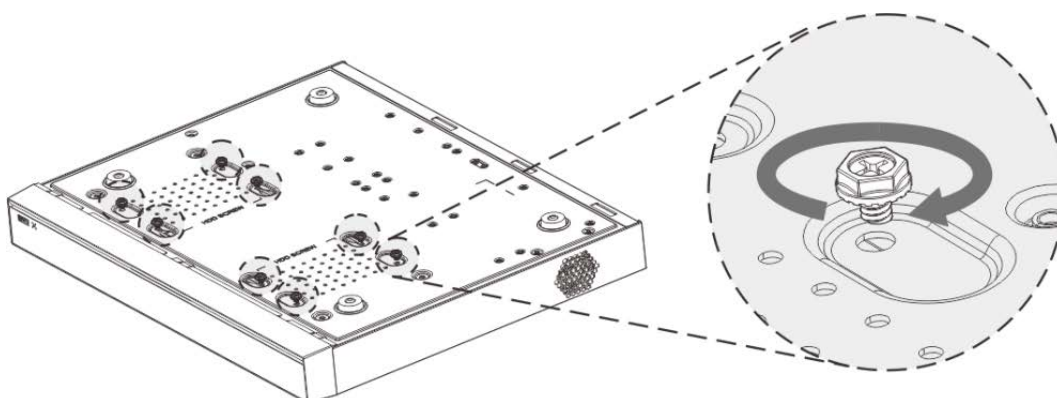
**Step 3** Match the four holes on the baseboard to place the HDD.

Figure 2-8 Place HDD



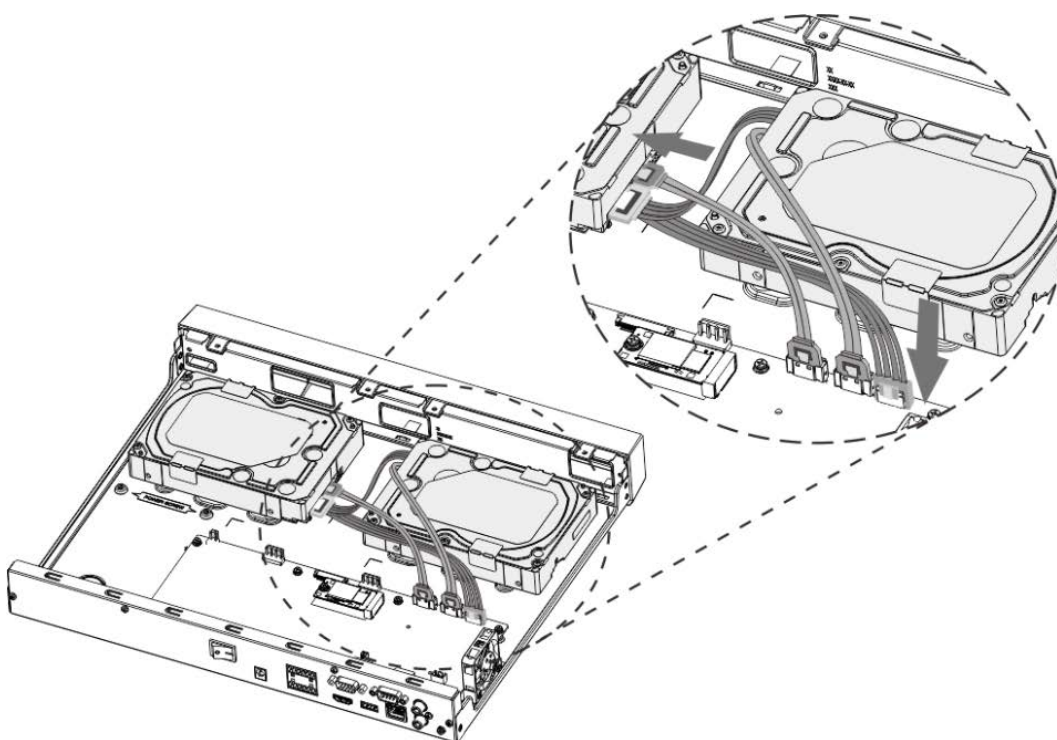
**Step 4** Turn the device upside down, match the screws with the holes on the HDD and then fasten them. The HDD is fixed to the baseboard.

Figure 2-9 Fix HDD



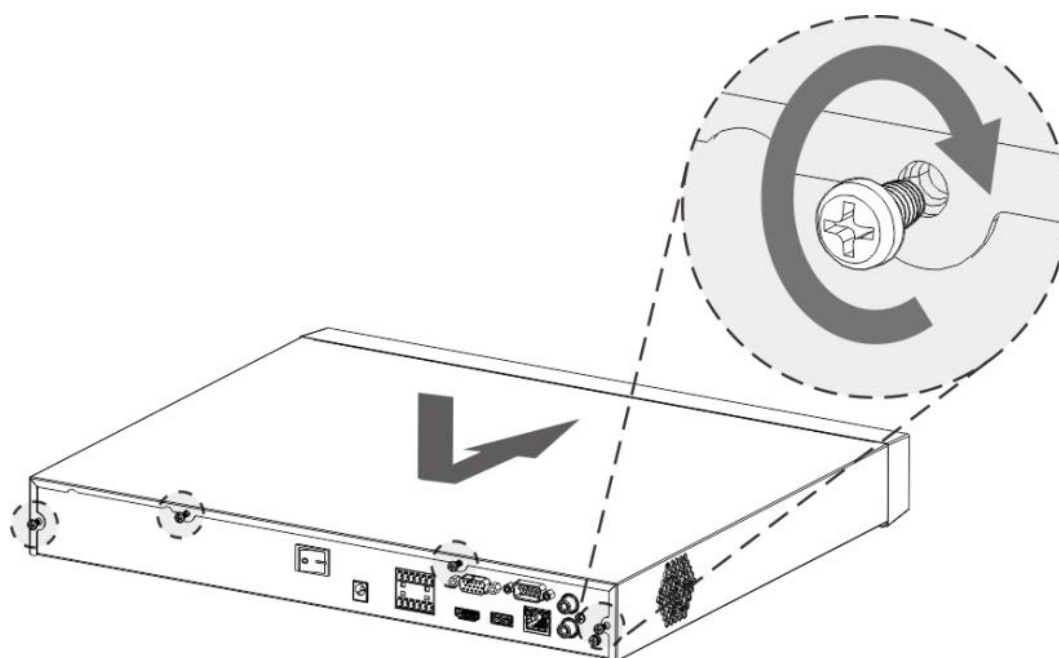
**Step 5** Connect the HDD data cable and power cable to the device.

Figure 2-10 Connect cables



**Step 6** Put back the cover and fasten the four screws on the rear panel to complete the installation.

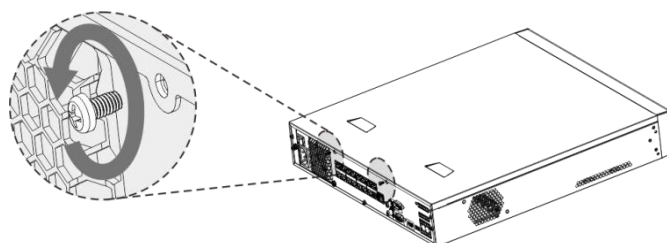
Figure 2-11 Fasten screws



## 2.2.3 DHI-XVR7416L-4KL

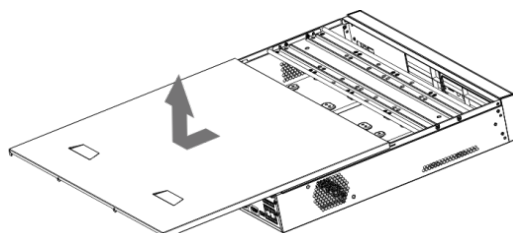
**Step 1** Remove the fixing screws on the rear panel.

Figure 2-12 Remove screws



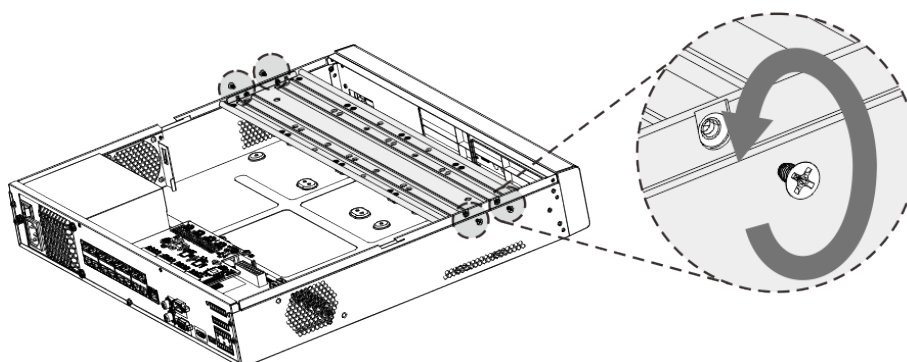
**Step 2** Remove the cover along the direction shown in the following arrow.

Figure 2-13 Remove cover



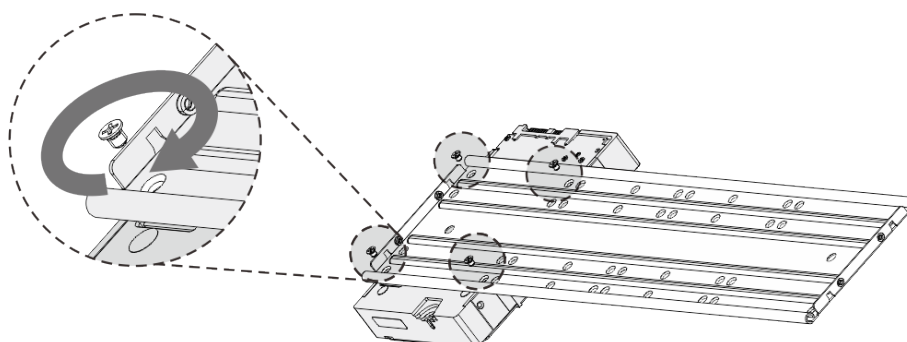
**Step 3** Remove the screws on the sides of HDD bracket to take out the bracket.

Figure 2-14 Remove bracket



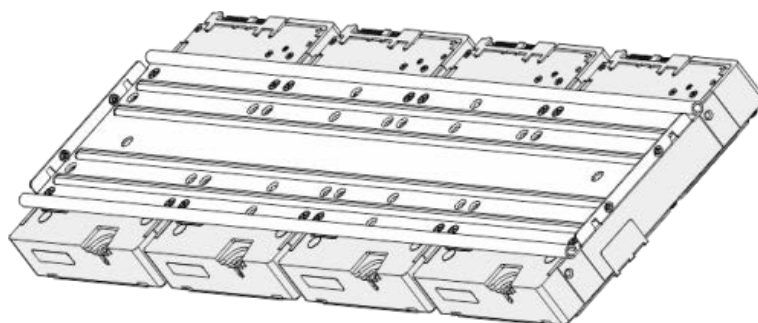
**Step 4** Match the four screw holes on the HDD with the four holes on the bracket and then fasten the screws. The HDD is fixed to the bracket.

Figure 2-15 Fix HDD



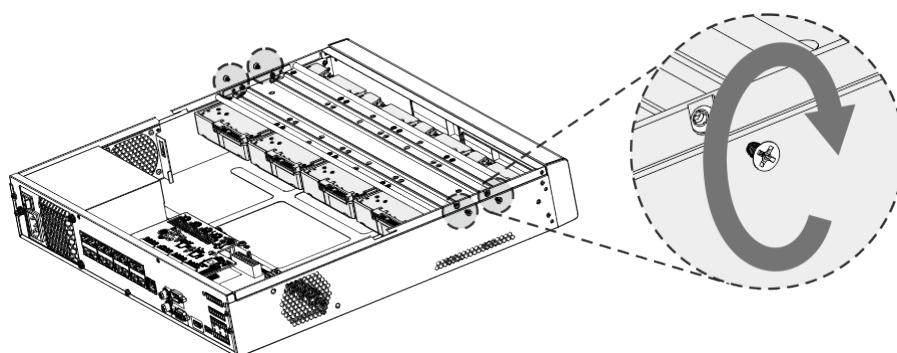
**Step 5** Install the other HDDs.

Figure 2-16 Install other HDDs



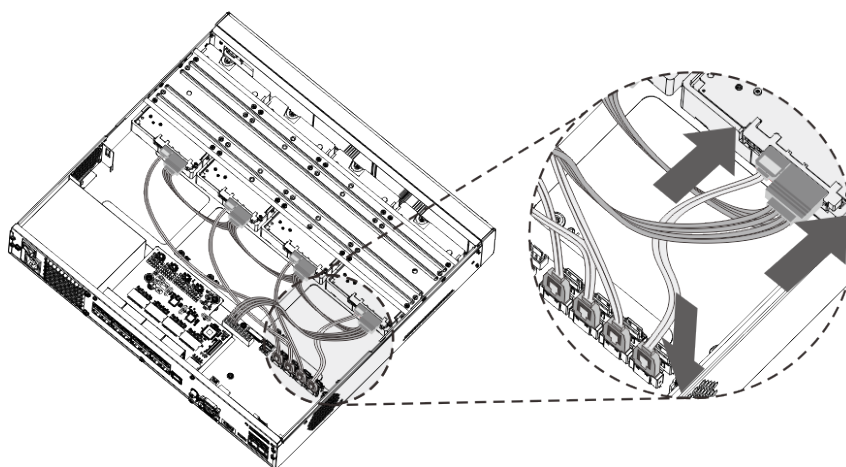
**Step 6** Place the bracket to the device and then fasten the screws on the sides of the bracket.

Figure 2-17 Fasten screws



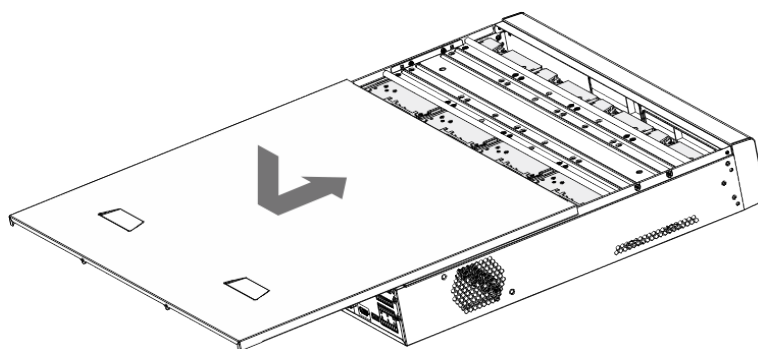
**Step 7** Connect the HDD data cable and power cable to the device.

Figure 2-18 Connect cables



**Step 8** Put back the cover and fasten the screws on the rear panel to complete the installation.

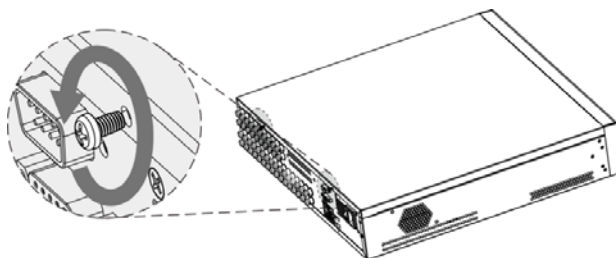
Figure 2-19 Put back cover



## 2.2.4 DHI-XVR7816S-4KL

**Step 1** Remove the screws from the chassis.

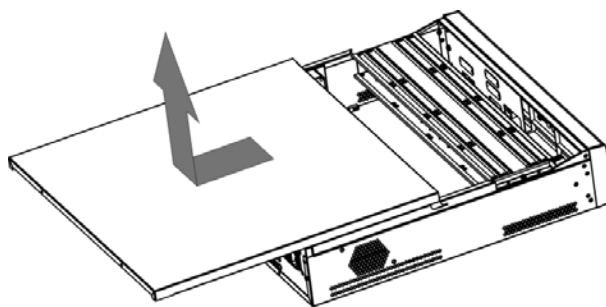
Figure 2-20 Remove screws



**Step 2** Take off the cover of the chassis.

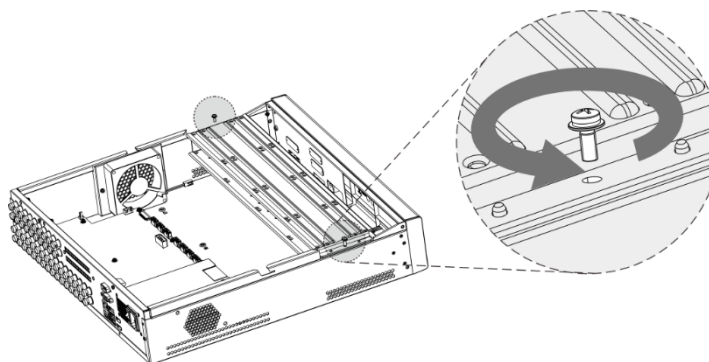


Figure 2-21 Take off cover



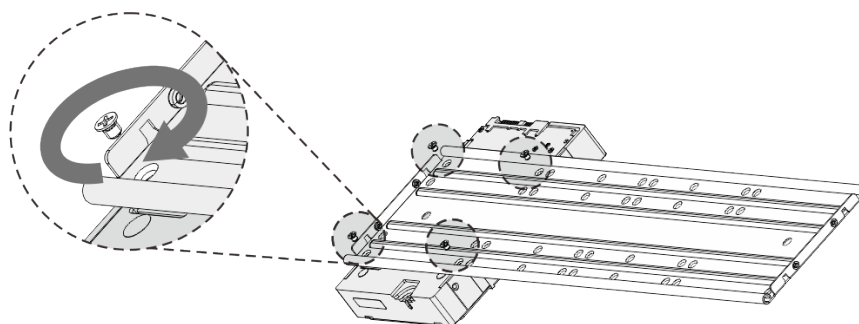
**Step 3** Remove the screws from the drive bracket to take it off.

Figure 2-22 Take off drive bracket



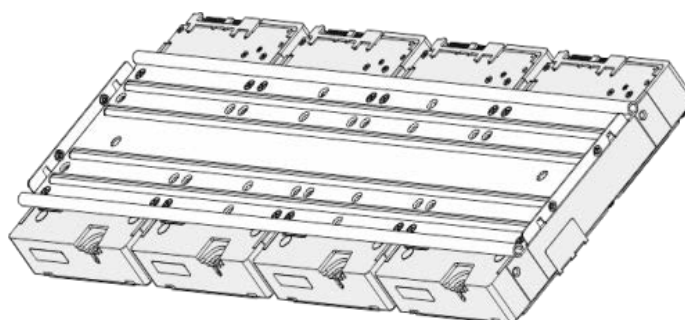
**Step 4** Align the four screw holes on the disk to those on the drive bracket and fix the disk on the bracket.

Figure 2-23 Fix disk



**Step 5** Fix other disks on the bracket as needed.

Figure 2-24 Fix other disks

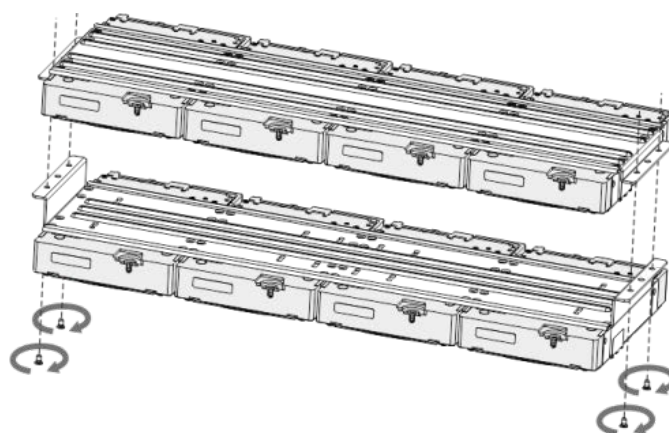


**Step 6** Fix the two drive brackets.



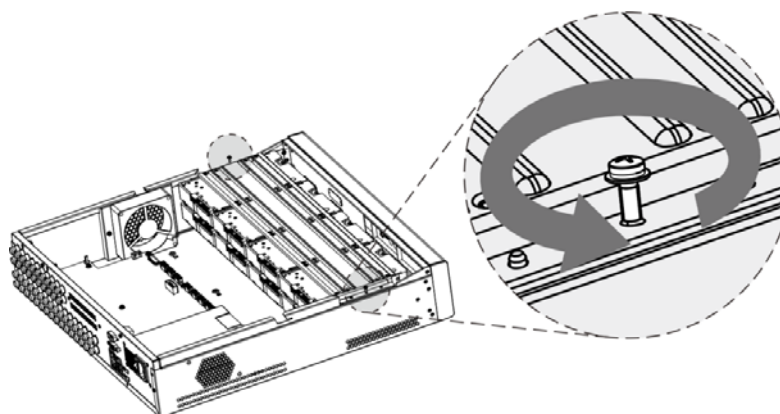
This is only needed on models with 8 bays.

Figure 2-25 Fix drive brackets



**Step 7** Put the drive brackets back and fix them in the DVR.

Figure 2-26 Put back drive bracket

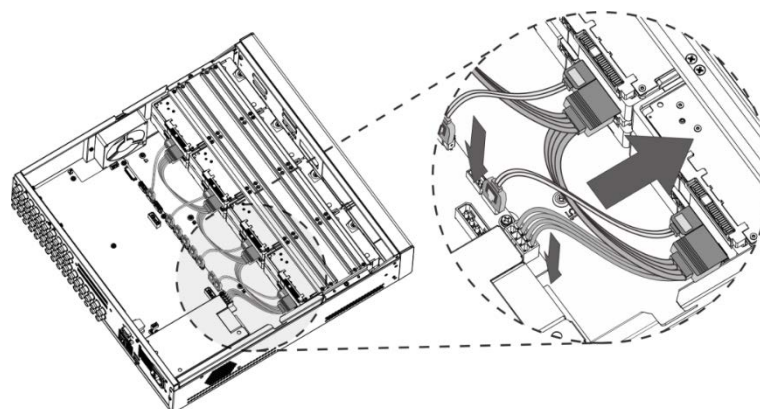


**Step 8** Connect the disks and the DVR with power cable and data cable.



The following figure shows the connection of 4-bay model for example.

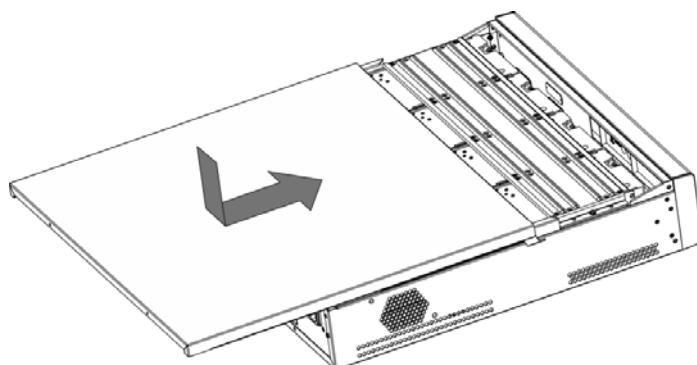
Figure 2-27 Connect cables



**Step 9** Put the cover back and fasten the screws.



Figure 2-28 Put back cover



## 3 The Grand Tour

This chapter introduces various components of the Device, remote control and mouse operations.

### 3.1 Front Panel

#### 3.1.1 DHI-XVR5108HS-4KL/DHI-XVR5116H-4KL/DHI-XVR5116HS-S2/DHI-XVR5116H-S2/DHI-XVR5216AN-S2

Figure 3-1 Front panel

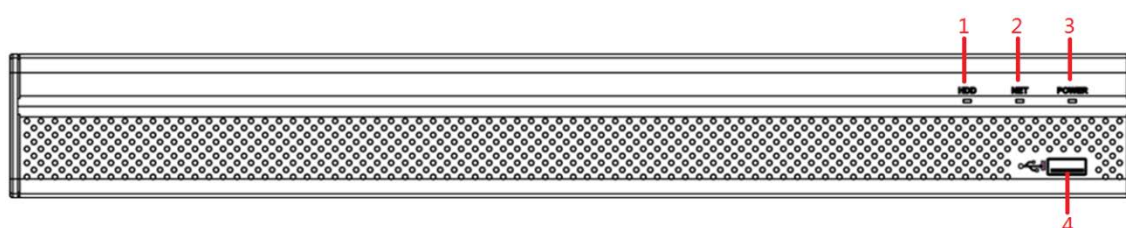


Table 3-1 Front panel description

No.	Indicator/Port	Function
1	HDD	Glows blue when HDD status is abnormal.
2	NET	Glows blue when network status is abnormal.
3	POWER	Glows blue when the power is connected properly.
4	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard, and mouse.

#### 3.1.2 DHI-XVR5216AN-4KL/DHI-XVR5232AN-S2

Figure 3-2 Front panel

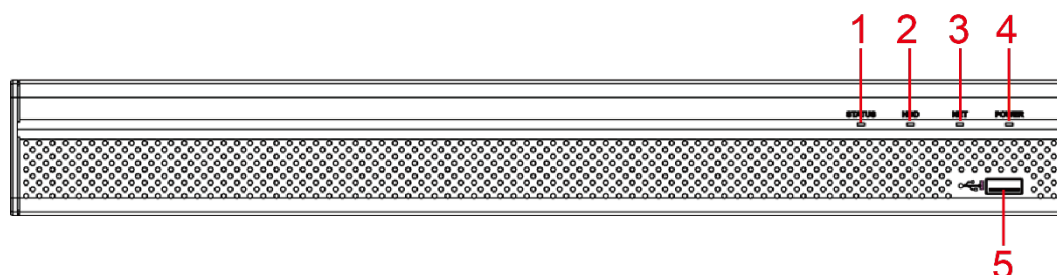


Table 3-2 Front panel description

No.	Indicator/Port	Function
1	Status indicator light	Glow blue when the device is working properly.
2	HDD	Glow blue when HDD status is abnormal.
3	NET	Glow blue when network status is abnormal.
4	POWER	Glow blue when the power is connected properly.
5	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.

### 3.1.3 DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL/DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL

Figure 3-3 Front panel

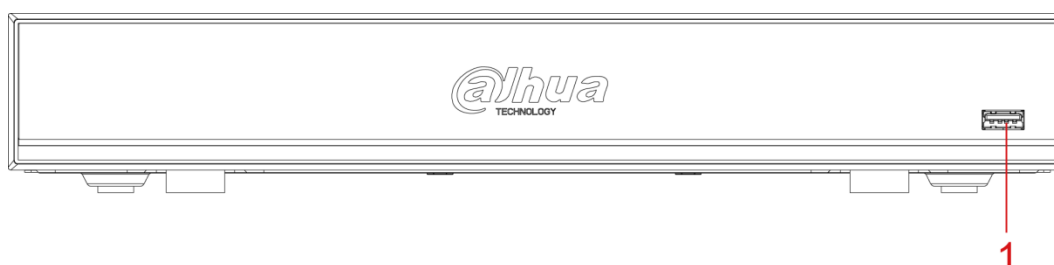


Table 3-3 Front panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.

### 3.1.4 DHI-XVR7416L-4KL

Figure 3-4 Front panel

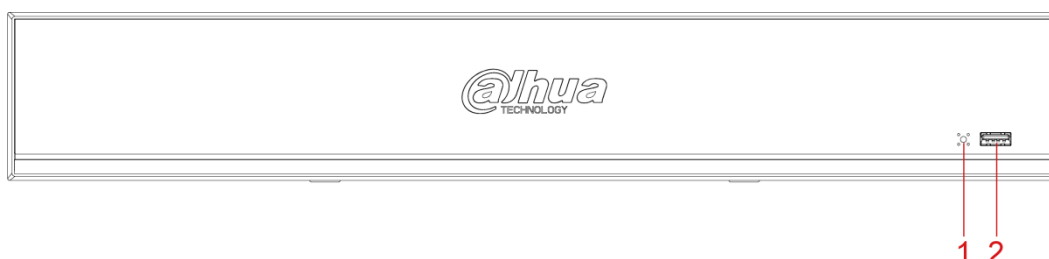


Table 3-4 Front panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1	IR receiver	Receives infrared signal from remote control.
2	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard, and mouse.

### 3.1.5 DHI-XVR7816S-4KL

Figure 3-5 Front panel

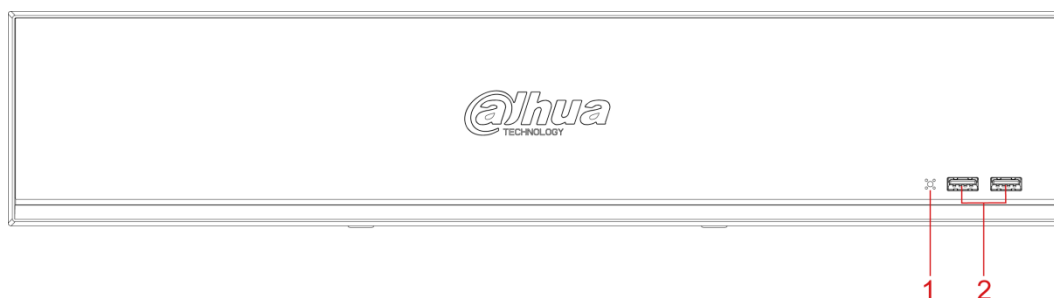


Table 3-5 Front panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1	IR receiver	Receives infrared signal from remote control.
2	USB port	Connects to peripheral devices such as USB storage device, keyboard, and mouse.

## 3.2 Rear Panel

### 3.2.1 DHI-XVR5108HS-4KL/DHI-XVR5116HS-S2

Figure 3-6 Rear panel

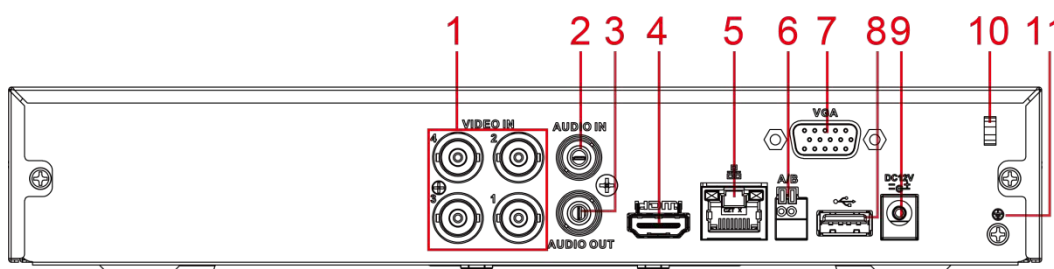



Table 3-6 Rear panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
2	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
3	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
4	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
5	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.

No.	Port Name	Function
6	RS-485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS-485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS-485_B is connected to the cable B.
7	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
8	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
9	Power input port	Inputs 12 VDC power.
10	Power cable fastener	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the DVR in case there is any loss.
11		Ground terminal.

### 3.2.2 DHI-XVR5116H-4KL

Figure 3-7 Rear panel

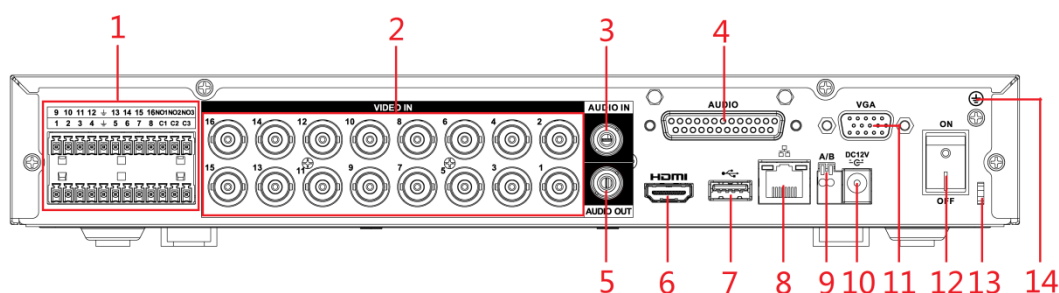





Table 3-7 Rear panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Alarm input port 1–16	Four groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (Normally Open) and NC (Normally Closed).  When your alarm input device is using external power, make sure that the alarm input device and the Device have the same ground.
	Alarm output port 1–3 (NO1–NO3; C1–C3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Three groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1–C1, Group 2: port NO2–C2, Group 3: port NO3–C3). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Make sure that power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normally open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> </ul>
		Ground.
2	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.

No.	Port Name	Function
3	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input port 1.
4	DB25 port	Connects to the audio splitter taken from the package to convert to audio input port which receives the audio signal from devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input ports 2–16.
5	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
6	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
7	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
9	RS-485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS-485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS-485_B is connected to the cable B.
10	Power input port	Inputs 12 VDC power.
11	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
12	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
13	Power cable fastener	Use a cable tie to secure the power cable on the DVR to prevent loss.
14		Ground terminal.

### 3.2.3 DHI-XVR5216AN-4KL

Figure 3-8 Rear panel

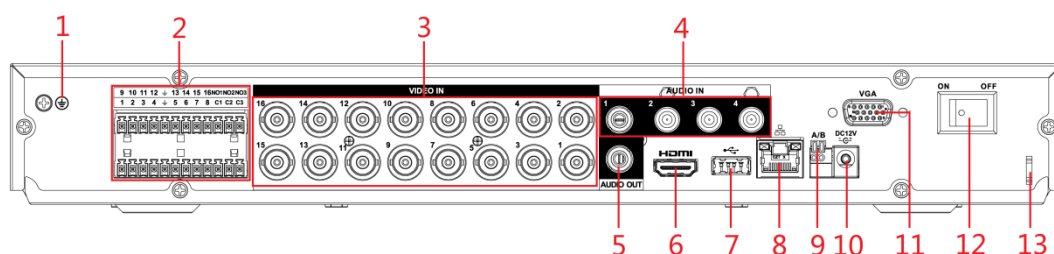





Table 3-8 Rear panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1		Ground terminal.

No.	Port Name	Function
2	Alarm input port 1-16	<p>Four groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (Normally Open) and NC (Normally Closed).</p>  <p>When your alarm input device is using external power, make sure that the alarm input device and the DVR connect to the same ground.</p>
	Alarm output port 1-3 (NO1-NO3; C1-C3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Three groups of alarm output ports. (Group 1: port NO1-C1, Group 2: port NO2-C2, Group 3: port NO3-C3). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Make sure that power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normally open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> </ul>
		Ground.
3	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
4	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
6	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
7	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
9	RS-485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS-485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS-485_B is connected to the cable B.
10	Power input port	Inputs 12 VDC power.
11	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
12	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
13	Power cable fastener	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the DVR in case there is any loss.

### 3.2.4 DHI-XVR5116H-S2

Figure 3-9 Rear panel

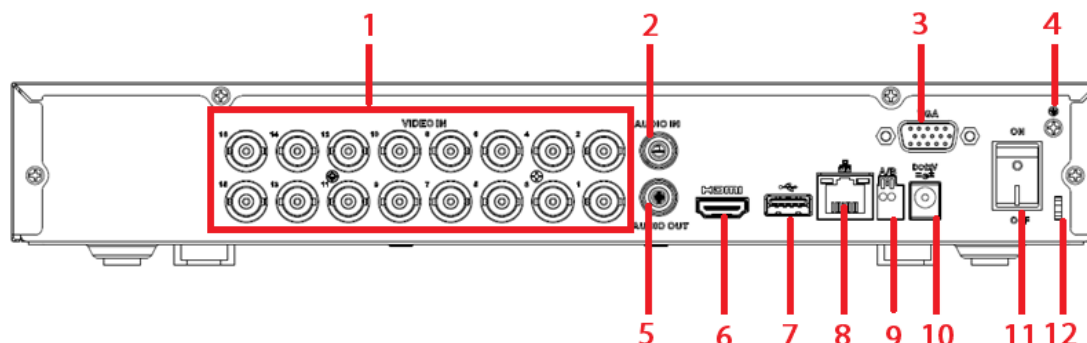


Table 3-9 Rear panel description

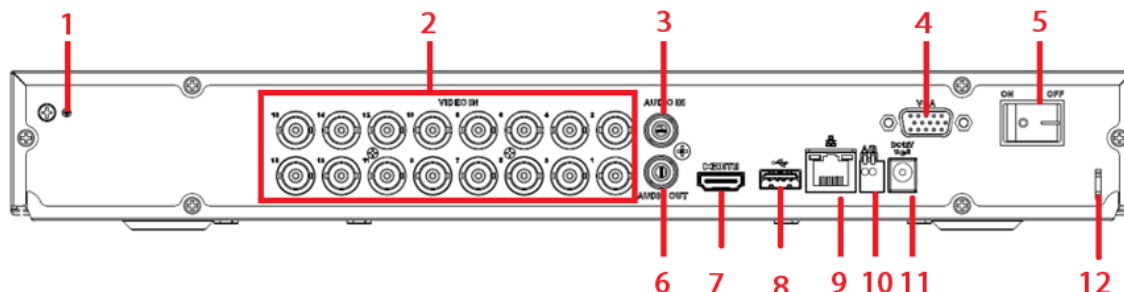
No.	Port Name	Function
1	Video input port	Connect to analog camera, video input signal.
2	Audio input port	Connect to audio input device such as speaker.
3	VGA video output port	VGA video output port. Output analog video signal. Can connect to the monitor to view analog video output.
4		Ground end.
5	Audio output port	Connect to video output device such as sound box.
6	High definition media interface	High definition audio and video signal output port. It transmits uncompressed high definition video and multiple-channel data to the HDMI port of the display device.
7		Connect to USB storage device, mouse, burning DVD-ROM and etc.
8		100M Ethernet port.
9	RS-485 communication port	RS485_A port. It is the cable A. You can connect to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_B. It is the cable B. You can connect to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ.
10	Power input port	Input 12 VDC.
11	Power on-off button	Power on/off button.
12	Power cable fastener	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the device in case there is any loss.



### 3.2.5 DHI-XVR5216AN-S2/DHI-XVR5232AN-S2

The rear panel of DHI-XVR5216AN-S2 is as follows.

Figure 3-10 Rear panel



The rear panel of DHI-XVR5232AN-S2 is as follows.

Figure 3-11 Rear panel

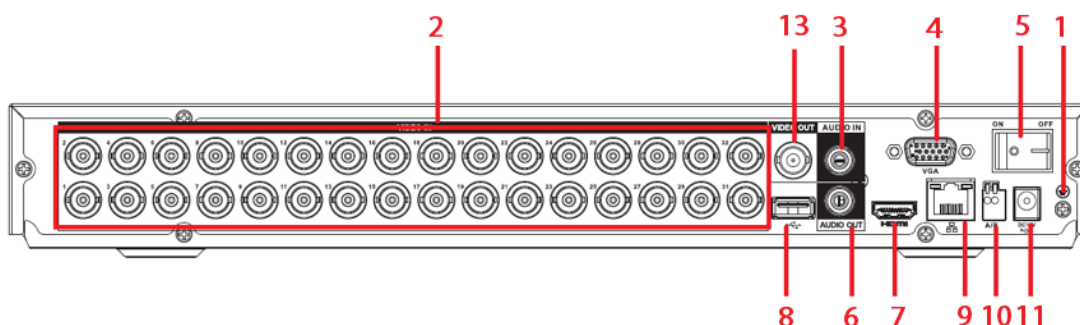


Table 3-10 Rear panel description

No.	Name	Note
1	GND	Alarm input ground port.
2	Video input port	Connect to analog camera, video input signal.
3	Audio input port	Connect to audio input device such as speaker.
4	VGA video output port	VGA video output port. Output analog video signal. Can connect to the monitor to view analog video output.
5	Power switch	Power on/off button.
6	Audio output port	Connect to video output device such as sound box.
7	High Definition Media Interface	High definition audio and video signal output port. It transmits uncompressed high definition video and multiple-channel data to the HDMI port of the display device.
8		Connect to USB storage device, mouse, burning DVD-ROM and etc.
9		100 or 1000M Ethernet port.

No.	Name	Note
10	RS-485 communication port	RS485_A port. It is the cable A. You can connect to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ.
		RS485_B. It is the cable B. You can connect to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ.
11	Power input port	Input 12 VDC.
12	Power cable fastener	Use clamp to secure the power cable on the device in case there is any loss.
13	Video output port	Connect to output devices such as TV.

### 3.2.6 DHI-XVR7108HE-4KL/DHI-XVR7116HE-4KL

Figure 3-12 Rear panel

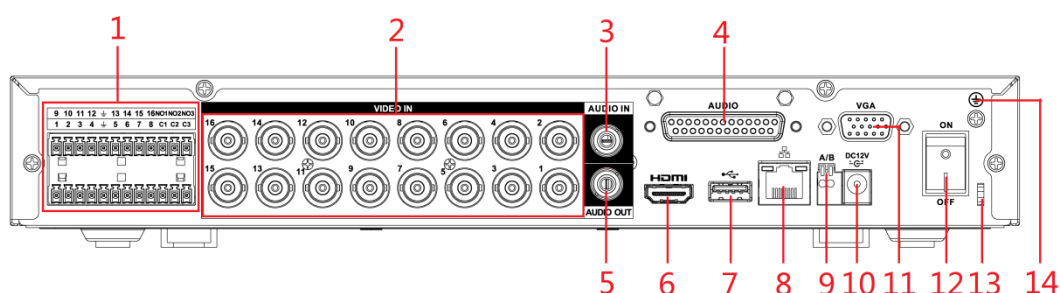





Table 3-11 Rear panel

No.	Port Name	Function
1	Alarm input port 1-16	4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normally open) and NC (normally closed).  When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the alarm input device and the Device have the same ground.
	Alarm output port 1-3 (NO1-NO3; C1-C3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1-C1, Group 2: port NO2-C2, Group 3: port NO3-C3). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> </ul>
		Ground.
2	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.

No.	Port Name	Function
3	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input port 1.
4	DB25 port	Connects to the audio splitter taken from the package to convert to audio input port which receives the audio signal from devices such as microphone. It corresponds to video input ports 2–16.
5	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
6	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
7	USB port	Connects to external devices such as USB storage device, keyboard and mouse.
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
9	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
10	Power input port	Inputs 12 VDC power.
11	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
12	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
13	Power cable fastener	Use a cable tie to secure the power cable on the DVR to prevent loss.
14		Ground terminal.

### 3.2.7 DHI-XVR7416L-4KL

Figure 3-13 Rear panel

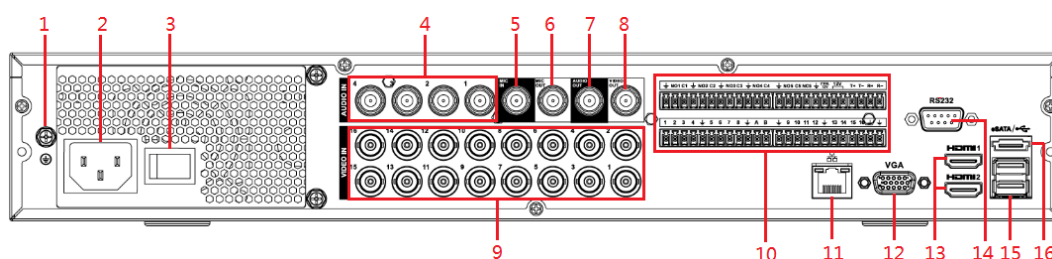





Table 3-12 Rear panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1		Ground terminal.
2	Power input port	Inputs power.

No.	Port Name	Function
3	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
4	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	Audio input port (MIC IN)	Tow-way talk input port which receives analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone and pickup.
6	Audio output port (MIC OUT)	Tow-way talk output port which outputs the analog audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
7	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
8	Video output port	Connects to video output devices such as TV.
9	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.
10	Alarm input port 1–16	<p>4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normally open) and NC (normally closed).</p>  <p>When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the input device and the DVR connect to the same ground.</p>
	Alarm output port 1–5 (NO1–NO5; C1–C5; NC5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1–C1, Group 2: port NO2–C2, Group 3: port NO3–C3, Group 4: port NO4–C4, Group 5: port NO5, C5, NC5). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> <li>NC: Normal close alarm output port.</li> </ul>
	RS485 communication port	Connects to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port (T+, T-, R+, R-)	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port. T+ and T- is the output wire; R+ and R- is the input wire.
	Power output control for alarm (CTRL 12V)	<p>Controls power output for alarm. The current is 500 mA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turns off power output when there is alarm output.</li> <li>Turns on power output when the alarm is cleared.</li> </ul>
	12V power output port	Provides power to external devices such as camera and alarm device. Please note the power supply shall be below 1 A.
		Ground.
10	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.

No.	Port Name	Function
12	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.
13	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.
14	RS232 debug COM	The port is used for general COM debug to configure IP address or transfer transparent COM data.
15	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.
16	eSATA port	External SATA port which connects to the device with SATA port. Perform the jumper configuration when connecting HDD.

### 3.2.8 DHI-XVR7816S-4KL

Figure 3-14 Rear panel

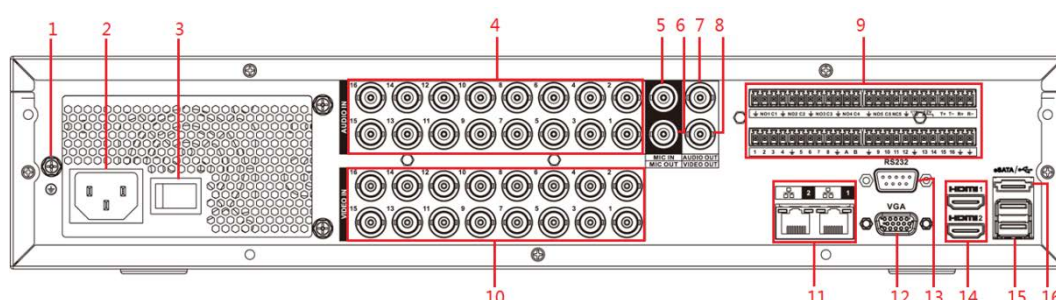



Table 3-13 Rear panel description

No.	Port Name	Function
1	GND	Ground.
2	Power input port	Inputs power.
3	Power button	Turns on/off the Device.
4	Audio input port	Receives the analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.
5	Audio input port (MIC IN)	Tow-way talk input port which receives the analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone, pickup.
6	Audio output port (MIC OUT)	Tow-way talk output port which outputs the analog audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
7	Audio output port	Outputs the analog audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.
8	Video output port	Connect to video output devices such as TV.

No.	Port Name	Function
9	Alarm input port 1–16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types; NO (normally open) and NC (normally closed).</li> <li>When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the device and the NVR have the same ground.</li> </ul>
	Alarm output port 1–5 (NO1–NO5; C1–C5; NC5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5 groups of alarm output ports. (Group 1: port NO1–C1, Group 2: port NO2–C2, Group 3: port NO3–C3, Group 4: port NO4–C4, Group 5: port NO5, C5, NC5). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> <li>NC: Normal close alarm output port.</li> </ul>
	RS-485 communication port	You can connect to the control devices such as speed dome PTZ. RS485_A port is connected by the cable A and RS485_B is connected to the cable B.
	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port (T+, T-, R+, R-)	Four-wire full-duplex 485 port. T+ and T- is the output wire; R+ and R- is the input wire.
	Control power output (CTRL 12V)	Controller 12 V power output. It is to control the on-off alarm relay output.
	12V power output port	Provides power to external devices such as camera and alarm device. Please note the supplying power shall be below 1 A.
		Ground.
10	Video input port	Connect to analog camera to input video signal.
11	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.
12	VGA video output	Outputs analog video signal. It can connect to the monitor to view analog video.
13	RS232 debug COM.	It is for general COM debug to configure IP address or transfer transparent COM data.
14	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. It outputs the same video source as VGA. It supports 4K resolution output and supports mouse operation and control. Please note when the HDMI output resolution is 4K, the VGA output stops.
15	USB port	Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, and USB storage device.
16	eSATA port	External SATA port which connects to the device with SATA port. Perform the jumper configuration when connecting HDD.

### 3.3 Remote Control Operations



Please note the remote control is not our standard accessory and might not be included in the accessory bag. It is supplied dependent on the model you purchased.

Figure 3-15 Remote control

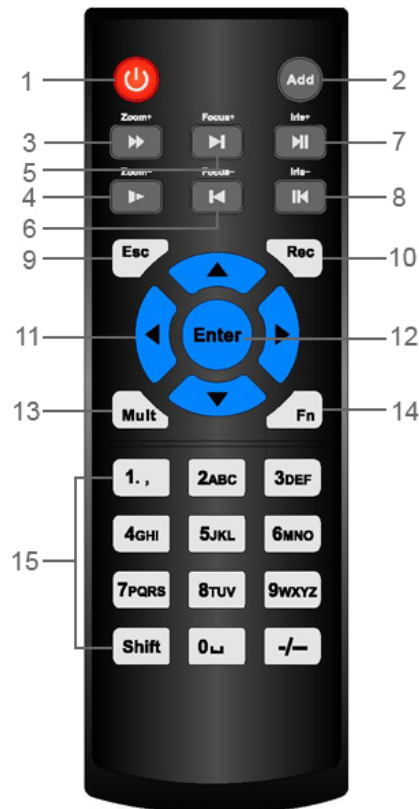


Table 3-14 Remote control description

No.	Name	Function
1	Power button	Press this button to boot up or shut down the device.
2	Address	Press this button to input device serial number, so that you can control the Device.
3	Forward	Multi-step forward speed and normal speed playback.
4	Slow motion	Multi-step slow motion speed or normal playback.
5	Next record	In playback state, press this button to play back the next video.
6	Previous record	In playback state, press this button to play back the previous video.
7	Play/Pause	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In normal playback state, press this button to pause playback.</li> <li>In pause state, press this button to resume to normal playback.</li> <li>In live view window interface, press this button to enter video search menu.</li> </ul>
8	Reverse/pause	<p>In the reverse playback state, press this button to pause reverse playback.</p> <p>In the reverse playback pause state, press this button to resume to playback reversing state.</p>

No.	Name	Function
9	Esc.	Go back to previous menu or cancel current operation (close front interface or control).
10	Record	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start or stop record manually.</li> <li>In record interface, use the direction buttons to select the channel that you want to record.</li> <li>Press this button for at least 1.5 seconds, and the manual record interface will be displayed.</li> </ul>
11	Direction keys	Switch between current activated controls by going left or right. In playback state, the keys control the playback progress bar. Aux function (such as operating the PTZ menu).
12	Enter/menu key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Confirms an operation.</li> <li>Go to the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>Go to the menu.</li> </ul>
13	Multiple-window switch	Switch between multiple-window and one-window.
14	Fn	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In single-channel monitoring mode, press this button to display the PTZ control and color setting functions.</li> <li>Switch the PTZ control menu in PTZ control interface.</li> <li>In motion detection interface, press this button with direction keys to complete setup.</li> <li>In text mode, press and hold this button to delete the last character. To use the clearing function: Long press this button for 1.5 seconds.</li> <li>In HDD menu, switch HDD recording time and other information (as indicated in the pop-up message).</li> </ul>
15	Alphanumeric keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Input password, numbers.</li> <li>Switch channel.</li> <li>Press Shift to switch the input method.</li> </ul>

## 3.4 Mouse Operations









The operations are based on the considerations for right-handed users.

Table 3-15 Mouse operations

Operation	Function
Click left mouse button	Password input dialogue box pops up if you have not logged in yet. In live view window interface, you can go to the main menu.
	When you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.
	Implement the control operation.
	Modify checkbox or motion detection status.



Operation	Function
	<p>Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.</p> <p>In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral or English character (small/capitalized).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In English input mode: Click  to enter a backspace and click  to delete the previous character.</li> </ul>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In numeral input mode: Click  to clear and click  to delete the previous character.</li> </ul> 
Double-click left mouse button	<p>Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the file list to play back the video.</p> <p>In multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.</p>
Right-click	<p>Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.</p> <p>Exit current menu without saving the modification.</p>
Click scroll wheel button	<p>In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.</p> <p>Switch the items in the check box.</p> <p>Page up or page down.</p>
Point to select and move	Select current control and move it.
Dragging a selection box with left mouse button	<p>Select motion detection zone.</p> <p>Select privacy mask zone.</p>

## 4 Connection

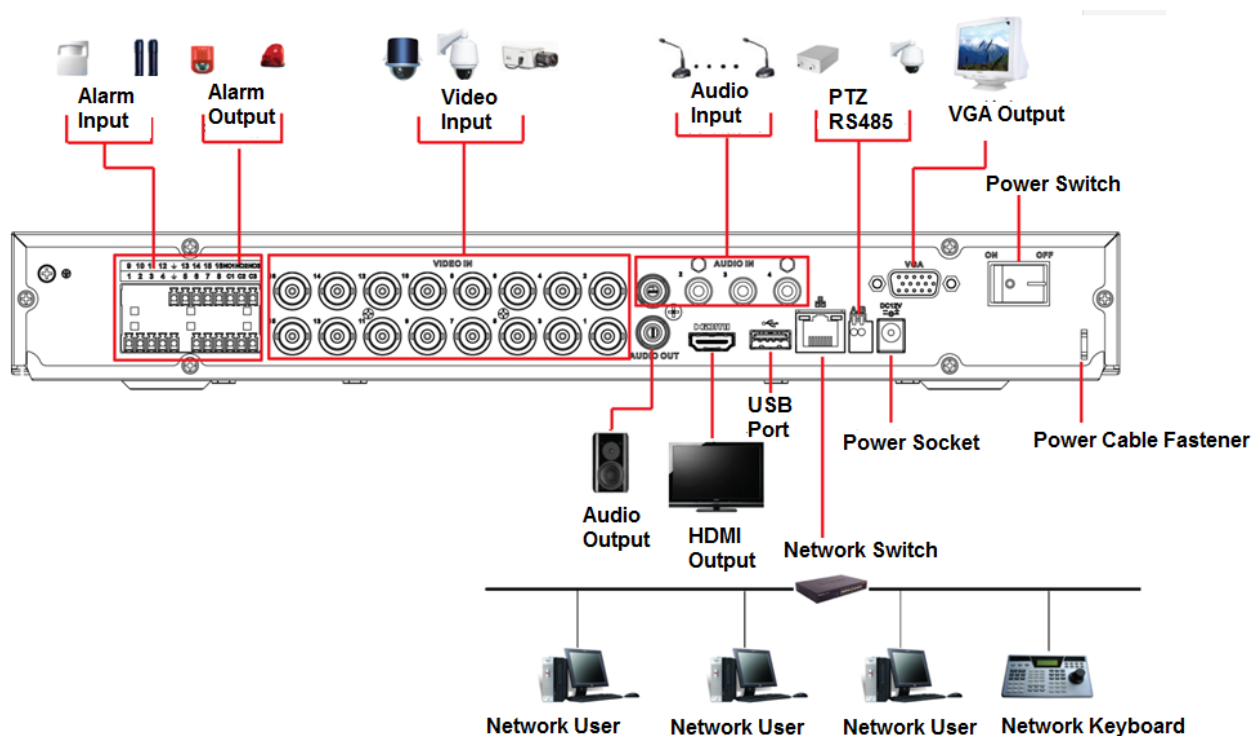
This chapter introduces various components of the Device, remote control and mouse operations, and typical connection.

### 4.1 Typical Connection Diagram



The following figure is for reference only and might differ from the actual product.

Figure 4-1 Typical connection



## 4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output

### 4.2.1 Video Input

The video input interface is BNC. The input video format includes: PAL/NTSC BNC (1.0 V<sub>P-P</sub>, 75 Ω).

The video signal should comply with your national standards.

The input video signal shall have high SNR, low distortion; low interference, natural color and suitable lightness.

#### **Guaranteeing the stability and reliability of the camera signal**

The camera shall be installed in a cool, dry place away from direct sunlight, inflammable, explosive substances and etc.

The camera and the DVR should have the same grounding to ensure the normal operation of the camera.

#### **Guaranteeing stability and reliability of the transmission line**

Please use high quality, sound shielded BNC. Please select suitable BNC model according to the transmission distance.

If the distance is too long, you should use twisted pair cable, and you can add video compensation devices or use optical fiber to ensure video quality.

You should keep the video signal away from the strong electromagnetic interference, especially the high tension current.

#### **Keeping connection lugs in well contact**

The signal line and shielded wire should be fixed firmly and in well connection. Avoid dry joint, lap welding and oxidation.

### 4.2.2 Video Output

Video output includes a BNC (PAL/NTSC 1.0 V<sub>P-P</sub>, 75 Ω) output, a VGA output and HDMI output. System supports BNC, VGA and HDMI output at the same time.

When you are using pc-type monitor to replace the monitor, please pay attention to the following points:

- To defer aging, do not allow the pc monitor to run for a long time.
- Regular demagnetization will keep device maintain proper status.
- Keep it away from strong electromagnetic interference devices.

Using TV as video output device is not a reliable substitution method. You also need to reduce the working hour and control the interference from power supply and other devices. The low quality TV may result in device damage.

### 4.2.3 Audio Input

These series products audio input port adopt BNC port.

Due to high impedance of audio input, please use active sound pick-up.

Audio transmission is similar to video transmission. Try to avoid interference, dry joint, loose contact and it shall be away from high tension current.

### 4.2.4 Audio Output

The audio output signal parameter is usually over 200mv 1K $\Omega$  (BNC or RCA). It can directly connect to low impedance earphone, active sound box or amplifier-drive audio output device.

If the sound box and the pick-up cannot be separated spatially, it is easy to arouse squeaking. In this case you can adopt the following measures:

- Use better sound pick-up with better directing property.
- Reduce the volume of the sound box.
- Using more sound-absorbing materials in decoration can reduce voice echo and improve acoustics environment.
- Adjust the layout to reduce happening of the squeaking.

## 4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output

Please read the followings before connecting.

#### Alarm input

- Please make sure alarm input mode is grounding alarm input.
- Grounding signal is needed for alarm input.
- Alarm input needs the low level voltage signal.
- Alarm input mode can be either NC (normal Open) or NO (Normal Close)
- When you are connecting two DVRs or you are connecting one DVR and one other device, please use a relay to separate them.

#### Alarm output

The alarm output port should not be connected to high power load directly (It shall be less than 1A) to avoid high current which may result in relay damage. Please use the contactor to realize the connection between the alarm output port and the load.

#### How to connect PTZ decoder

- Ensure the decoder has the same grounding with DVR, otherwise you may not control the PTZ. Shielded twisted wire is recommended and the shielded layer is used to connect to the grounding.
- Avoid high voltage. Ensure proper wiring and some thunder protection measures.
- For too long signal wires, 120 $\Omega$  should be parallel connected between A, B lines on the far end to reduce reflection and guarantee the signal quality.
- "485 A, B" of DVR cannot parallel connect with "485 port" of other device.

- The voltage between of A, B lines of the decoder should be less than 5 V.

### Making sure the front-end device has soundly earthed

Improper grounding may result in chip damage.

## 4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port



The alarm input ports are dependent on the model you purchased.

Figure 4-2 Alarm ports

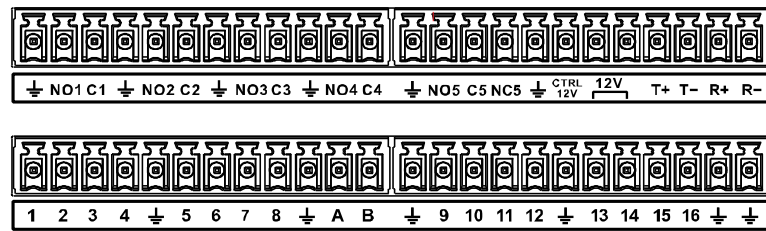



Table 4-1 Alarm port description

Icon	Description
1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15,16	ALARM 1 to ALARM 16. The alarm becomes active in low voltage.
NO1 C1, NO2 C2, NO3 C3, NO4 C4	There are four groups of normal open activation output (on/off button).
NO5 C5 NC5,	There is one group of normal open activation output (on/off button).
CTRL 12V	Control power output of the 6th alarm output channel. Voltage current: 500 mA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When there is an alarm output, close the power output.</li> <li>• When the alarm is cancelled, open the power output.</li> </ul>
+12V	Rated current. Voltage current: 500 mA.
	Ground cable.
485 A/B	485 communication port. They are used to control devices such as decoder. 120Ω should be parallel connected between A, B lines if there are too many PTZ decoders.
T+,T-,R+,R-	Four-wire full-duplex RS-485 port. T+ T-: output wire. R+ R-: input wire.

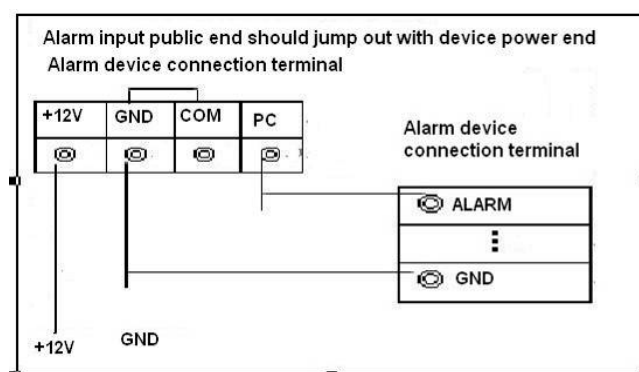
## 4.3.2 Alarm Input

Please refer to the following figure for more information.

- Grounding alarm inputs which includes Normal open and Normal close type.

- Please parallel connect COM end and GND end of the alarm detector (Provide external power to the alarm detector).
- Please parallel connect the Ground of the DVR and the ground of the alarm detector.
- Please connect the NC port of the alarm sensor to the DVR alarm input (ALARM).
- Use the same ground with that of DVR if you use external power to the alarm device.

Figure 4-3 Alarm input



### 4.3.3 Alarm Output

- Provide external power to external alarm device.
- To avoid overloading, please read the following relay parameters table carefully.
- RS-485 A/B cable is for the A/B cable of the PTZ decoder.

### 4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters



Refer to the actual product for relay model information.

Table 4-2 Alarm output relay parameters

Model		HFD23/005-1ZS	HRB1-S-DC5V
Material of the touch		AgNi+ gold-plating	AuAg10/AgNi10/CuNi30
Rating (Resistance Load)	Rated switch capacity	30 VDC 1 A/125 VAC 0.5 A	24 VDC 1 A/125 VAC 2 A
	Maximum switch power	62.5 VA/30 W	250 VA/48 W
	Maximum switch voltage	125 VAC/60 VDC	125 VAC/60 VDC
	Maximum switch currency	2 A	2 A
Insulation	Between touches	400 VAC 1 minute	500 VAC 1 minute
	Between touch and winding	1000 VAC 1 minute	1000 VAC 1 minute
Turn-on Time		5 ms max	5 ms max
Turn-off Time		5 ms max	5 ms max
Longevity	Mechanical	1×10 <sup>7</sup> times	5×10 <sup>6</sup> times

Model		HFD23/005-1ZS	HRB1-S-DC5V
		(300 times/MIN)	(300 times/MIN)
	Electrical	1×10 <sup>5</sup> times (30 times/MIN)	2.5×10 <sup>4</sup> times (30 times/MIN)
Working Temperature		-30 °C to +70 °C	-40 °C to +70 °C

## 4.4 Connecting to RS-485 Port

- Step 1** Connect the RS-485 cable of the PTZ camera to the RS-485 port on the Device. Ensure the match of A and B interfaces.
- Step 2** Connect the video out cable of the PTZ camera to the video input port on the Device.
- Step 3** Turn on the PTZ camera.

## 4.5 Replacing Battery

Please make sure to use the same battery model if possible.

We recommend replacing battery regularly (such as one-year) to guarantee system time accuracy.



Before replacement, please save the system setup, otherwise, you may lose the data completely!

## 5 Local Configurations

Please read the following notes prior to using your Device.



- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Conventions for mouse operations on a menu.
  - ◇ Click: On the menu, left-click the mouse once on an option to enter the option setting.
  - ◇ Right-click: On any interface, right-click the mouse once to return to the previous level. For details about mouse operations, see "3.4 Mouse Operations."

### 5.1 Initial Settings

#### 5.1.1 Booting up



- Ensure the input voltage corresponds to the power requirement of the Device. Power on the Device after the power cable is properly connected.
- To protect the Device, please connect the Device with the power cable first, and then connect to the power source.
- To ensure the stable work of the Device and the external devices connected to the Device and to prolong the batter life, it is recommended to refer to the national related standard to use the power source that provides stable voltage with less interference from ripples. USP power source is recommended.

Step 1 Connect the Device to the monitor.

Step 2 Plug in the power cable to the Device.

Step 3 Press the power button to turn on the Device. The power indicator light is on.

On the connected monitor, the live view screen is displayed by default. If you turn on the Device during the time period that is configured for recording, the system starts recording after it is turned on, and you will see the icon indicating recording status is working in the specific channels.

#### 5.1.2 Initializing the Device

When booting up for the first time, you need to configure the password information for **admin** (by default).

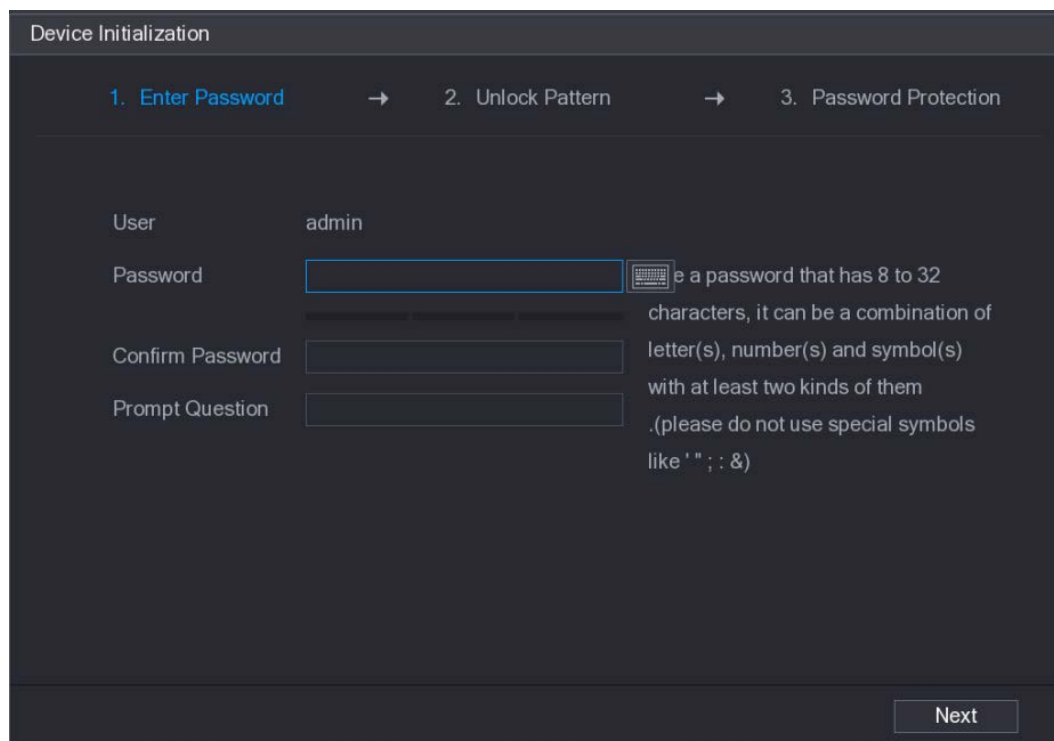




To secure the Device, it is strongly recommended for you to properly keep the password for admin and modify it regularly.



**Step 1** Turn on the Device.

Figure 5-1 Enter password



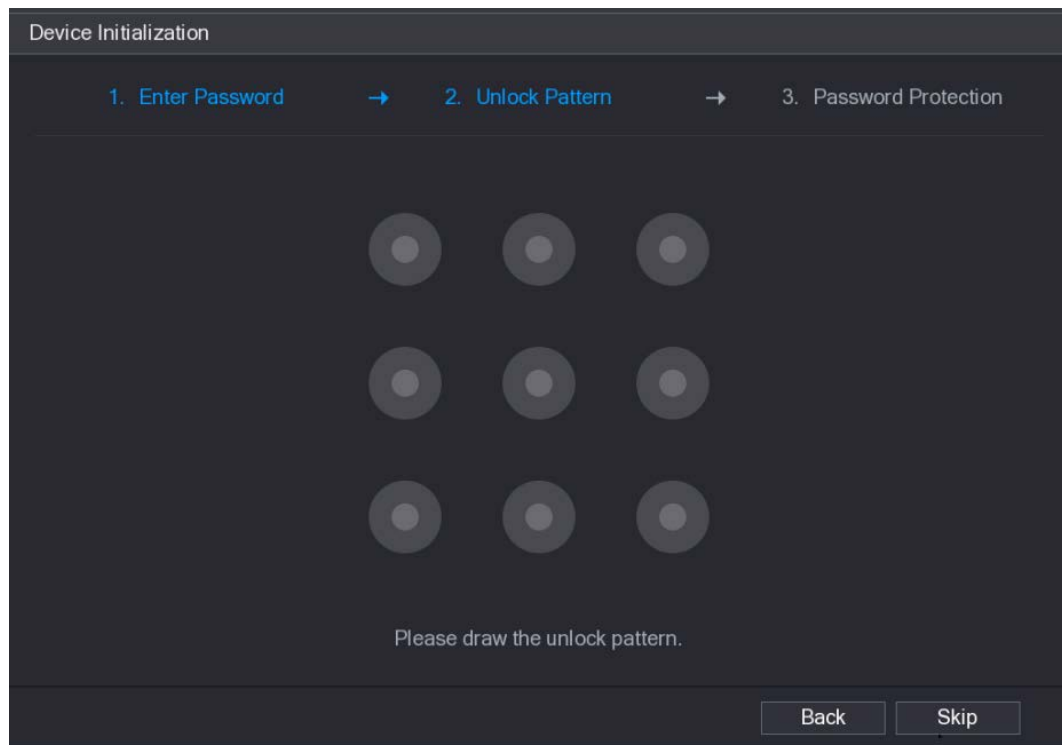
**Step 2** Configure the password information for admin.

Table 5-1 Configure password

Parameter	Description
User	By default, the user is <b>admin</b> .
Password	In the <b>Password</b> box, enter the password for admin.
Confirm Password	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contain at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding "'", '"', ";", ":", "&").
Prompt Question	<p>In the <b>Prompt Question</b> box, enter the information that can remind you of the password.</p> <p></p> <p>On the login interface, click , the prompt will display to help you find back the password.</p>

**Step 3** Click **Next**.

Figure 5-2 Unlock pattern



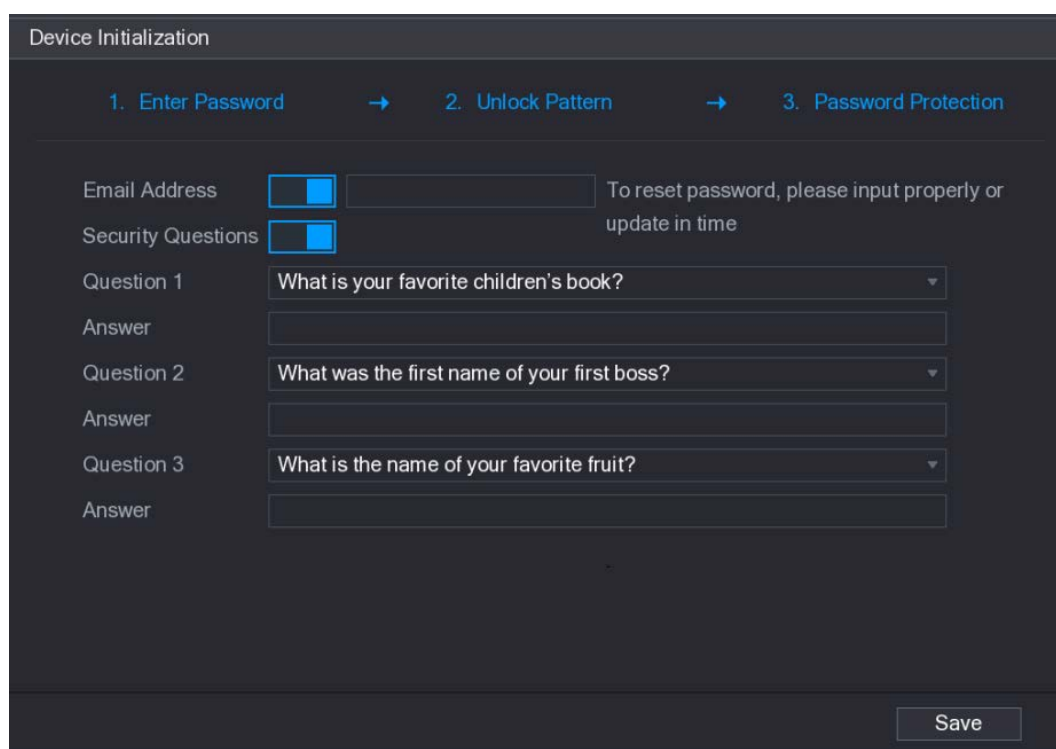
**Step 4** Draw an unlock pattern.

After the setting is completed, the password protection settings interface is displayed.



- The pattern that you want to set must cross at least four points.
- If you do not want to configure the unlock pattern, click **Skip**.
- Once you have configured the unlock pattern, the system will require the unlock pattern as the default login method. If you skip this setting, enter the password for login.

Figure 5-3 Password protection



Device Initialization

1. Enter Password → 2. Unlock Pattern → 3. Password Protection

Email Address ☐  To reset password, please input properly or update in time

Security Questions ☐

Question 1

Answer

Question 2

Answer

Question 3

Answer


Save

**Step 5** Configure the protection parameters for password.

After configuration, if you forgot the password for admin user, you can reset the password through the reserved email address or security questions. For details about resetting the password, see "5.1.3 Resetting Password."

If you do not want to configure the settings, disable the email address and security questions functions on the interface.

Table 5-2 Password protection description

Password Protection Mode	Description
Email Address	Enter the reserved email address. In the <b>Email Address</b> box, enter an email address for password reset. In case you forgot password, enter the security code that you will get from this reserved email address to reset the password of admin.
Security Questions	Configure the security questions and answers. In case you forgot password, enter the answers to the questions can make you reset the password.
 <p>If you want to configure the email or security questions function later or you want to change the configurations, select <b>Main Menu &gt; ACCOUNT &gt; USER</b>.</p>	

**Step 6** Click **Save** to complete the settings.

The **End-User License Agreement** interface is displayed.

**Step 7** Select the I have read and agree to all terms check box.

**Step 8** Click **Next**.

The **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. For details about quick settings during startup, see "5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard."

## 5.1.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password through the QR code or the security questions.

- To reset through the QR code, make sure the Enable check box is selected in **Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Password Reset**.
- To reset through the security questions, make sure the security questions is configured.

**Step 1** Enter the login interface.

- If you have configured unlock pattern, the unlock pattern login interface is displayed. Click **Forgot Pattern**, the password login interface is displayed.
- If you did not configure unlock pattern, the password login interface is displayed.



On the unlock pattern login interface, click **Switch User** to login; or on the password login interface, in the **User Name** list, select other users to login.

Figure 5-4 System login (1)

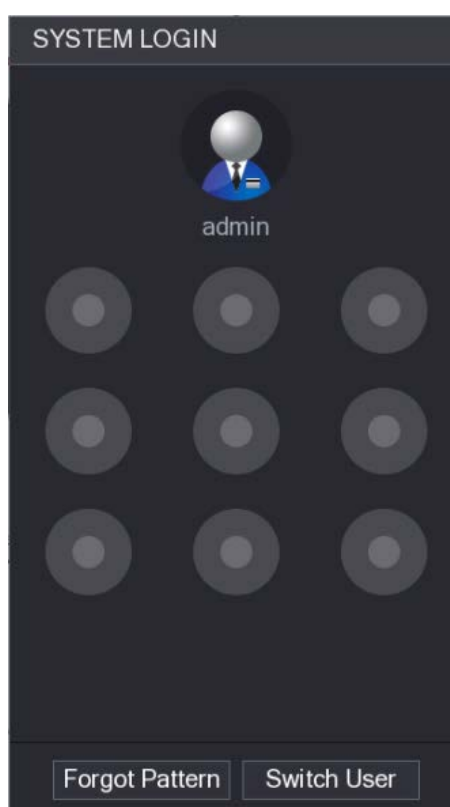
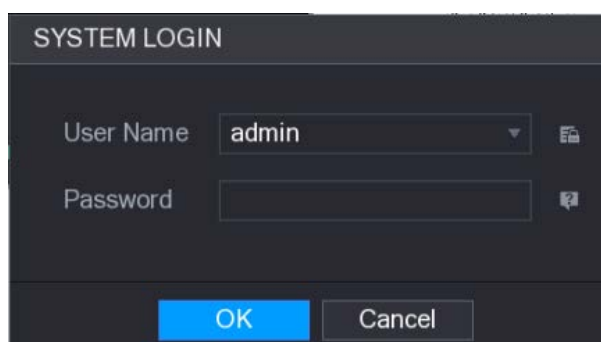


Figure 5-5 System login (2)



## Step 2

Click



- If you did not set the reserved email address, the email entering interface is displayed. Enter the email address, and then click **Next**, the **Reset the password** interface is displayed.
- If you have set the reserved email address, the **Reset the password** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-6 Reset password (1)

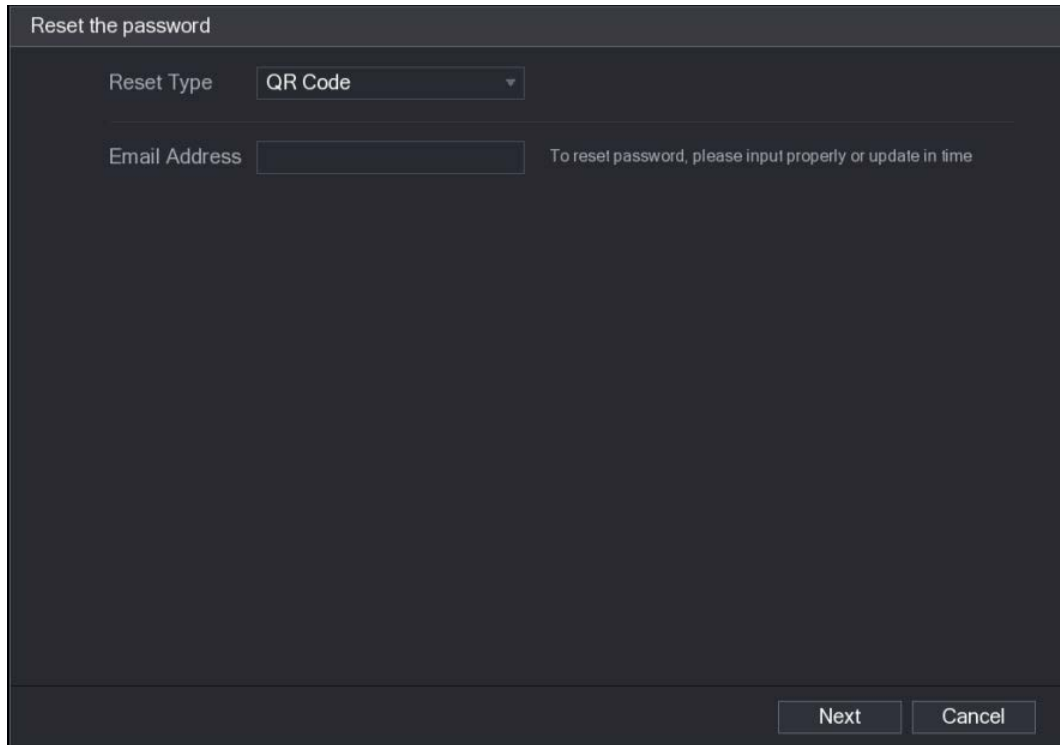
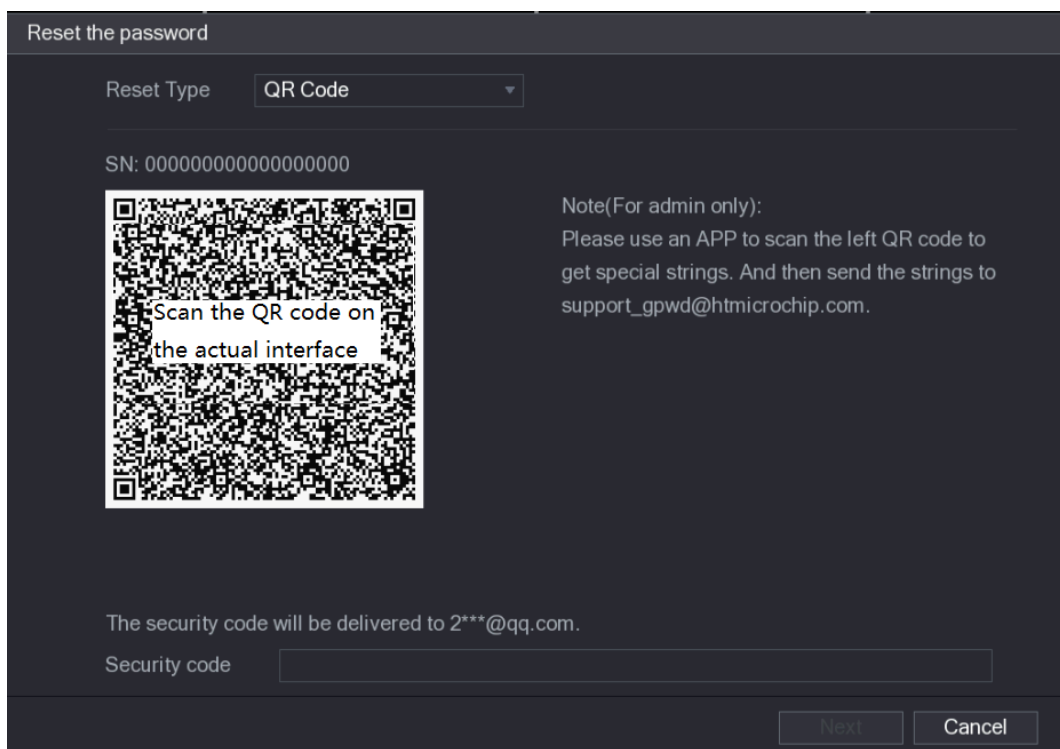


Figure 5-7 Reset password (2)



### Step 3 Rest the password.

- QR code

Follow the onscreen instructions to get the security code in your reserved email address. In the **Security code** box, enter the security code.



- You are given the limited times to get the security code by scanning the QR code within 24 hours. Please operate carefully.
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.

- Security questions

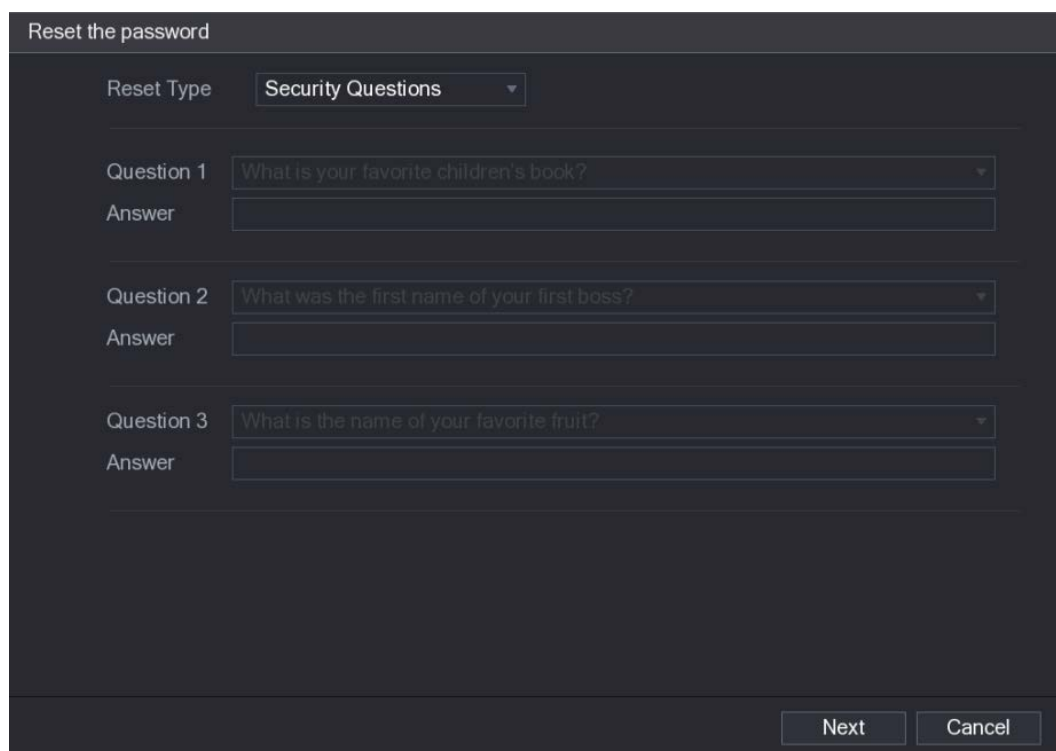
- 1) On the **Reset the password** interface as shown in Figure 5-7, in the **Reset Type** list, select **Security Questions**, the Security Questions interface is displayed.



If you did not configure the security questions before, in the **Reset Type** list, there will be no **Security Questions**.

- 2) In the **Answer** box, enter the correct answers.

Figure 5-8 Reset password (3)



Reset the password

Reset Type: Security Questions

Question 1: What is your favorite children's book? Answer: [Input Field]

Question 2: What was the first name of your first boss? Answer: [Input Field]

Question 3: What is the name of your favorite fruit? Answer: [Input Field]

Next Cancel

### Step 4 Click Next.

Figure 5-9 Reset password (4)

Reset the password

Reset password of (admin)

New Password  Use a password that has 8 to 32  
characters, it can be a combination of  
letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at

Confirm Password

Save Cancel

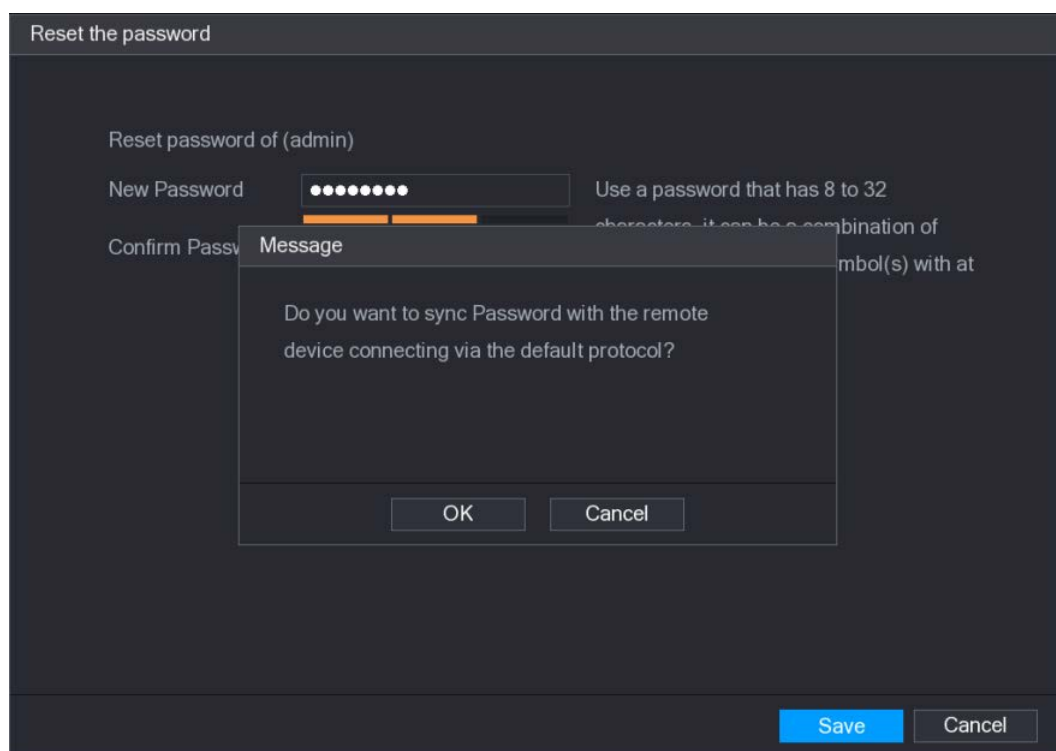
**Step 5** In the **New Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.

**Step 6** Click **Save**. The password resetting is started.  
After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed.

**Step 7** Click **OK**.  
A pop-up message is displayed asking if you want to sync the password with the remote devices.

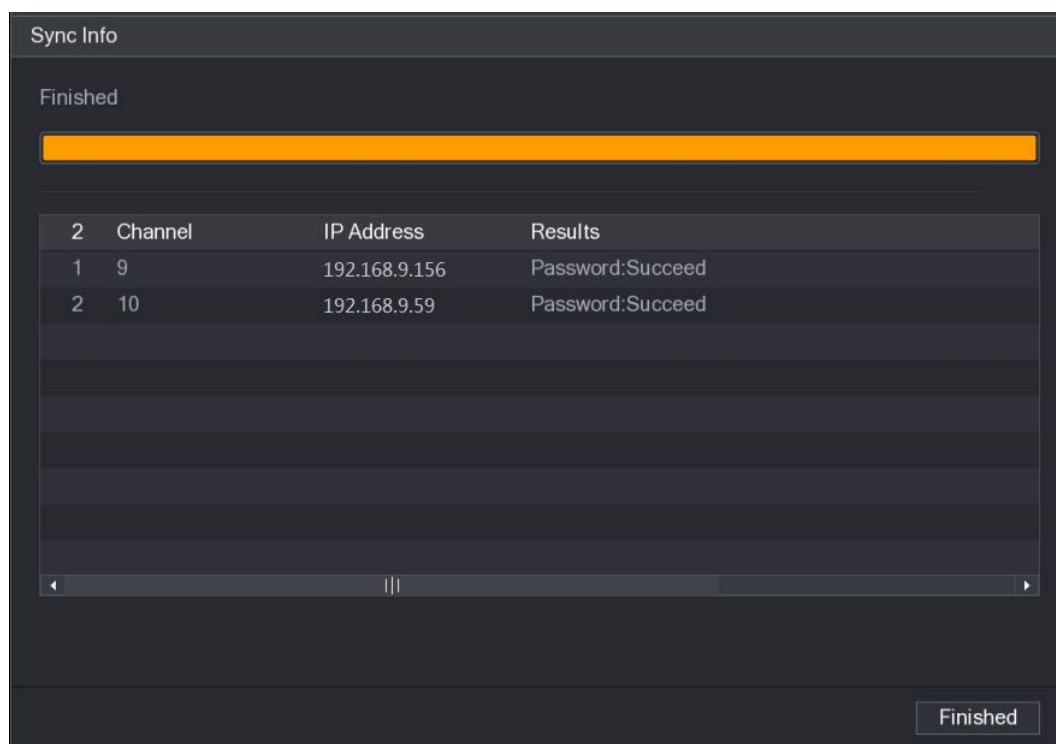
- Click **Cancel**, the resetting is finished.
- Click **OK**, the Sync Info interface is displayed.

Figure 5-10 Pop-up message



This message appears only when there are digital channels instead of complete analog channels.

Figure 5-11 Sync info



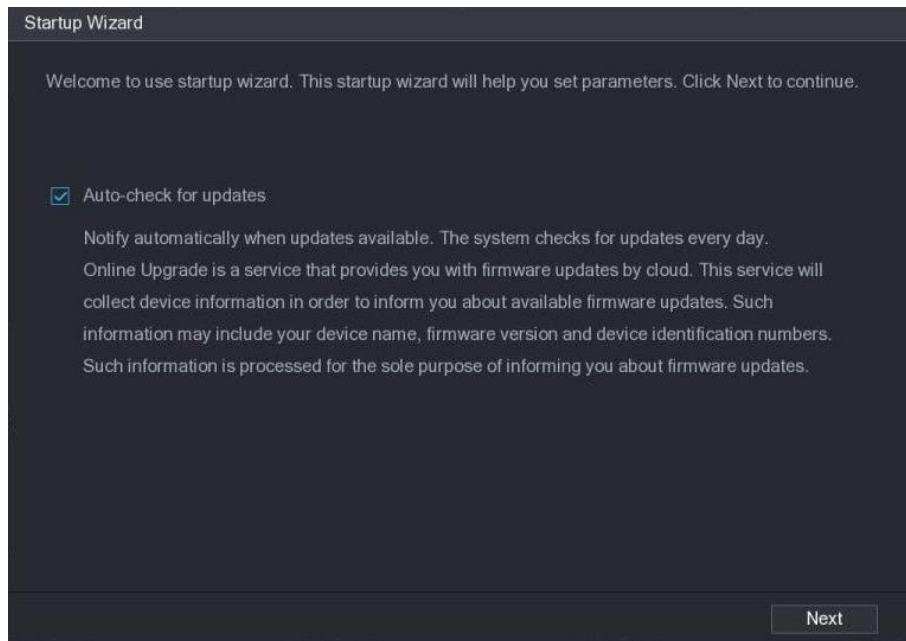


## 5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard

### 5.1.4.1 Entering Startup Wizard

The Startup Wizard helps you configure the basic settings to set up the Device.  
After you have initialized the Device, the **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-12 Startup wizard



If you select the **Auto-check for updates** check box, the system will notify you automatically when updates are available.

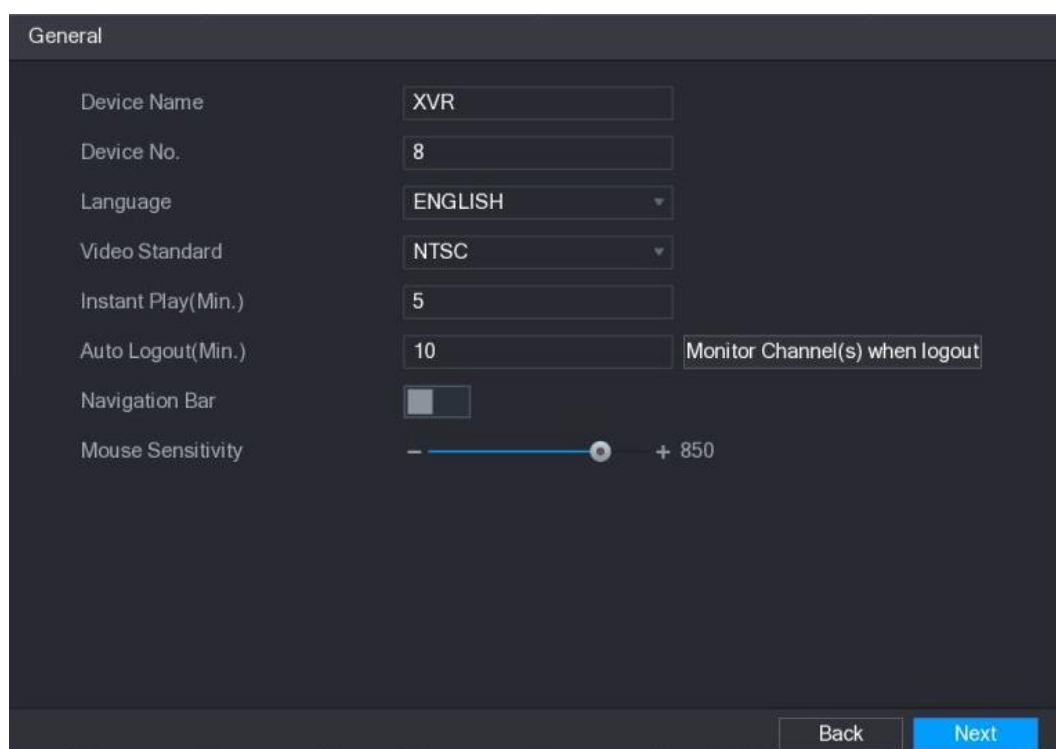
### 5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings

You can configure the general settings for the Device such as Device name, language, and settings for instant playback.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL > General**.

**Step 1** On the **Startup Wizard** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-13 General



**Step 2** Configure the general settings parameters.

Table 5-3 General settings

Parameter	Description
Device Name	In the <b>Device Name</b> box, enter the Device name.
Device No.	In the <b>Device No.</b> box, enter a number for the Device.
Language	In the <b>Language</b> list, select a language for the Device system.
Video Standard	In the <b>Video Standard</b> list, select <b>PAL</b> or <b>NTSC</b> according to your actual situation.
Instant Play (Min.)	In the <b>Instant Play</b> box, enter the time length for playing back the recorded video. The value ranges from 5 to 60. On the live view control bar, click the instant playback button to play back the recorded video within the configured time.
Auto Logout (Min.)	In the <b>Auto Logout</b> box, enter the standby time for the Device. The Device automatically logs out when it is not working for the configured time period. You need to log in to the Device again. The value ranges from 0 to 60. 0 indicates there is not standby time for the Device. Click <b>Monitor Channel(s) when logout</b> . You can select the channels that you want to continue monitoring when you logged out.
Navigation Bar	Enable the navigation bar. When you click on the live view screen, the navigation bar is displayed.
Mouse Sensitivity	Adjust the speed of double-click by moving the slider. The bigger the value, the faster the double-click speed must be.

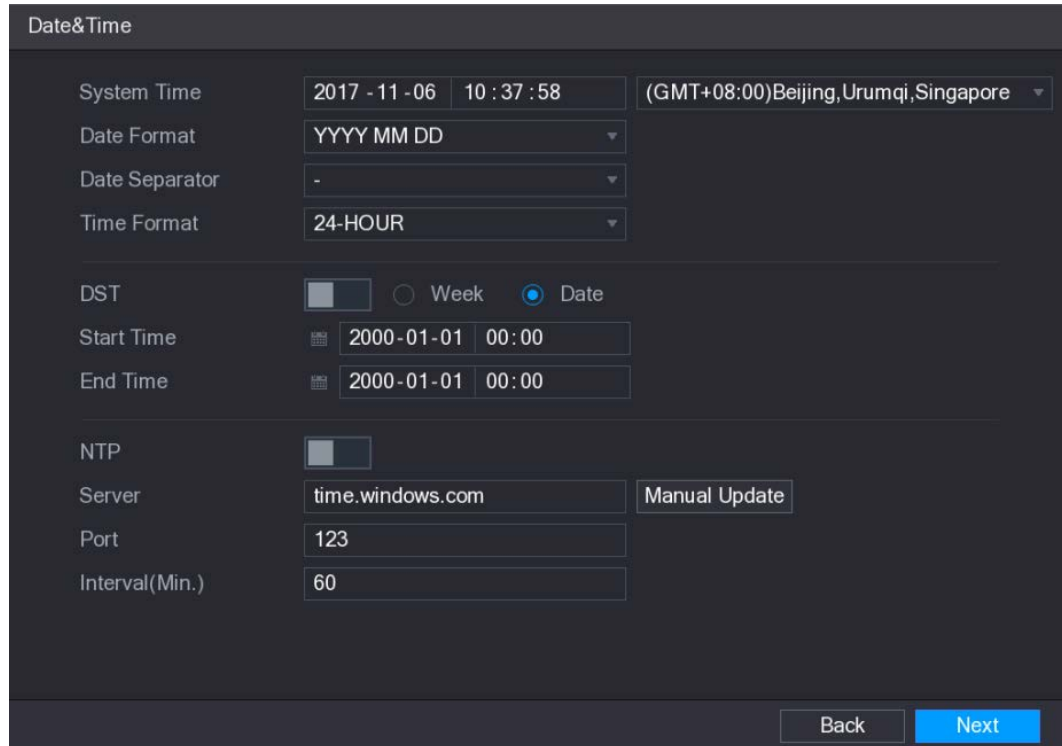
### 5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings

You can configure the system time, choose the time zone, set the daylight saving time, and enable the NTP server.

You can also configure date and time settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL > Date&Time**.


**Step 1** After you have configured the general settings, on the **General** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-14 Date&Time



**Step 2** Configure the settings for date and time parameters.

Table 5-4 Date and time parameters

Parameter	Description
System Time	<p>In the <b>System Time</b> box, enter time for the system.</p> <p>Click the time zone list, you can select a time zone for the system, and the time in adjust automatically.</p> <p></p> <p>Do not change the system time randomly; otherwise the recorded video cannot be searched. It is recommended to avoid the recoding period or stop recording first before you change the system time.</p>
Date Format	In the <b>Date Format</b> list, select a date format for the system.
Date Separator	In the <b>Date Separator</b> list, select a separator style for the date.
Time Format	In the <b>Time Format</b> list, select <b>12-HOUR</b> or <b>24-HOUR</b> for the time display style.
DST	Enable the Daylight Saving Time function. Click <b>Week</b> or click <b>Date</b> .

Parameter	Description
Start Time	Configure the start time and end time for the DST.
End Time	
NTP	Enable the NTP function to sync the Device time with the NTP server.
Server	In the <b>Server</b> box, enter the IP address or domain name of the corresponding NTP server. Click <b>Manual Update</b> , the Device starts syncing with the server immediately.
Port	The system supports TCP protocol only and the default setting is 123.
Interval (Min.)	In the <b>Interval</b> box, enter the amount of time that you want the Device to sync time with the NTP server. The value ranges from 0 to 65535.

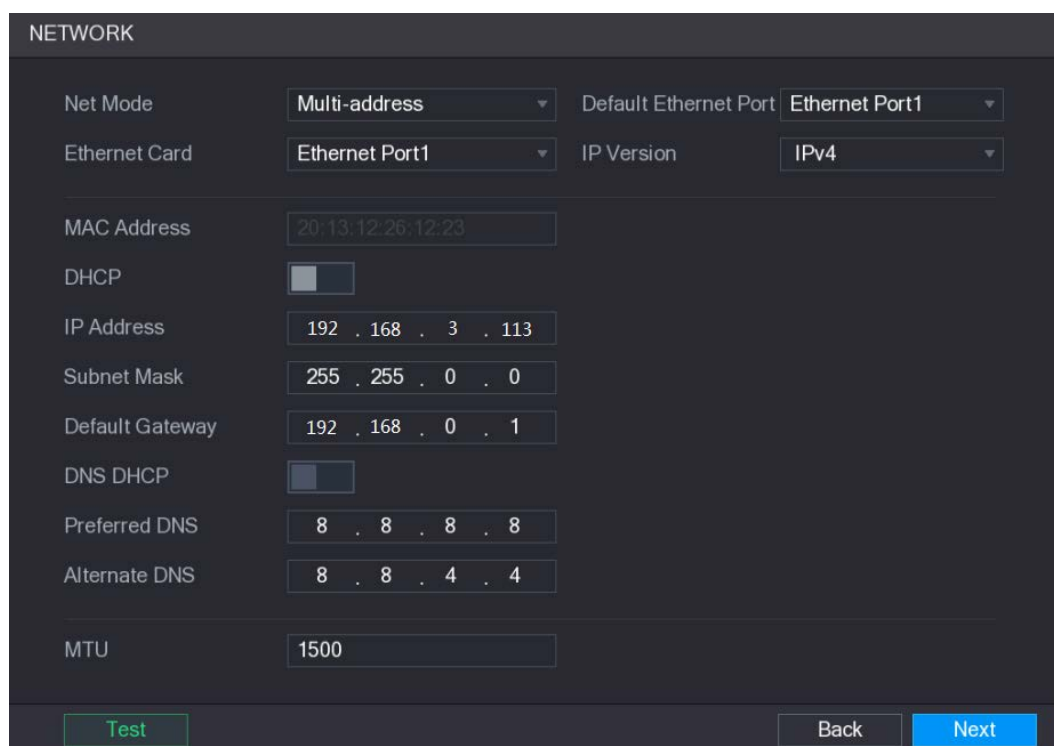
### 5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings

You can configure the basic network settings such as net mode, IP version, and IP address of the Device.

You can also configure network settings by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**.

**Step 1** After you have configured the date and time settings, on the **Date&Time** interface, click **Next**.



Figure 5-15 NETWORK




**Step 2** Configure the settings for network parameters.

Table 5-5 Network settings

Parameter	Description
Net Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Multi-address:</b> Two Ethernet ports work separately through either of which you can request the Device to provide the services such as HTTP</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	<p>and RTSP. You need to configure a default Ethernet port (usually the Ethernet port 1 by default) to request the services from the device end such as DHCP, Email and FTP. If one of the two Ethernet ports is disconnected as detected by networking testing, the system network status is regarded as offline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>Fault Tolerance:</b> Two Ethernet ports share one IP address. Normally only one Ethernet port is working and when this port fails, the other port will start working automatically to ensure the network connection. When testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> <li>● <b>Load Balance:</b> Two network cards share one IP address and they are working at the same time to share the network load averagely. If one of them fails, the other can continue working normally. When testing the network status, the network is regarded as offline only when both of the two Ethernet ports are disconnected. The two Ethernet ports are used under the same LAN.</li> </ul>  <p>The Device with single Ethernet port does not support this function.</p>
Default Ethernet Port	<p>In the <b>Ethernet Card</b> list, select an Ethernet port as a default port. This setting is available only when the <b>Multi-address</b> is selected in the <b>Net Mode</b> list.</p>
IP Version	<p>In the <b>IP Version</b> list, you can select <b>IPv4</b> or <b>IPv6</b>. Both versions are supported for access.</p>
MAC Address	<p>Displays the MAC address of the Device.</p>
DHCP	<p>Enable the DHCP function. The IP address, subnet mask and default gateway are not available for configuration once DHCP is enabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If DHCP is effective, the obtained information will display in the <b>IP Address</b> box, <b>Subnet Mask</b> box and <b>Default Gateway</b> box. If not, all values show 0.0.0.0.</li> <li>● If you want manually configure the IP information, disable the DHCP function first.</li> <li>● If PPPoE connection is successful, the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DHCP are not available for configuration.</li> </ul>
IP Address	<p>Enter the IP address and configure the corresponding subnet mask and default gateway.</p>  <p>IP address and default gateway must be in the same network segment.</p>
Subnet Mask	
Default Gateway	
DNS DHCP	<p>Enable the DHCP function to get the DNS address from router.</p>
Preferred DNS	<p>In the <b>Preferred DNS</b> box, enter the IP address of DNS.</p>
Alternate DNS	<p>In the <b>Alternate DNS</b> box, enter the IP address of alternate DNS.</p>

Parameter	Description
MTU	<p>In the <b>MTU</b> box, enter a value for network card. The value ranges from 1280 byte through 1500 byte. The default is 1500.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Modifying MTU value will cause network interruption and restart, which interrupt the network service. There is a pop-up message to let you confirm if you want to save the modification, if yes, the modification takes effect.</li> <li>Suggested MTU values are as below. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ 1500: The biggest value of Ethernet information package. This value is typically selected if there is no PPPoE or VPN connection, and it is also the default value of some routers, network adapters and switches.</li> <li>◇ 1492: Optimized value for PPPoE.</li> <li>◇ 1468: Optimized value for DHCP.</li> <li>◇ 1450: Optimized value for VPN.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Test	Click <b>Test</b> to test if the entered IP address and gateway are interworking.

### 5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings

You can add the Device into your cell phone client or the platform to manage.

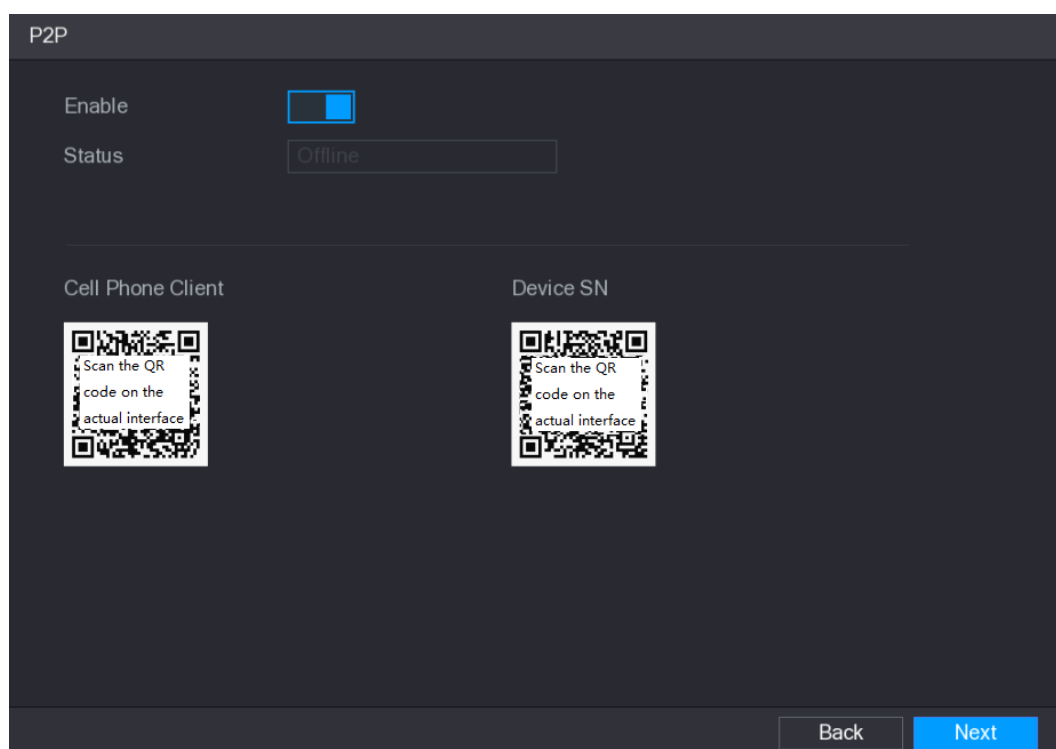
You can also configure P2P function by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > P2P**.



Make sure the DVR is connected into the Internet, and if yes, in the **Status** box of the P2P interface, it shows **Online**.

Step 1 After you have configured the network settings, on the **NETWORK** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-16 P2P




**Step 2** Enable the P2P function.

**Step 3** Click **Apply**.

You can start adding the device.

- Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device.
- Platform: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual.




You can also enter the QR code of Cell Phone Client and Device SN by clicking  on the upper-right of the interfaces after you have entered the Main Menu.

To use this function, take adding device into Cell Phone Client as an example.

### Adding Device into Cell Phone Client

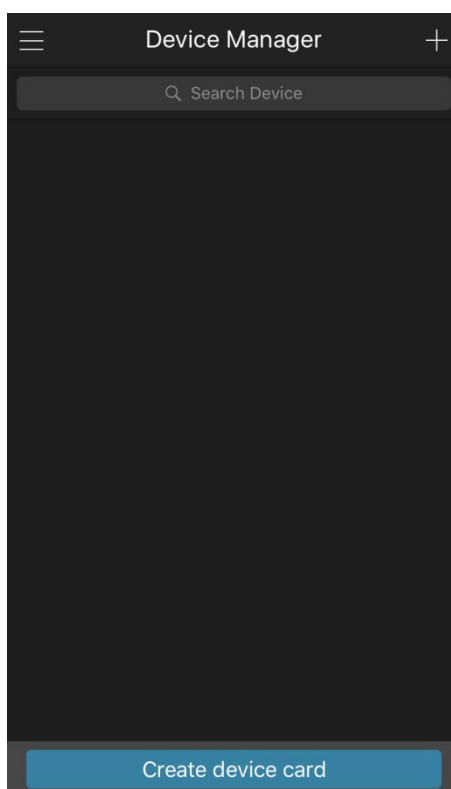
**Step 1** Use your cell phone to scan the QR code under Cell Phone Client to download the application.


**Step 2** On your cell phone, open the application, and then tap .

The menu is displayed. You can start adding the device.

- 1) Tap Device Manager.

Figure 5-17 Device manager



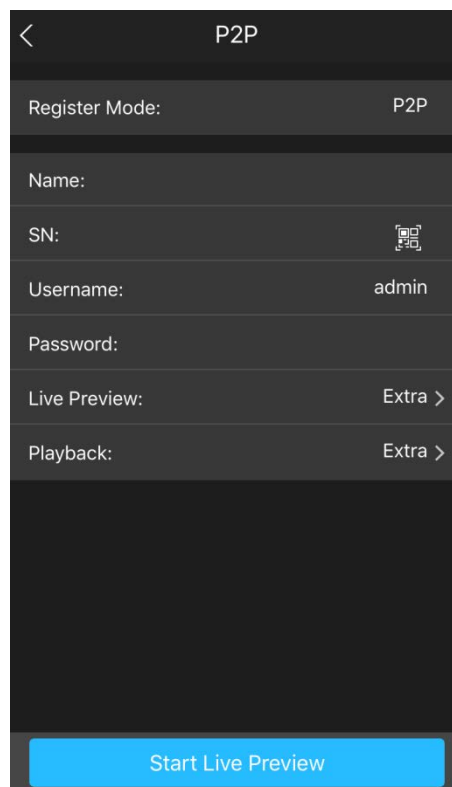
- 2) Tap  on the upper-right corner.  
The interface requiring device initialization is displayed. A pop-up message reminding you to make sure the Device is initialized is displayed.
- 3) Tap **OK**.
  - ◇ If the Device has not been initialized, Tap **Device Initialization** to perform initializing by following the onscreen instructions.
  - ◇ If the Device has been initialized, you can start adding it directly.
- 4) Tap **Add Device**.



You can add wireless device or wired device. The Manual takes adding wired device as an example.



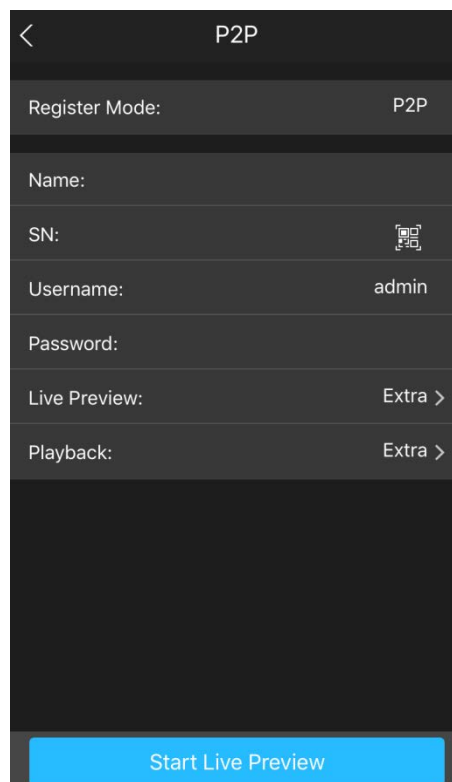
Figure 5-18 Add



The screenshot shows a mobile application interface for adding a P2P device. At the top, there is a back arrow and the title 'P2P'. Below the title, there are several input fields and options: 'Register Mode' is set to 'P2P'; 'Name' is an empty text field; 'SN' is an empty text field with a QR code icon to its right; 'Username' is set to 'admin'; 'Password' is an empty text field; 'Live Preview' is set to 'Extra' with a right arrow; and 'Playback' is set to 'Extra' with a right arrow. At the bottom of the screen, there is a large blue button labeled 'Start Live Preview'.

- 5) Tap **P2P**.

Figure 5-19 P2P

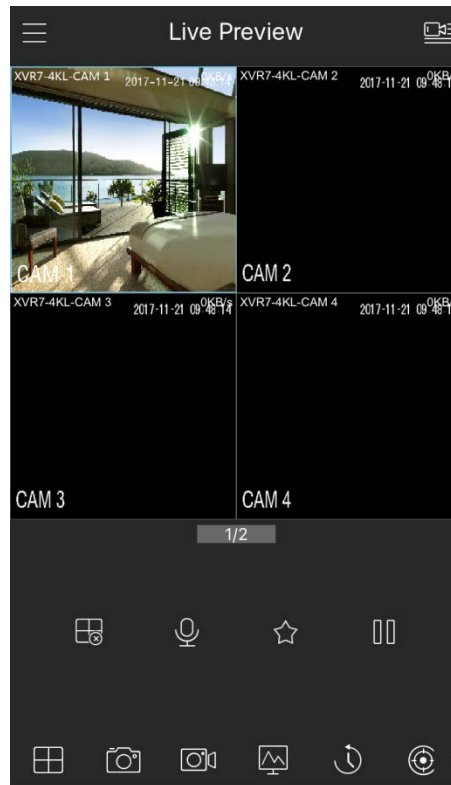


This screenshot is identical to Figure 5-18, showing the 'P2P Add' screen. It displays the same fields for Name, SN, Username, Password, Live Preview, and Playback, along with the 'Start Live Preview' button at the bottom.

- 6) Enter a name for the DVR, the username and password, scan the QR code under **Device SN**.
- 7) Tap **Start Live Preview**.

The Device is added and displayed on the live view interface of the cell phone.

Figure 5-20 Live preview



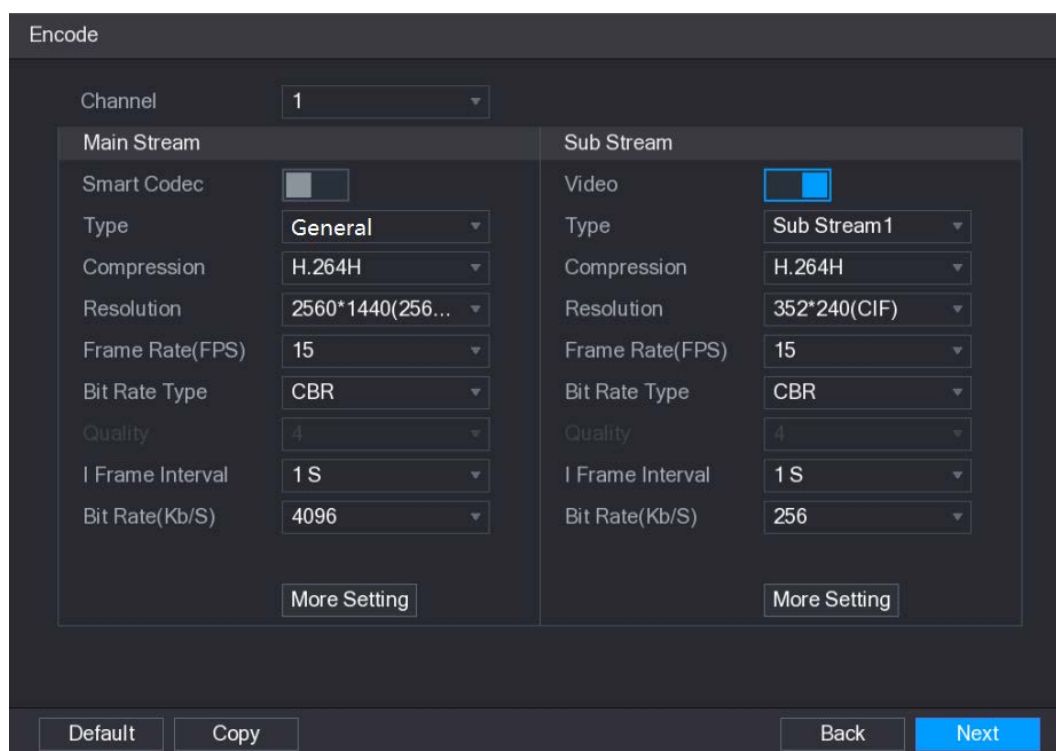
#### 5.1.4.6 Configuring Encoding Settings

You can configure the settings of main stream and sub stream for the Device.

You can also configure encode settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode**.

**Step 1** After you have configured the P2P settings, on the **P2P** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-21 Encode



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters.

Table 5-6 Main and sub streams parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.
Smart Codec	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage space.
Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Main Stream: In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>General</b>, <b>MD</b> (Motion Detect), or <b>Alarm</b>.</li> <li>Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.</li> </ul>
Compression	In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the encode mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high definition. This setting is recommended.</li> <li>H.264: General profile encoding.</li> <li>H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit stream compared with other settings for the same definition.</li> </ul>
Resolution	In the <b>Resolution</b> list, select resolution for the video. The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your device model.
Frame Rate (FPS)	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value, the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes along with the resolution. Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25; in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However, the

Parameter	Description
	actual range of frame rate that you can select depends on the capability of the Device.
Bit Rate Type	In the <b>Bit Rate Type</b> list, select <b>CBR</b> (Constant Bit Rate) or <b>VBR</b> (Variable Bit Rate). If you select <b>CBR</b> , the image quality cannot be configured; if you select <b>VBR</b> , the image quality can be configured.
Quality	This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List. The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	In the <b>Bit Rate</b> list, select a value or enter a customized value to change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.
Audio Encode	Click <b>More Setting</b> , the <b>More Setting</b> interface is displayed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite audio and video stream.</li> <li>Audio Source: In the <b>Audio Source</b> list, you can select <b>LOCAL</b> and <b>HDCVI</b>. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio In port.</li> <li>◇ HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Audio Format: In the <b>Audio Format</b> list, select a format that you need.</li> </ul>
Audio Source	
Audio Format	

### 5.1.4.7 Configuring Snapshot Settings

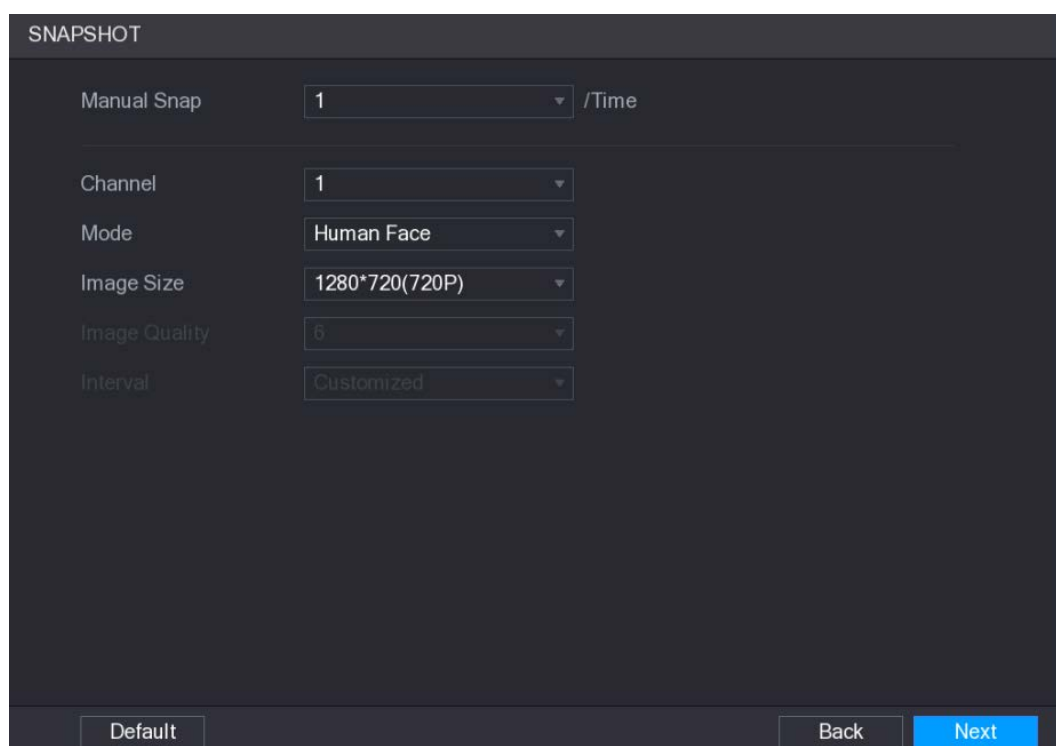
You can configure the basic snapshot settings such as quantity of snapshot each time, channel(s) to take snapshot, and image size and quality of snapshot.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

For more information about snapshot settings, see "5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings."

**Step 1** After you have configured the encode settings, on the **Encode** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-22 Snapshot



SNAPSHOT

Manual Snap  /Time

Channel

Mode

Image Size

Image Quality

Interval

Default Back Next

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters.

Table 5-7 Snapshot parameters

Parameter	Description
Manual Snap	In the <b>Manual Snap</b> list, select how many snapshots you want to take each time.
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.
Mode	In the <b>Mode</b> list, select type of snapshots.
Image Size	In the <b>Image Size</b> list, select a value for the image.
Image Quality	Configure the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the better the image will become.
Interval	Configure or customize the snapshot frequency.

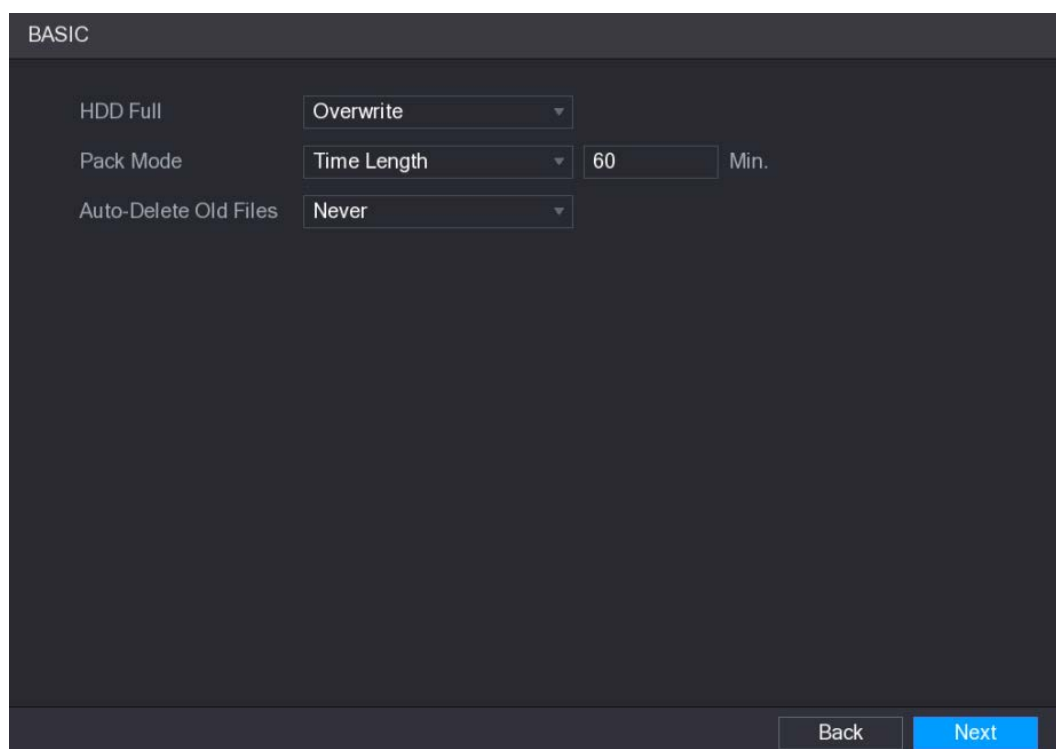
### 5.1.4.8 Configuring Basic Storage Settings

You can configure the settings for the situations when HDD is full, file length and time length of recorded video, and the settings if to auto-delete the old files.

You can also configure basic storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC**.

**Step 1** After you have configured the encode settings, on the **SNAPSHOT** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-23 BASIC



**Step 2** Configure the basic storage settings parameters.

Table 5-8 Storage settings

Parameter	Description
HDD Full	Configure the settings for the situation when all the read/write discs are full, and there is no more free disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>Stop Record</b> to stop recording</li> <li>Select <b>Overwrite</b> to overwrite the recorded video files always from the earliest time.</li> </ul>
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.
Auto-Delete Old Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, in the <b>Auto-Delete Old Files</b> list, select <b>Customized</b> to configure the time length for how long you want to keep the old files.

#### 5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You can configure the schedule for the recorded video such as channels to record, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure recorded video storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Record**.


**Step 1** After you have configured the basic storage settings, on the **BASIC** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-24 Record

**Step 2** Configure the record settings parameters.

Table 5-9 Record settings

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to record the video.
Pre-record	In the <b>Pre-record</b> list, enter the amount of time that you want to start the recording in advance.
Redundancy	<p>If there are several HDDs installed to the Device, you can set one of the HDDs as the redundant HDD to save the recorded files into different HDDs. In case one of the HDDs is damaged, you can find the backup in the other HDD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; HDD MANAGER</b>, and then set a HDD as redundant HDD.</li> <li>● Select <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Record</b>, and then select the <b>Redundancy</b> check box.</li> </ul> <p>◇ If the selected channel is not recording, the redundancy function takes effect next time you record no matter you select the check box or not.</p> <p>◇ If the selected channel is recording, the current recorded files will be packed, and then start recording according to the new schedule.</p> <p> Not all models support this function.</p> <p>The redundant HDD only back up the recorded videos but not snapshots.</p>
Event type	Select the check box of the event type which includes <b>General</b> , <b>MD</b> (motion detect, video loss, tempering, diagnosis), <b>Alarm</b> (IoT alarms, local

Parameter	Description
	alarms, alarms from alarm box, IPC external alarms, IPC Offline alarms), <b>MD&amp;Alarm</b> , <b>Intel</b> (IVS events, face detection), and <b>POS</b> .
Period	Define a period during which the configured recording setting is active.  The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.
Copy	Click <b>Copy</b> to copy the settings to other channels.

**Step 3** Define the video recording period by drawing or editing. By default, it is active all the time.



- Define the period by drawing.



- Select the check box of event type.

Figure 5-25 Event type



- Define a period. The system supports maximum six periods.

- Define for the whole week: Click  next to **All**, all the icon switches to , you can define the period for all the days simultaneously.

- Define for several days of a week: Click  before each day one by one, the icon switches to . You can define the period for the selected days simultaneously.

- On the timeline, drag to define a period. The Device starts recoding the selected event type in the defined period.

Figure 5-26 Timeline



The color bar indicates the event type that is effective in a defined period:



- Recording priority in case of event types are overlapped: **MD&Alarm > Alarm > Intel > MD > General**.





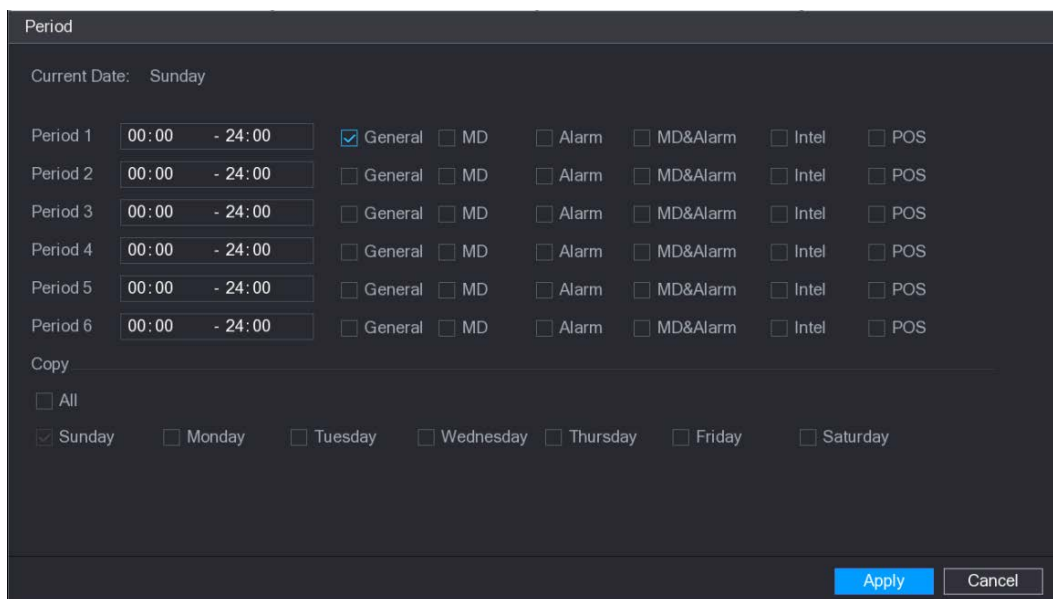
- Select the check box of event type, and then click  to clear the defined period.
  - When selecting **MD&Alarm**, the respective check box of MD and Alarm will be cleared.
  - Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click .
- The **Period** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-27 Period



Period

Current Date: Sunday

Period	Time Range	General	MD	Alarm	MD&Alarm	Intel	POS
Period 1	00:00 - 24:00	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Period 2	00:00 - 24:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Period 3	00:00 - 24:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Period 4	00:00 - 24:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Period 5	00:00 - 24:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Period 6	00:00 - 24:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Copy

☐ All

☒ Sunday ☐ Monday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Wednesday ☐ Thursday ☐ Friday ☐ Saturday

Apply Cancel

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the event check box.
  - ◇ There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ◇ Under **Copy**, select **All** to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **Apply** to save the settings.

**Step 4** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



- Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
- After configuring the recording schedule settings, you need to perform the following operations to start recording according to the defined schedule.
  - ◇ Enable the alarm event and configure the settings for the recording channel. For details, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."
  - ◇ You need to enable the recording function, see "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."

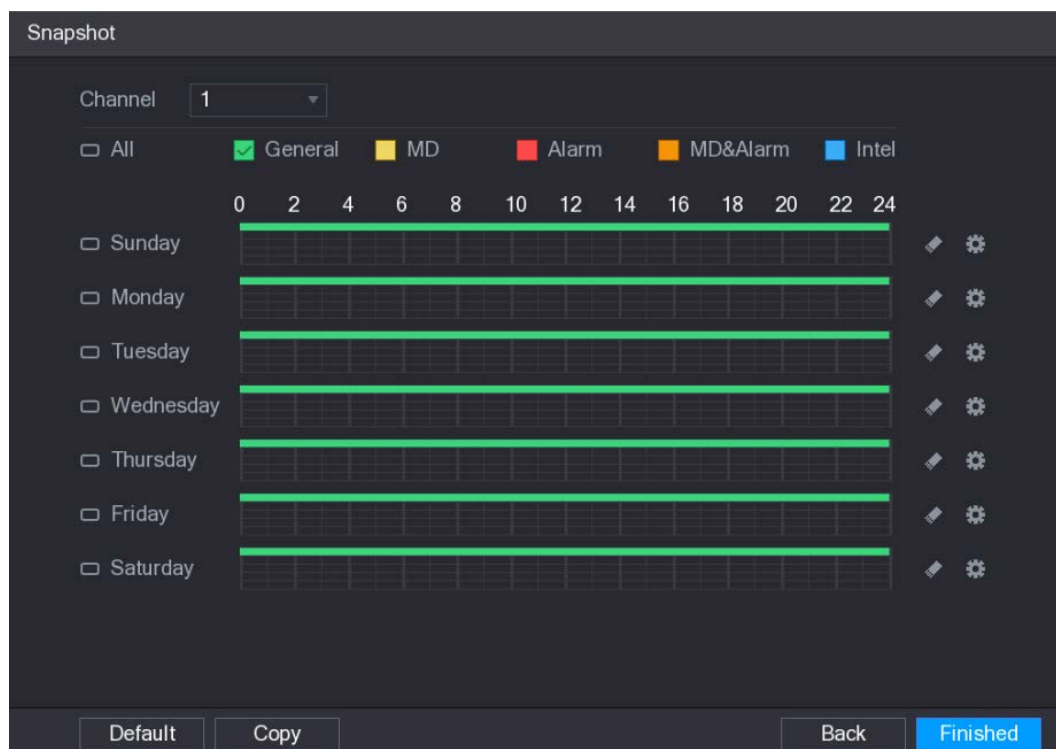
#### 5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You can configure the storage schedule for the snapshot such as channels to take snapshot, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure snapshot storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Snapshot**.

**Step 1** After you have configured the video recording settings, on the **Record** interface, click **Next**.

Figure 5-28 Snapshot



**Step 2** Configure the snapshot settings parameters.

Table 5-10 Snapshot settings

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to take a snapshot.
Event type	Select the check box of the event type which includes <b>General</b> , <b>MD</b> , <b>Alarm</b> , <b>MD&amp;Alarm</b> , <b>Intel</b> , and <b>POS</b> .
Period	Define a period during which the configured snapshot setting is active. For details about defining a period, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule."
Copy	Click <b>Copy</b> to copy the settings to other channels.

**Step 3** Click **Finished**.

A pop-up message is displayed.

**Step 4** Click **OK**.

The live view screen is displayed. The setting up with startup wizard is completed. You can start using the Device.

## 5.2 Live View

After you logged in to the Device, the live view is displayed. See 5.2.1. The number of channels displayed depends on your model.

To enter the live view screen from other interfaces, click  on the upper-right of the screen.

Figure 5-29 Live view







## 5.2.1 Live View Screen

You can view the live video from the connected cameras through each channel on the screen.

- By default, the system time, channel name and channel number are displayed on each channel window. This setting can be configured by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY**.
- The figure in the bottom right corner represents channel number. If the channel position is changed or the channel name is modified, you can recognize the channel number by this figure and then perform the operations such as record query and playback.

Table 5-11 Icons description

Icon	Function
	Indicates recording status. This icon displays when the video is being recorded.
	This icon displays when the motion detection occurs in the scene.
	This icon displays when the video loss is detected.
	This icon displays when the channel monitoring is locked.



To switch the position of two channels, point to one of the two channels, and then drag the window to the other channel.

## 5.2.2 Live View Control Bar

The live view control bar provides you access to perform the operations such as playback, zoom, real-time backup, manual snapshot, voice talk, and streams switch.

When you move the pointer to the top middle position of a channel window, the live view control bar is displayed.



If there is not operation for six seconds after the control bar is displayed, the control bar hides automatically.

Figure 5-30 Analog channel



Figure 5-31 Digital channel




Table 5-12 Live control bar description

No.	Function	No.	Function	No.	Function
1	Instant Play	4	Manual Snap	7	Camera Registration

No.	Function	No.	Function	No.	Function
2	Digital Zoom	5	Mute	—	—
3	Real-time Backup	6	Audio Talk	—	—

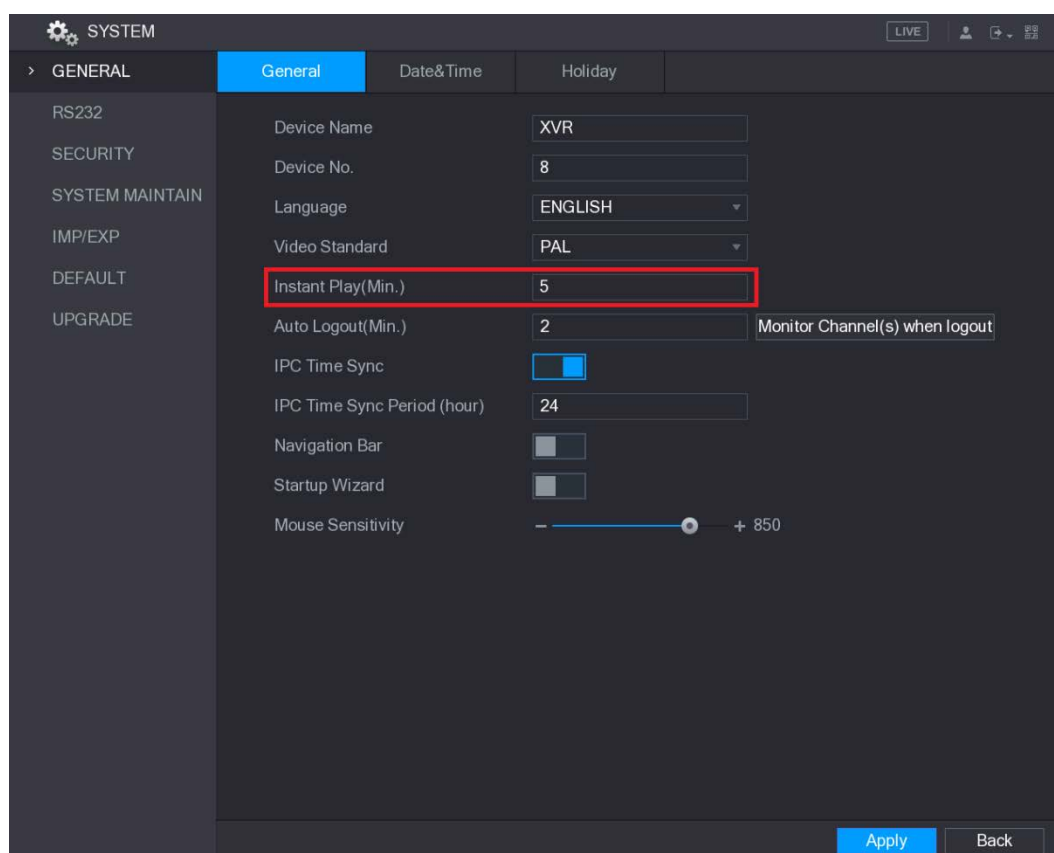
### 5.2.2.1 Instant Playback

You can play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video.

By clicking , the instant playback interface is displayed. The instant playback has the following features:




- Move the slider to choose the time you want to start playing.
- Play, pause and close playback.
- The information such as channel name and recording status icon are shielded during instant playback and will not display until exited.
- During playback, screen split layout switch is not allowed.
- To change the playback time, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL**, in the **Instant Play** box, enter the time you want to play back.

Figure 5-32 General




### 5.2.2.2 Digital Zoom

You can enlarge a specific area of the image to view the details by either of the following two ways.

- Click , the icon switches to . Hold down the left mouse button to select the area you want to enlarge. The area is enlarged after the left mouse button is released.
  - Point to the center that you want to enlarge, rotate the wheel button to enlarge the area.
- 
- For some models, when the image is enlarged in the first way described previously, the selected area is zoomed proportionally according to the window.
  - When the image is in the enlarged status, you can drag the image toward any direction to view the other enlarged areas.
  - Right-click on the enlarged image to return the original status.


### 5.2.2.3 Real-time Backup

You can record the video of any channel and save the clip into a USB storage device.

By clicking , the recording is started. To stop recording, click this icon again. The clip is automatically saved into the connected USB storage device.

### 5.2.2.4 Manual Snapshot

You can take one to five snapshots of the video and save into a USB storage device.

By clicking , you can take snapshots. The snapshots are automatically saved into the connected USB storage device. You can view the snapshots on your PC.





To change the quantity of snapshots, select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**, in the **Manual Snap** list, select the snapshot quantity.


### 5.2.2.5 Mute (Analog channel only)

You can mute the video sound by clicking . This function is supported in single-channel view.

### 5.2.2.6 Bidirectional Talk (Digital channel only)


You can perform the voice interaction between the Device and the remote device to improve efficiency of emergency. This function is supported only when the remotely connected IPC device supports bidirectional talk.

- Click , the icon switches to , and the bidirectional talk of the remote device is turned on. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is disabled.

- Click  to cancel the bidirectional talk. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is resumed.

### 5.2.2.7 Remote Devices (Digital channel only)

You can view the information of remote devices and add new remote devices to replace the current connected devices.

By clicking , the **Camera Registration** interface is displayed. For details about adding the remote devices, see "5.6 Configuring Remote Devices."

## 5.2.3 Navigation Bar

You can access the functions to perform operations through the function icons on the navigation bar. For example, you can access Main Menu and switch window split mode. See Table 5-13.




















The navigation bar is disabled by default. It does not appear in the live view screen until it is enabled. To enable it, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > GENERAL**, enable the Navigation Bar, and then click **Apply**.

Figure 5-33 Navigation bar



Table 5-13 Navigation bar description

Icon	Function
	Open Main Menu.
	Expand or condense the navigation bar.
	Select view layout.
	Go to the previous screen.
	Go to the next screen.
	Enable tour function. The icon switches to  .
	Open the PTZ control panel. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
	Open the <b>Color Setting</b> interface. For details, see "5.2.5 Color Setting."
	 This function is supported only in single-channel layout.

Icon	Function
	Open the record search interface. For detail, see "5.9 Playing Back Video."
	Open the <b>EVENT</b> interface to view the device alarm status. For details, see "5.19.3 Viewing Event Information."
	Open the <b>CHANNEL INFO</b> interface to display the information of each channel.
	Open the <b>CAMERA REGISTRATION</b> interface. For details, see "5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices."
	Open the <b>NETWORK</b> interface. For details, see "5.14.1 Configuring Network Settings."
	Open the <b>HDD MANAGER</b> interface. For details, see "5.17.3 Configuring HDD Manager."
	Open the <b>USB MANAGER</b> interface. For details about USB operations, see "5.13.2 Backing up Files", "5.19.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings", "5.18.7 Upgrading the Device."

## 5.2.4 Shortcut Menu

You can quickly access some function interfaces such as main menu, record search, PTZ setting, color setting and select the view split mode.

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. See Table 5-14. For details about the functions of shortcut menu, see "5.2.5 Color Setting".



After you access any interface through shortcut menu, you can return to the previous screen by right-clicking on the current screen.



Figure 5-34 Shortcut menu

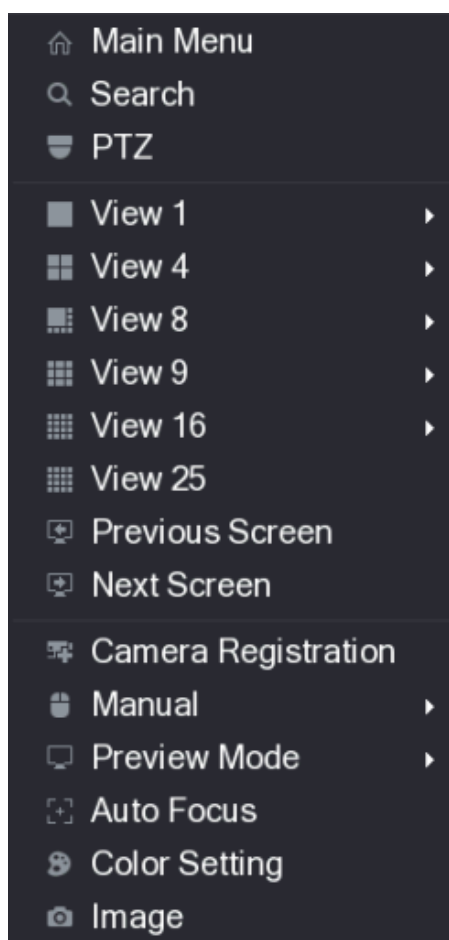



Table 5-14 Shortcut menu description

Function	Description
Main Menu	Open <b>Main Menu</b> interface.
Search	Open the <b>PLAYBACK</b> interface where you can search and play back record files.
PTZ	Open the <b>PTZ</b> interface.
View Layout	Configure the live view screen as a single-channel layout or multi-channel layout.
Previous Screen	Click <b>Previous Screen</b> to go to the previous screen. For example, if you are using 4-split mode, the first screen is displaying the channel 1-4, click <b>Next screen</b> , you can view channel 5-8.
Next Screen	
Camera Registration	Open the <b>CAMERA REGISTRATION</b> interface. For details, see "5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices."
Manual	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>Record</b>, you can configure the recording mode as <b>Auto</b> or <b>Manual</b>, or stop the recording. You can also enable or disable snapshot function</li> <li>Select <b>Alarm Out</b>, you can configure alarm output settings.</li> </ul>
Preview Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>General</b>, the layout of live view screen is as default.</li> <li>Select <b>Show Face List</b>, the detected face snapshots are displayed in the bottom of the live view screen.</li> </ul>

Function	Description
Auto Focus	Point to the channel window and right-click on it to open the shortcut menu, and then click <b>Auto Focus</b> .  Not all cameras support this function.
Color Setting	Open the <b>COLOR</b> interface where you can adjust the video image color.
Image	Click to modify the camera properties.

## 5.2.5 Color Setting

You can adjust the video image color effect such as sharpness, brightness, and contrast. The parameters are different according to the connected camera type. Take analog channel as an example.

In the live view screen, right-click on the analog channel to see the shortcut menu, and then select **Color Setting**, the **COLOR** interface is displayed. See Table 5-15.

For details, see "5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings."

Figure 5-35 Color

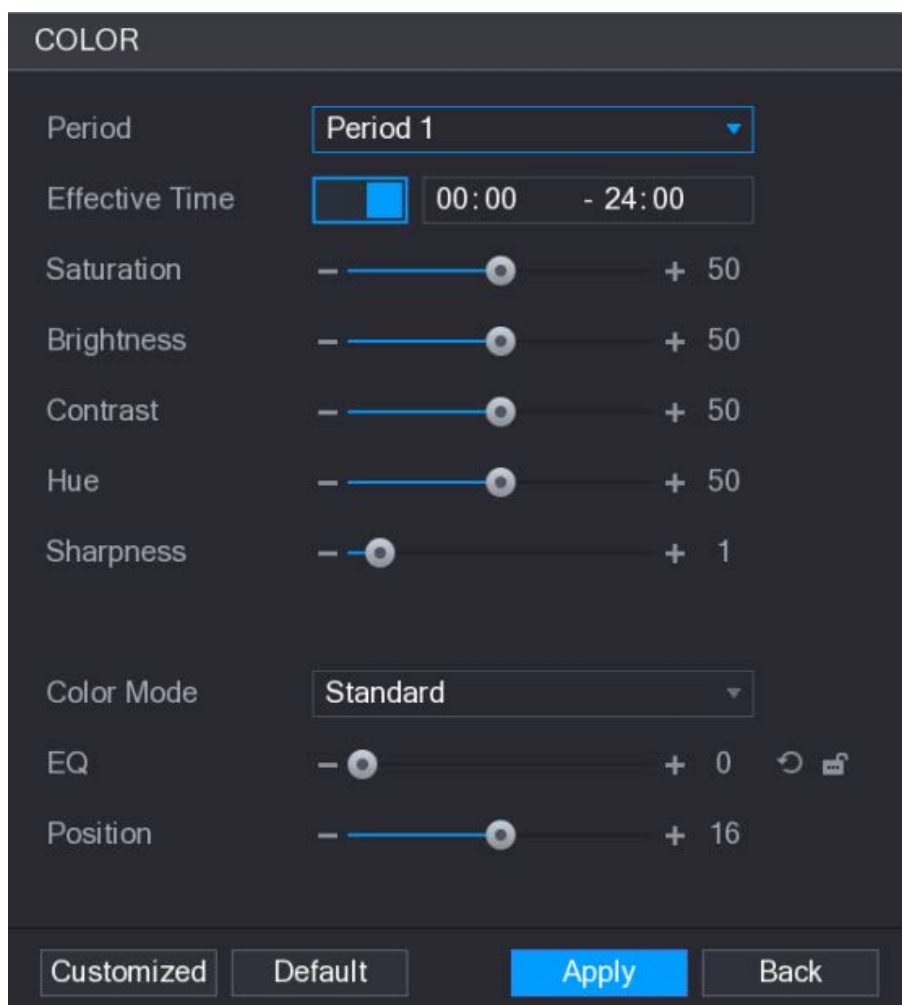






Table 5-15 Color description

Parameter	Description
Period	Divide 24 hours into two periods and configure the corresponding color settings.
Effective Time	Enable the function and then set the effective time for each period.
Sharpness	Adjust the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater. The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.
Hue	Adjust the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50.
Brightness	Adjust the image brightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The bigger the value is, the brighter the image will become. You can adjust this value when the image as a whole looks dark or bright. However, the image is likely to become dim if the value is too big. The recommended range is between 40 and 60.
Contrast	Adjust the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more obvious the contrast between the light area and dark area will become. You can adjust this value when the contrast is not obvious. However, if the value is too big, the dark area is likely to become darker and the light area over exposed. If the value is too small, the image is likely to become dim. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The recommended range is between 40 and 60.
Saturation	Adjust the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color will become. This value does not influence the general image lightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The recommended range is between 40 and 60.
Color Mode	In the Color Mode list, you can select Standard, Soft, Bright, Colorful, Bank, Customized 1, Customized 2, Customized 3, and Customized 4. The sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation will adjust automatically according to the selected color mode.
EQ	Enhance the image effect. Adjust the effect value. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click , image is adjusted to the optimized effect automatically.</li> <li>Click , the current effect setting will be locked.</li> </ul>  Only HD analog channel supports this function.
Position	Adjust the display position of the image in the channel window. The value indicates pixel. The default value is 16.  This function is only supported by analog channel.

Parameter	Description
Customized	<p>You can customize four color modes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Customized</b>. The <b>Customized Color</b> interface is displayed.</li> <li>2. In the <b>Color Mode</b> list, select <b>Customized 1</b>, for example. Then configure the settings for sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation. If you select <b>All</b>, the configuration will apply to all four customized color modes.</li> <li>3. Click <b>OK</b>.</li> <li>4. On the <b>COLOR</b> interface, in the <b>Color Mode</b> list, you can select the customized color mode.</li> </ol>

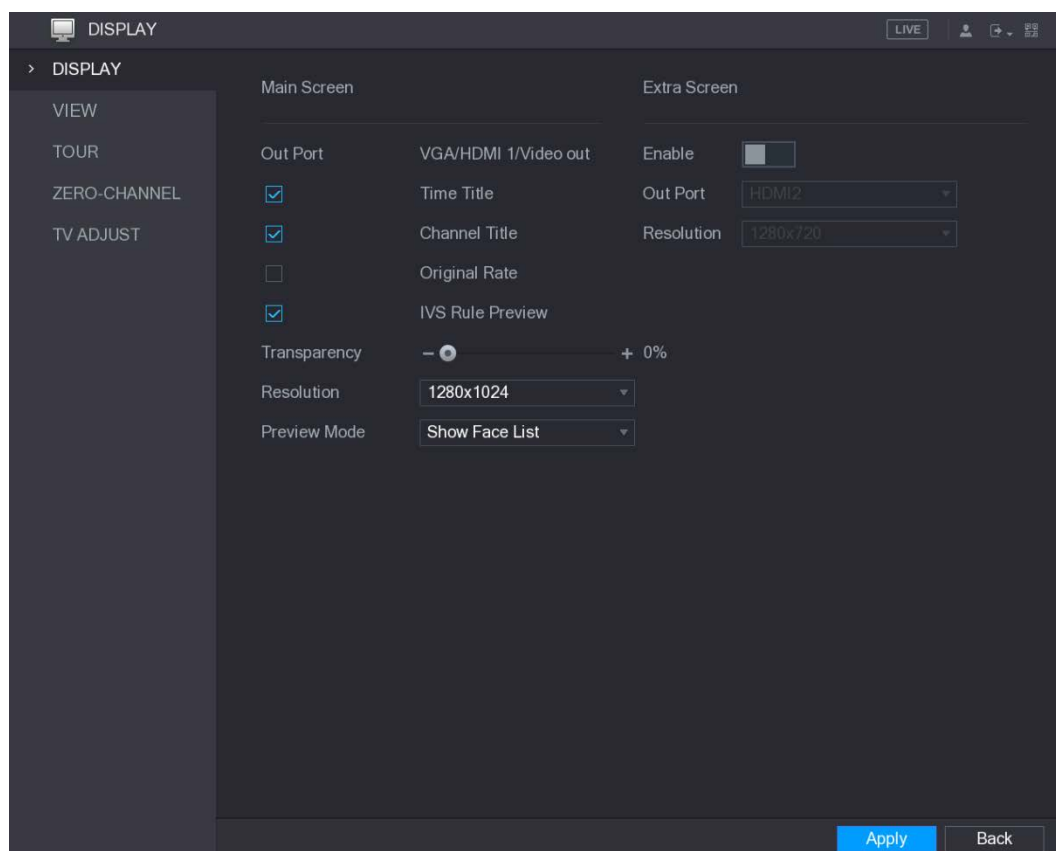
## 5.2.6 Live View Display

### 5.2.6.1 Configuring Display Settings

You can configure the display effect such as displaying time title and channel title, adjusting image transparency, and selecting the resolution.





**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > Display**.

Figure 5-36 Display



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the display parameters.

Table 5-16 Display parameters

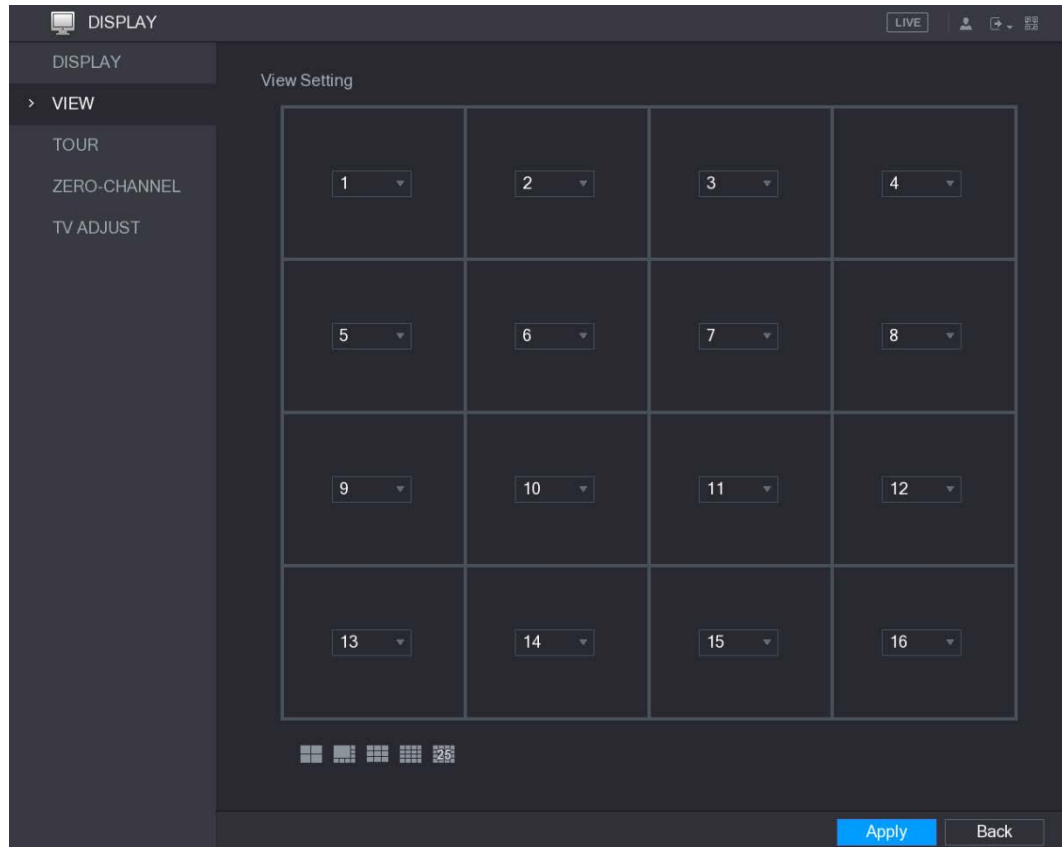
Parameter		Description
Main Screen	Out Port	Indicates the main screen port.
	Time Title	Select the <b>Time Title</b> check box, the current system time displays in each channel window in live view screen. To hide the time, clear the check box.
	Channel Title	Select the <b>Channel Title</b> check box, the channel name, channel number and recording status display in each channel window in live view screen. To hide the time, clear the check box.
	Original Rate	Select the <b>Original Rate</b> check box, the video image displays in its actual size in the channel window.
	IVS Rule Preview	Select the <b>IVS Rule Preview</b> check box to enable IVS rule preview function.
	Transparency	Configure the transparency of the graphical user interface (GUI). The higher the value, the more transparent the GUI becomes.
	Resolution	Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA port and HDMI port is 1280×1024.  Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the HDMI port.
Extra Screen	Preview Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General: No information is displayed on the channel window.</li> <li>Show Face List: Displays the detected face snapshots taken as a result of face detection on the bottom of the live view screen.</li> </ul>  Not all models support this function.
	Enable	Enable extra screen function. After this function is enabled, you can select which port as extra screen port, and the other port automatically becomes the main screen port.
	Out Port	Select the VGA port or HDMI port as the port connected by a secondary monitor. For example, if you select HDMI port as the extra screen port, the VGA port automatically becomes the main screen port.
	Resolution	Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA port and HDMI port is 1280×720.  Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the HDMI port.
		 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The main menu does not display on the extra screen.</li> <li>If you do not enable the extra screen function, both the VGA port and HDMI port display the same image.</li> </ul>

## 5.2.6.2 Configuring Viewing Layout

You can configure the view layout in the live view screen.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > VIEW**.

Figure 5-37 View



**Step 2** Configure the view layout by clicking the layout buttons on the bottom.

Figure 5-38 Layout




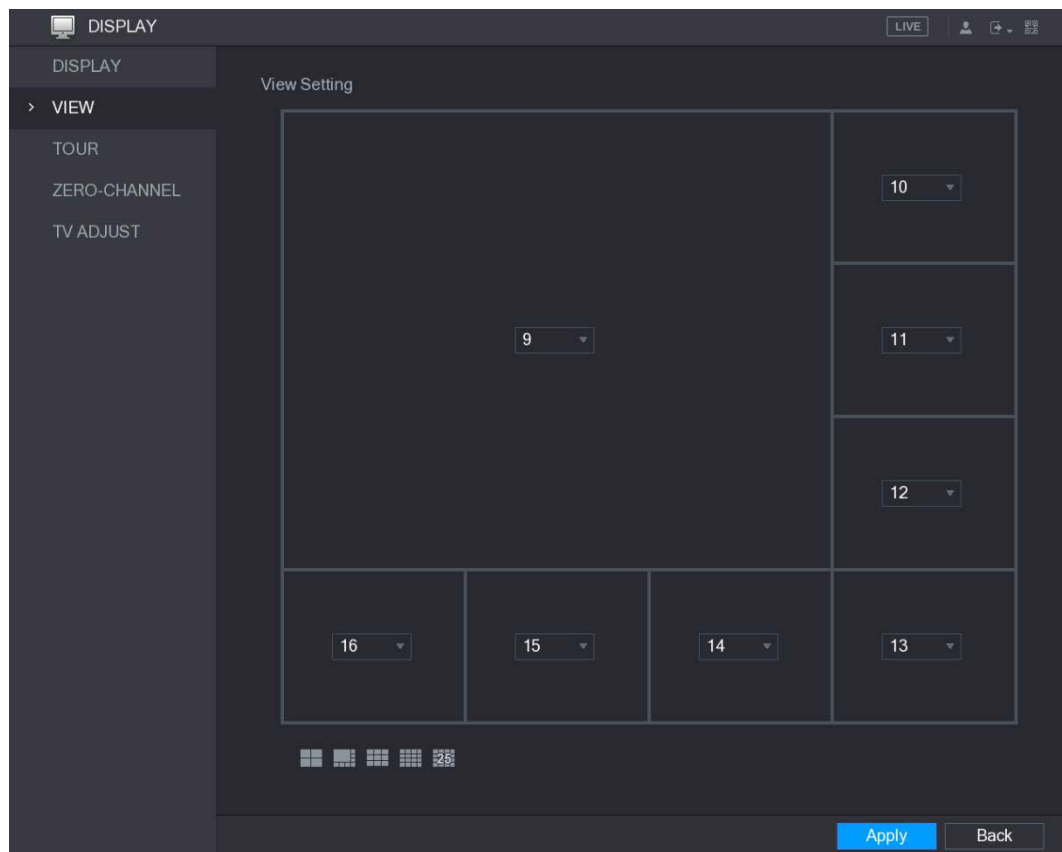
For example, click  and select **9-16**, the view layout changes immediately.

Figure 5-39 View setting



**Step 3** Adjust the position of channels if needed.

In the channel list, for example, in the channel 9 list, you can select 10, and then the channel 9 and channel 10 exchange positions.

Step 4 Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

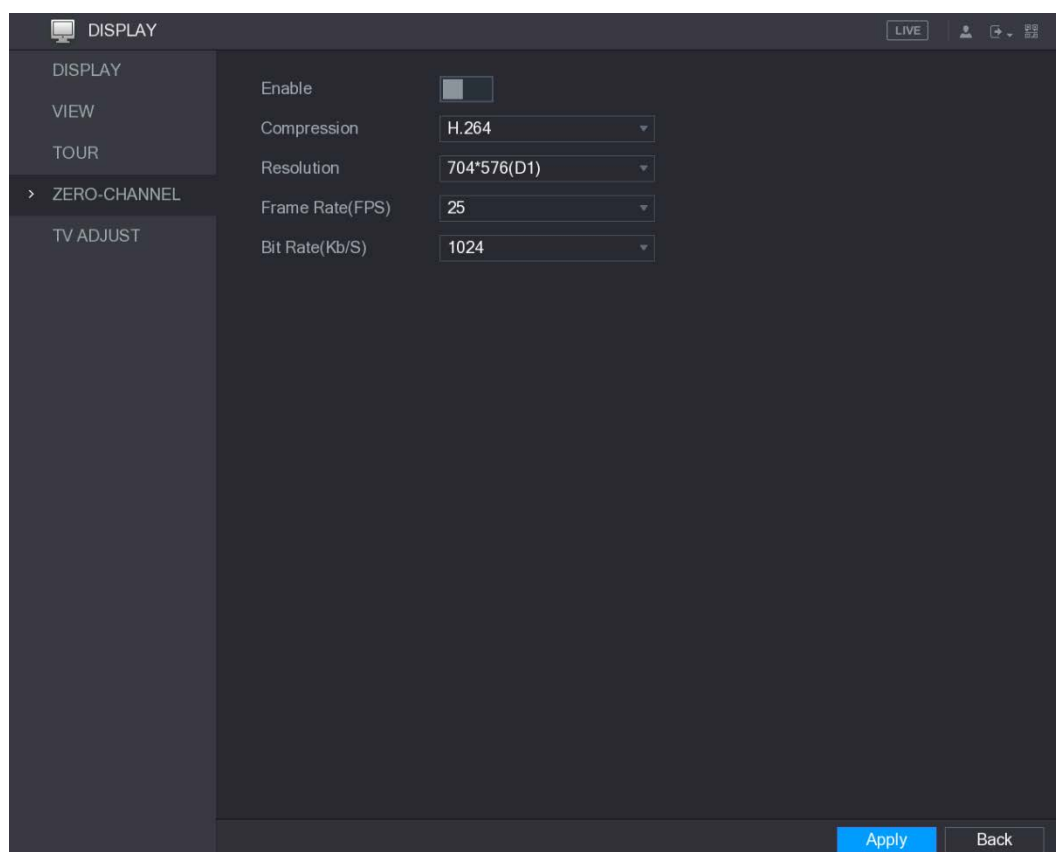
The live view screen displays the same layout as configured in this section.

### 5.2.6.3 Configuring Zero-Channel Settings

You can view several video sources on one channel on the web end.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > ZERO-CHANNEL.**

Figure 5-40 ZERO-CHANNEL



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the zero-channel parameters.

Table 5-17 Zero-channel parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable zero-channel function.
Compression	In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the video compression standard according to the device capability. The default is H.264.
Resolution	In the <b>Resolution</b> list, select the video resolution. The default is 704×576 (D1).
Frame Rate (FPS)	Select a value between 1 and 25 for PAL standard, and between 1 and 30 for NTSC standard. The actual arrange is decided and selected dependent on the Device capability.
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	The default value is 1024Kb/S. The actual arrange is decided and selected dependent on the Device capability and frame rate.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.

On the live interface on the web, click  to select one of the multi-channel modes, and then you can view the local video image.



## 5.2.6.4 Configuring TV

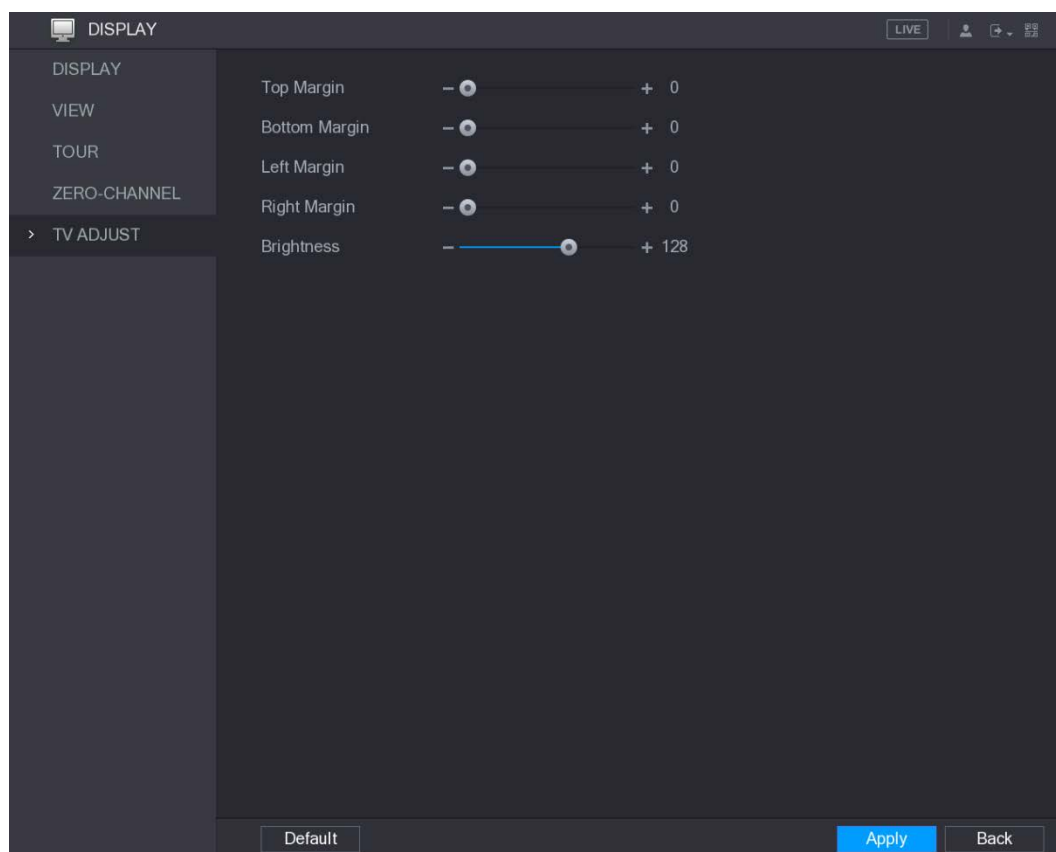


Not all models support this function.

You can adjust the border margins in top, bottom, left and right directions as well as the brightness of the monitor connected to the Video out port of the Device.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > TV ADJUST**.

Figure 5-41 TV adjustment



**Step 2** Configure the parameters according to your actual situation.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.2.7 Configuring Tour Settings

You can configure a tour of selected channels to repeat playing videos. The videos display in turn according to the channel group configured in tour settings. The system is playing one channel group for a certain period and then automatically changes to the next channel group.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR**.

The **TOUR** interface is displayed. There are **Main Screen** tab and **Extra Screen** tab.

Figure 5-42 Main screen

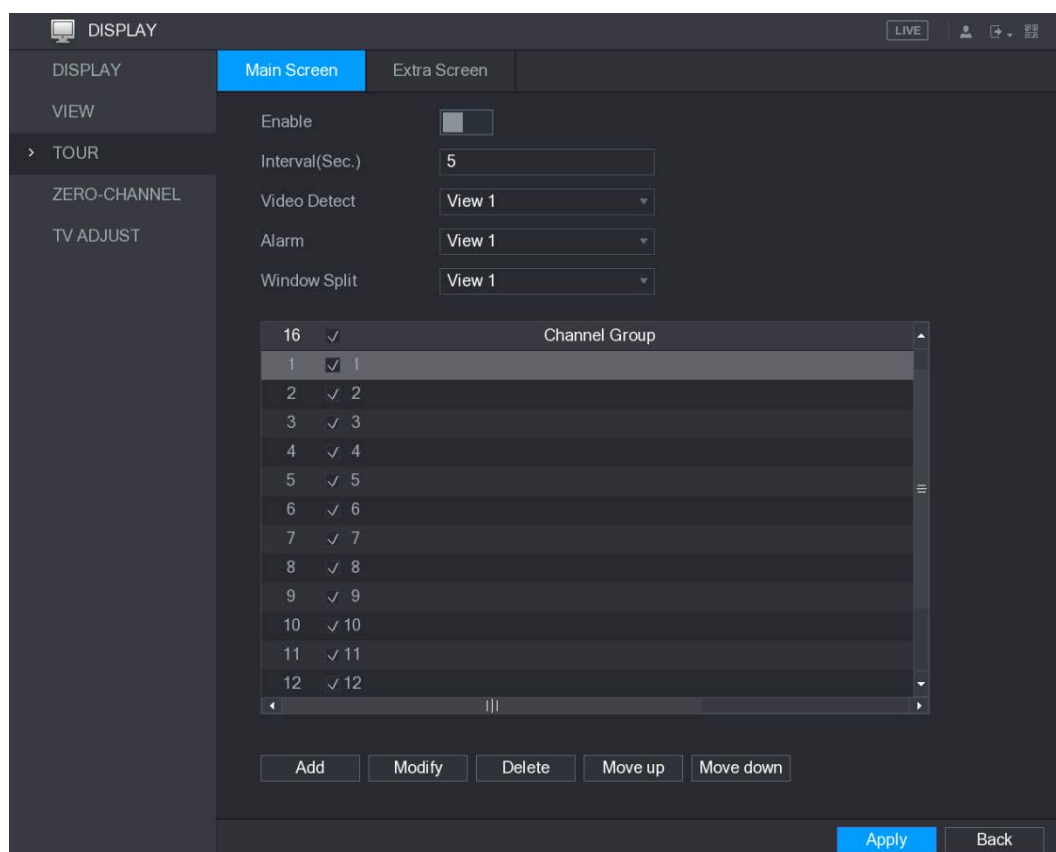
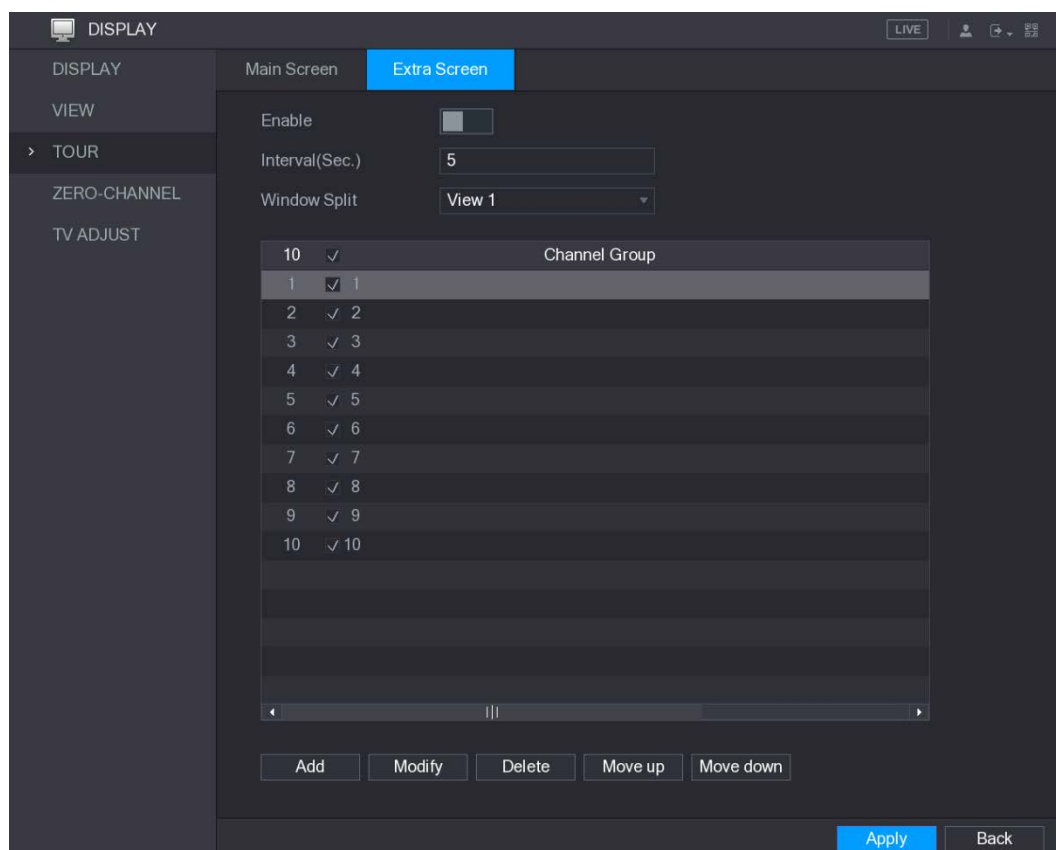


Figure 5-43 Extra screen







**Step 2** Configure the settings for the tour parameters for both Main Screen and Extra Screen.

Table 5-18 Screen parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable tour function.
Interval (Sec.)	Enter the amount of time that you want each channel group displays on the screen. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 120 seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.
Video Detect, Alarm	Select the View 1 or View 8 for <b>Motion Detect</b> tour and <b>Alarm Tour</b> (system alarm events).
Window Split	In the <b>Window Split</b> list, select <b>View 1</b> , <b>View 4</b> , <b>View 8</b> , or other modes that are supported by the Device.
Channel Group	<p>Display all channel groups under the current Window Split setting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Add a channel group: Click <b>Add</b>, in the pop-up <b>Add Group</b> channel, select the channels to form a group, and then click <b>Save</b>.</li> <li>● Delete a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group, and then click <b>Delete</b>.</li> <li>● Edit a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group and then click <b>Modify</b>, or double-click on the group. The <b>Modify Channel Group</b> dialog box is displayed. You can regroup the channels.</li> <li>● Click <b>Move up</b> or <b>Move down</b> to adjust the position of channel group.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.



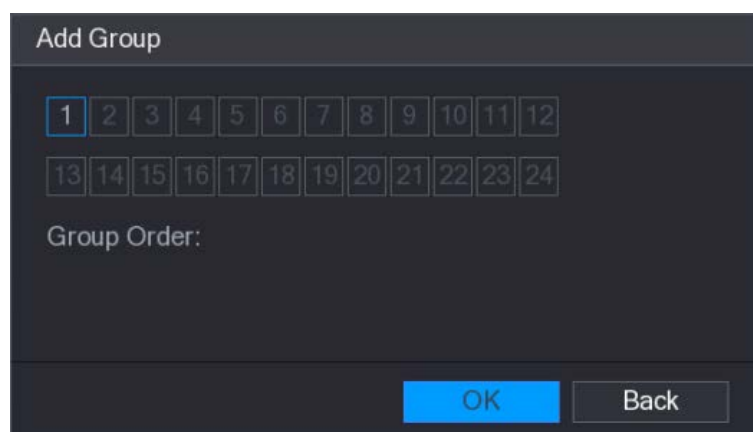
- On the upper-right of the live view screen, use the left mouse button or press Shift to switch between  (image switching is allowed) and  (image switching is not allowed) to turn on/off the tour function.
- On the navigation bar, click  to enable the tour and click  to disable it.

## Adding a Channel Group

**Step 1** Click **Add**.

The **Add Group** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-44 Add group

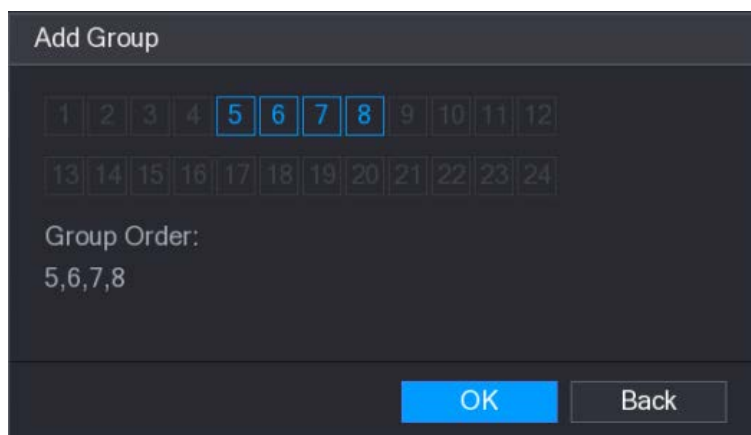


**Step 2** Select the channels that you want to group for tour.



If you want to select more than one channel, in the **Window Split** list, do not select **View 1**.

Figure 5-45 Select channels



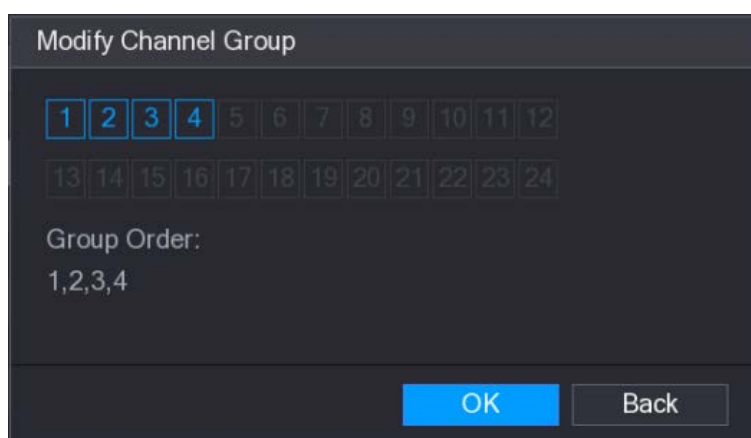
**Step 3** Click **OK** to complete the settings.

### Modifying a Channel Group

Double-click on a channel group, the **Modify Channel Group** interface is displayed.

You can modify channel group and click **OK** to complete the settings.

Figure 5-46 Modify channel group



## 5.3 Entering Main Menu

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed, Click **Main Menu** and then log in to the system. The Main Menu is displayed.

Figure 5-47 Main menu

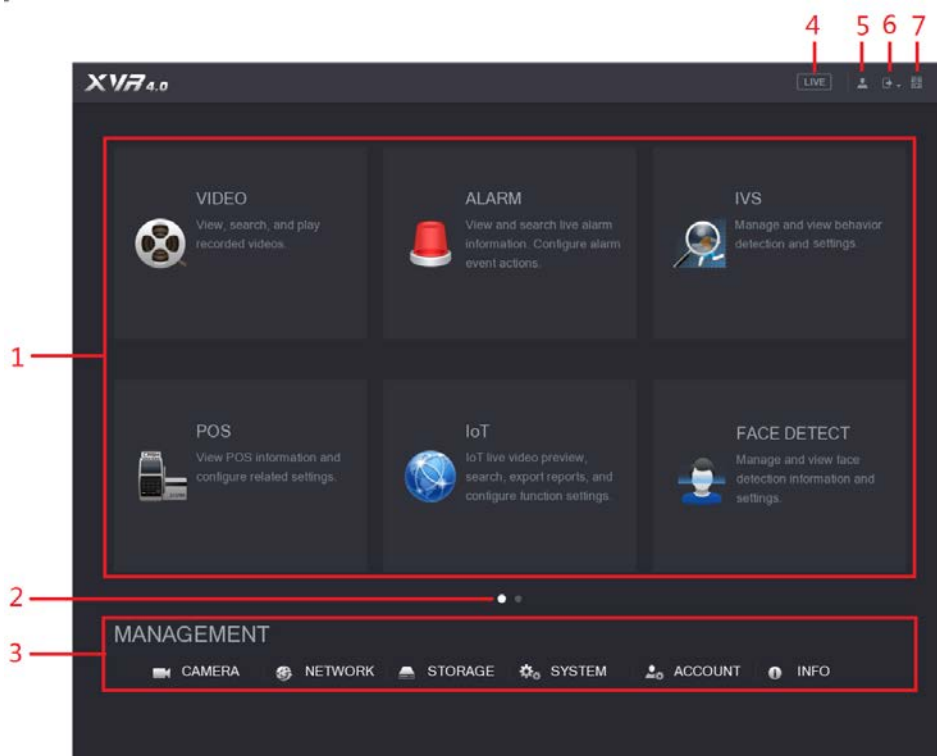










Table 5-19 Main interface description

No.	Icon	Description
1	Function tiles	<p>Includes eight function tiles: <b>VIDEO</b>, <b>ALARM</b>, <b>IVS</b>, <b>POS</b>, <b>IoT</b>, <b>AI</b>, <b>BACKUP</b>, <b>DISPLAY</b>, and <b>AUDIO</b>. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>VIDEO</b>: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.</li> <li>● <b>ALARM</b>: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions.</li> <li>● <b>IVS</b>: Configure the behavior detections by drawing rules for detecting tripwire, intrusion, abandoned objects, and missing objects.</li> <li>● <b>POS</b>: You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it.</li> <li>● <b>FACE DETECT</b>: Configure the human faces detection settings and search detected human faces.</li> <li>● <b>IoT</b>: View, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera, connect sensors and wireless siren, and configure the alarm event linkage settings.</li> <li>● <b>BACKUP</b>: Search and back up the video files to the local PC or external storage device such as USB storage device.</li> <li>● <b>DISPLAY</b>: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function.</li> <li>● <b>AUDIO</b>: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.</li> </ul>

No.	Icon	Description
2	Switch icon	 indicates the current page of main menu. Click  to switch to the next page.
3	Configuration menu	Includes six configurations through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.
4	Live	Click  to go to the live view screen.
5		When you point to  , the current user account is displayed.
6		Click  , select <b>Logout</b> , <b>Reboot</b> , or <b>Shutdown</b> according to your actual situation.
7		Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."</li> </ul>

## 5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras

PTZ is a mechanical platform that carries a camera and a protective cover and performs overall control remotely. A PTZ can move in both horizontal and vertical direction to provide all-around view to the camera.



Before operating PTZ, please assure the network connection between PTZ and the Device.

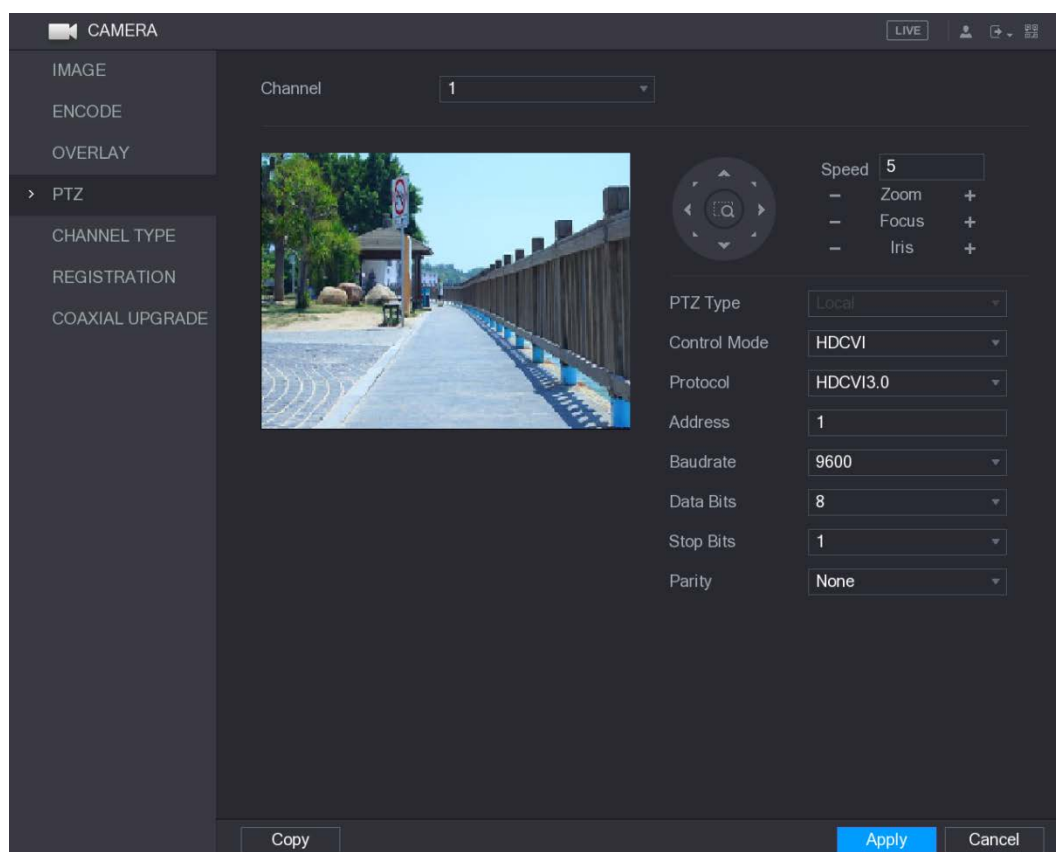
### 5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings

You need to configure the PTZ connection settings before use.

- Local connection: RS485 Port for connecting Speed Dome or coaxial cable for connecting coaxial camera.
- Remote connection: Local area network.


**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > PTZ**.

Figure 5-48 PTZ interface



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the PTZ connection parameters.

Table 5-20 PTZ parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to connect the PTZ camera to.
PTZ Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local: Connect through RS485 port or coaxial cable.</li> <li>Remote: Connect through network by adding IP address of PTZ camera to the Device.</li> </ul>
Control Mode	In the <b>Control Mode</b> list, select <b>Serial</b> or <b>HDCVI</b> . For HDCVI series product, please select HDCVI. The control signal is sent to the PTZ through the coaxial cable. For the serial mode, the control signal is sent to the PTZ through the RS485 port.
Protocol	In the <b>Protocol</b> list, select the protocol for the PTZ camera, for example, select <b>HDCVI3.0</b> .
Address	<p>In the <b>Address</b> box, enter the address for PTZ camera. The default is 1.</p> <p> The entered address must be the same with the address configured on the PTZ camera; otherwise the PTZ camera cannot be controlled from the Device.</p>
Baudrate	In the <b>Baudrate</b> list, select the baudrate for the PTZ camera. The default is 9600.
Data Bits	The default is 8.

Parameter	Description
Stop Bits	The default is 1.
Parity	The default is NONE.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.



Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

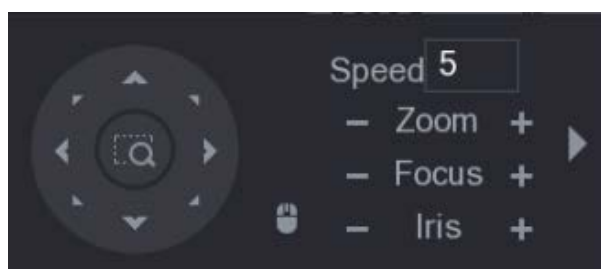
## 5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel

PTZ control panel performs the operations such as directing camera in eight directions, adjusting zoom, focus and iris settings, and quick positioning.

### Basic PTZ Control Panel

Right-click on the live view screen and then select **PTZ**. The PTZ control panel is displayed.

Figure 5-49 PTZ










The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.

Table 5-21 PTZ parameters

Parameter	Description
Speed	Controls the movement speed. The bigger the value is, the faster the movement will be.
Zoom	<div> : Wide angle. </div> <div> : Long shot. </div>
Focus	<div> : Zoom in. </div> <div> : Zoom out. </div>
Iris	<div> : Small. </div> <div> : Large. </div>
PTZ movement	Supports eight directions.



Parameter	Description
	<p>Fast positioning button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Positioning: Click  to enter the fast positioning screen, and then click anywhere on the live view screen, the PTZ will turn to this point and move it to the middle of the screen.</li> <li>Zooming: On the fast positioning screen, drag to draw a square on the view. The square supports zooming. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ Dragging upward is to zoom out, and dragging downward is to zoom in.</li> <li>◇ The smaller the square, the larger the zoom effect.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p> Not all models support this function and can only be controlled through mouse operations.</p>
	Click  , you can control the four directions (left, right, up, and down) PTZ movement through mouse operation.
	Click  to open the expanded PTZ control panel.

## Expanded PTZ Control Panel


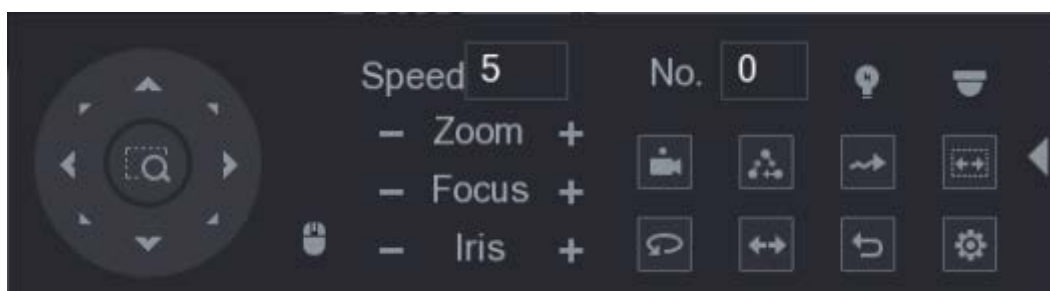




On the basic PTZ control panel, click  to open the expanded PTZ control panel to find more options.




Figure 5-50 Expanded PTZ control panel



- The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.
- Right-click once to return to the interface of PTZ basic control panel.


Table 5-22 PTZ control panel description

Icon	Function	Icon	Function
	Preset		Auto Pan
	Tour		Flip

	Pattern		Reset
	Autoscan		Click the <b>AUX Config</b> icon to open the PTZ functions settings interface.
	AUX Switch		Click the <b>Enter Menu</b> icon to open the <b>MENU OPERATION</b> interface.

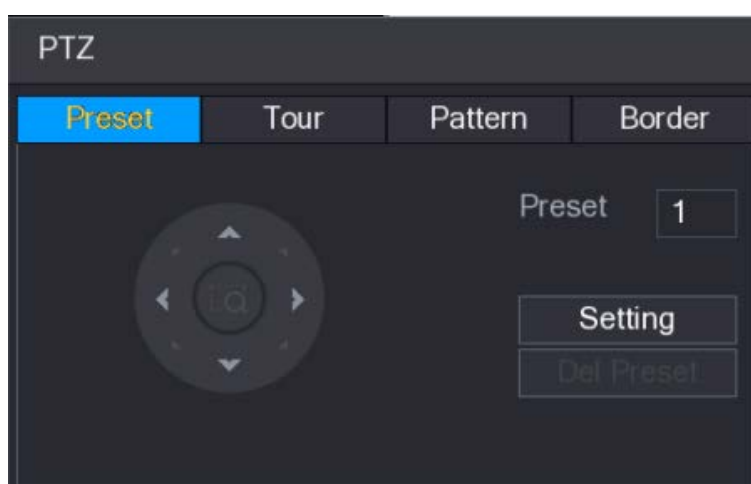
## 5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions

### 5.4.3.1 Configuring Presets

**Step 1** On the expanded PTZ control panel, click .

The **Preset** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-51 Preset interface




**Step 2** Click the direction arrows to the required position.

**Step 3** In the **Preset** box, enter the value to represent the required position.

**Step 4** Click **Setting** to complete the preset settings.

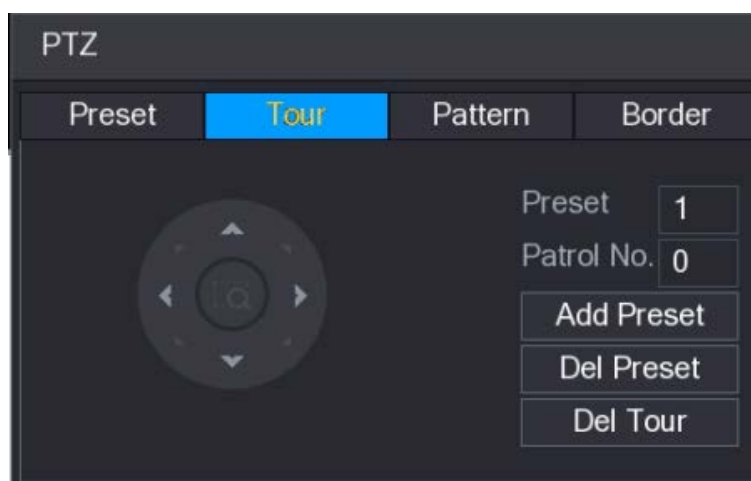
### 5.4.3.2 Configuring Tours

**Step 1** On the expanded PTZ control panel, click .

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

**Step 2** Click the **Tour** tab.

Figure 5-52 Tour tab



**Step 3** In the **Patrol No.** box, enter the value for the tour route.

**Step 4** In the **Preset** box, enter the preset value.

**Step 5** Click **Add Preset**.

A preset will be added for this tour.



- You can repeat adding more presets.
- Click **Del Preset** to delete the preset for this tour. This operation can be repeated to delete more presets. Some protocols do not support deleting.

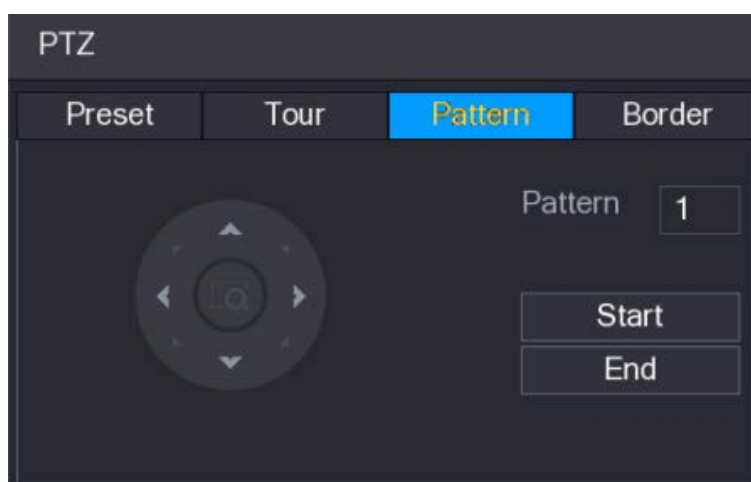
### 5.4.3.3 Configuring Patterns

**Step 1** On the expanded PTZ control panel, click .

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

**Step 2** Click the **Pattern** tab.

Figure 5-53 Pattern interface




**Step 3** In the **Pattern** box, enter the value for pattern.

**Step 4** Click **Start** to perform the directions operations. You can also go to the PTZ Control Panel to perform the operations of adjusting zoom, focus, iris, and directions.

**Step 5** On the **PTZ** interface, click **End** to complete the settings.

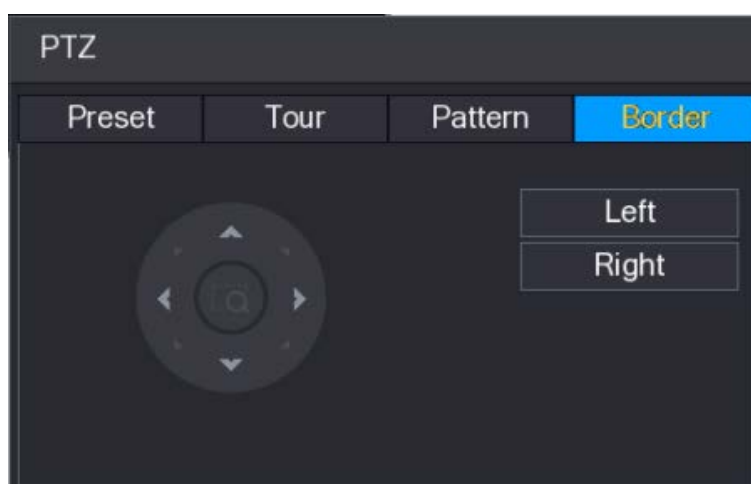
### 5.4.3.4 Configuring AutoScan

**Step 1** On the expanded PTZ control panel, click .

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

**Step 2** Click the **Border** tab.

Figure 5-54 Border tab

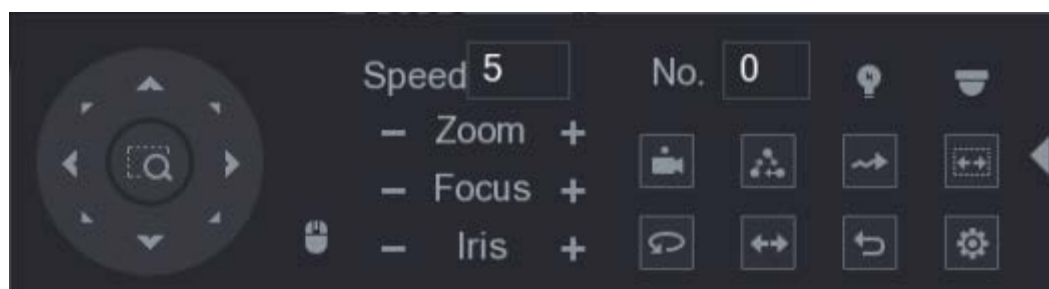


**Step 3** Click the direction arrows to position the left and right borders.

## 5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions

After you have configured the PTZ settings, you can call the PTZ functions for monitoring from the expanded PTZ control panel.


Figure 5-55 Expanded PTZ control panel



### 5.4.4.1 Calling Presets

**Step 1** On the expanded PTZ control panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the preset that you want to call.


**Step 2** Click  to call the preset.

Step 3 Click  again to stop calling the preset.

### 5.4.4.2 Calling Tours


Step 1 On the expanded PTZ control panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the tour that you want to call.

Step 2 Click  to call the tour.


Step 3 Click  again to stop calling the tour.

### 5.4.4.3 Calling Patterns

Step 1 On the expanded PTZ control panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the pattern that you want to call.

Step 2 Call  to call the pattern.

The PTZ camera moves according to the configured pattern repeatedly.


Step 3 Click  again to stop calling the pattern.

### 5.4.4.4 Calling AutoScan

Step 1 On the expanded PTZ control panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the border that you want to call.

Step 2 Click .

The PTZ camera performs scanning according to the configured borders.

Step 3 Click  again to stop auto canning.

### 5.4.4.5 Calling AutoPan

Step 1 On the expanded PTZ control panel, click  to start moving in horizontal direction.

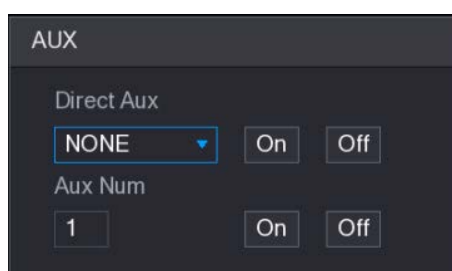
Step 2 Click  again to stop moving.

### 5.4.4.6 Using AUX Button

On the expanded PTZ control panel, click , the AUX setting interface is displayed.

- In the **Direct Aux** list, select the option that corresponds to the applied protocol.
- In the **Aux Num** box, enter the number that corresponds to the AUX switch on the decoder.

Figure 5-56 AUX



## 5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu

For the coaxial camera, you can call the OSD menu through the expanded PTZ control panel.


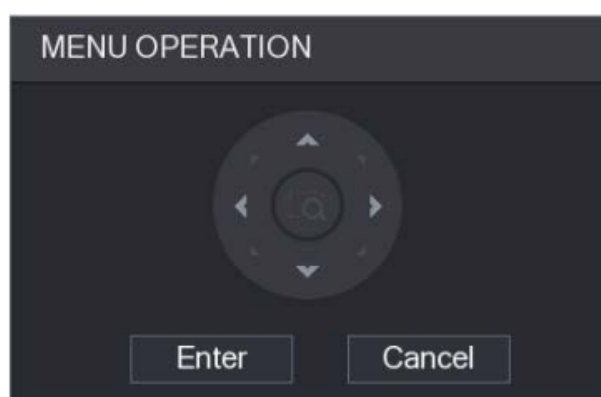
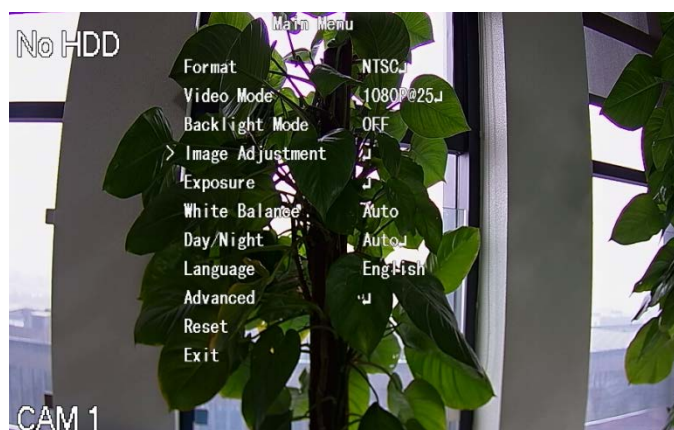
**Step 1** On the expanded PTZ control panel, click .

Figure 5-57 Menu operation



**Step 2** Click **Enter**.  
The OSD menu is displayed.

Figure 5-58 OSD menu



**Step 3** On the **MENU OPERATION** interface, click the arrow button to select the onscreen parameters.  
**Step 4** Click **Enter** to complete the settings.

## 5.5 Configuring Camera Settings

### 5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings

You can configure the image settings such as saturation, contrast, brightness, sharpness for each connected camera.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > IMAGE**.

The **IMAGE** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-59 Analog channel

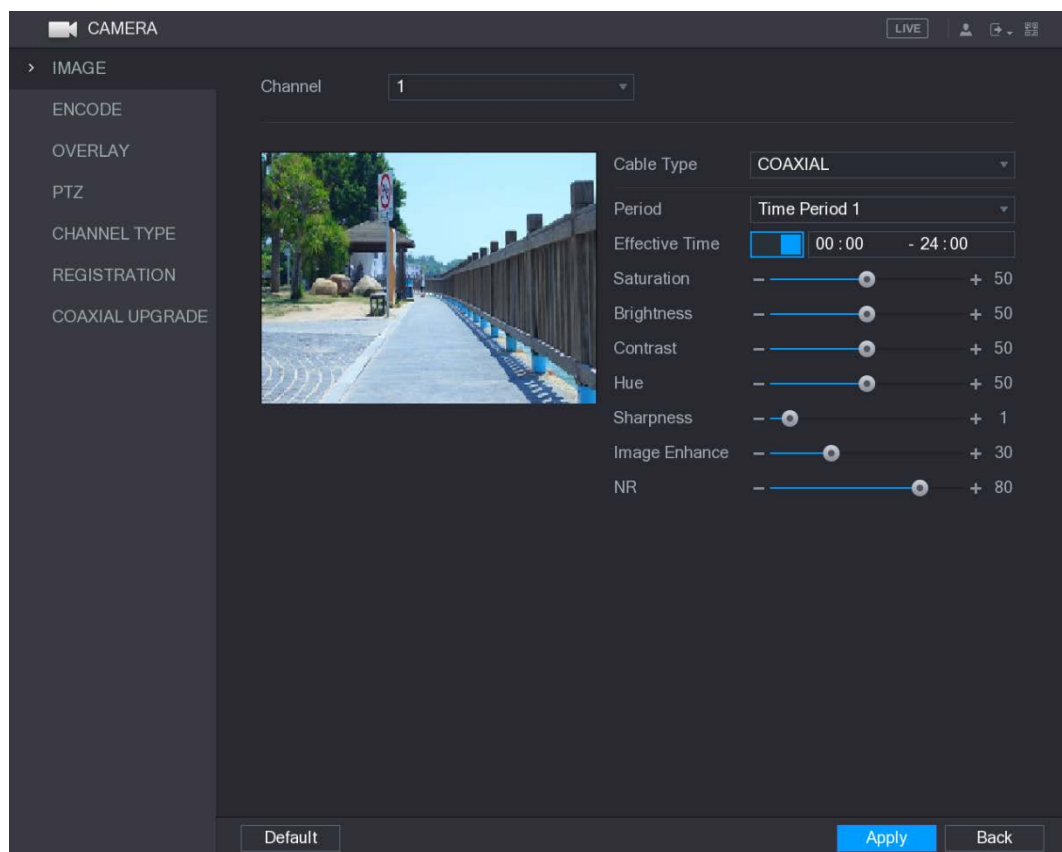
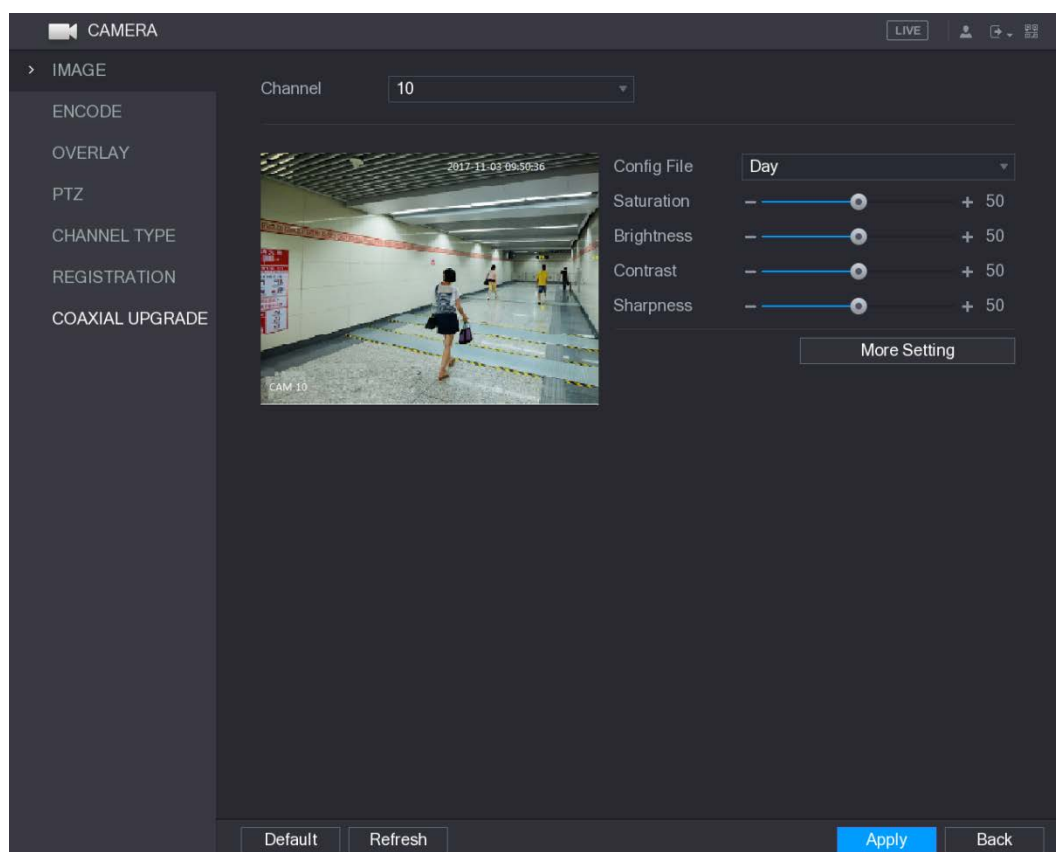



Figure 5-60 Digital channel



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the image parameters.

On the digital channel interface, click **More Setting** to display more parameters.

Table 5-23 More settings

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure.
Cable Type	In the <b>Cable Type</b> list, select the cable type that the camera uses.  Not all models support this function.
Period	In the <b>Period</b> list, select a time period for the image settings. The image settings will be only used during the selected period.
Effective Time	Enable the effective function. In the <b>Effective Time</b> box, enter the start time and end time for the period you selected.
Saturation	Adjusts the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color will become. This value does not influence the general image lightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The recommended range is between 40 and 60.
Contrast	Adjusts the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more obvious the contrast between the light area and dark area will become. You can adjust this value when the contrast is not obvious. However, if the value is too big, the dark area is likely to become darker and the light area over exposed. If the value is too small, the image is likely to become dim.



Parameter	Description
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The recommended range is between 40 and 60.
Brightness	<p>Adjusts the image brightness. The bigger the value is, the brighter the image will become. You can adjust this value when the image as a whole looks dark or bright. However, the image is likely to become dim if the value is too big.</p> <p>The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The recommended range is between 40 and 60.</p>
Hue	Adjusts the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50.
Sharpness	<p>Adjusts the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.</p> <p>The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.</p>
Image Enhance	Adjusts the image definition. The bigger the value is, the clearer the image will become, but there will be more noises.
NR	Reduces the noises from image. The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.
Config File	<p>In the <b>Config File</b> list, select <b>Day</b>, <b>Night</b>, <b>Normal</b>, or <b>Switch By Period</b>. The system configures the parameters correspondingly.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Day: Apply the configuration during daytime.</li> <li>● Night: Apply the configuration during nighttime.</li> <li>● Normal: Apply the configuration during day and night.</li> <li>● Switch by Period: If you select this option, you need to configure the sunrise time and sunset time where you are located.</li> </ul>
Mirror	Enable the function, the left and right side of the video image will be switched. It is disabled by default.
3D Denoise	This function specially applies to the image which frame rate is configured as 2 at least. It reduces the noises by making use of the information between two frames. The bigger the value is, the better the effect.
Flip	In the <b>Flip</b> list, you can select <b>180°</b> to change the video image display. By default, the setting is <b>No Flip</b> .
Light	In the <b>Light</b> list, select <b>Close</b> or <b>Enable</b> to use the backlight compensation or not.
Scene Mode	<p>Configure the white balance to adjust the general hue of the image. The default setting is <b>Auto</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Auto: Automatically apply white balance to different colors to make the image color display normally.</li> <li>● Sunny: Apply the threshold value to sunny environment.</li> <li>● Night: Apply the threshold value to night.</li> <li>● Customized: Manually adjust the Red Gain and Blue Gain values.</li> </ul>
Day & Night	<p>Configure the color and black&amp;white mode of the image. This setting is not affected by the configuration files. The default setting is <b>Auto</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Color: The camera outputs color image only.</li> </ul>

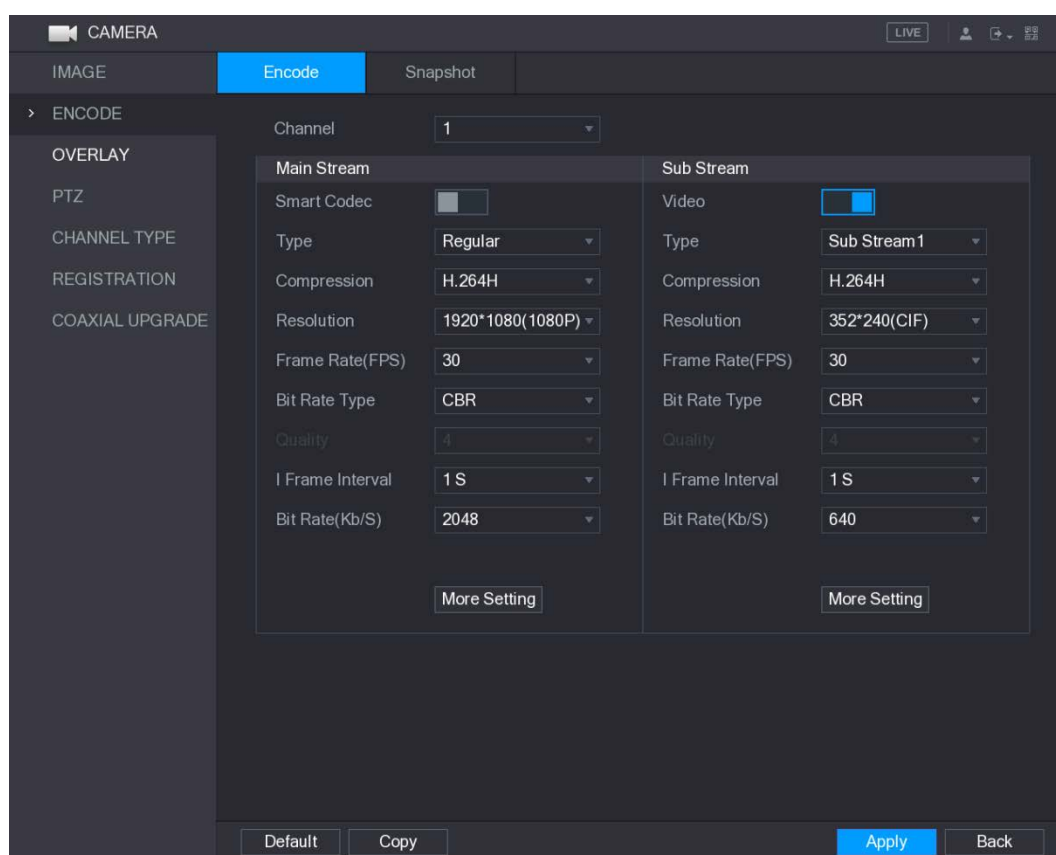
Parameter	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto: Depends on the camera, such as overall brightness and whether there is an IR light, either color image or black&amp;white image is output.</li> <li>B/W: The camera outputs Black and white image only.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Encode**.

Figure 5-61 Encode



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters.

Table 5-24 Main and sub stream parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.
Smart Codec	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage space.
Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Main Stream: In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>General</b>, <b>MD</b> (Motion Detect), or <b>Alarm</b>.</li> <li>Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Compression	<p>In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the encode mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high definition. This setting is recommended.</li> <li>● H.264: General profile encoding.</li> <li>● H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit stream compared with other settings for the same definition.</li> </ul>
Resolution	<p>In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video.</p> <p>The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your device model.</p>
Frame Rate (FPS)	<p>Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value, the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes along with the resolution.</p> <p>Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25; in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However, the specific range of frame rate that you can select depends on the capability of the Device.</p>
Quality	<p>This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List.</p> <p>The higher the value, the better the image will become.</p>
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	<p>In the <b>Bit Rate</b> list, select a value or enter a customized value to change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.</p>
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.
Audio Encode	<p>Click <b>More Setting</b>, the <b>More Setting</b> interface is displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Audio Encode: This function is enabled by default for main stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite audio and video stream.</li> <li>● Audio Source: In the <b>Audio Source</b> list, you can select <b>LOCAL</b> and <b>HDCVI</b>. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◇ LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio input port.</li> <li>◇ HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.</li> </ul> </li> <li>● Audio Format: In the <b>Audio Format</b> list, select a format that you need.</li> </ul>
Audio Source	
Audio Format	

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

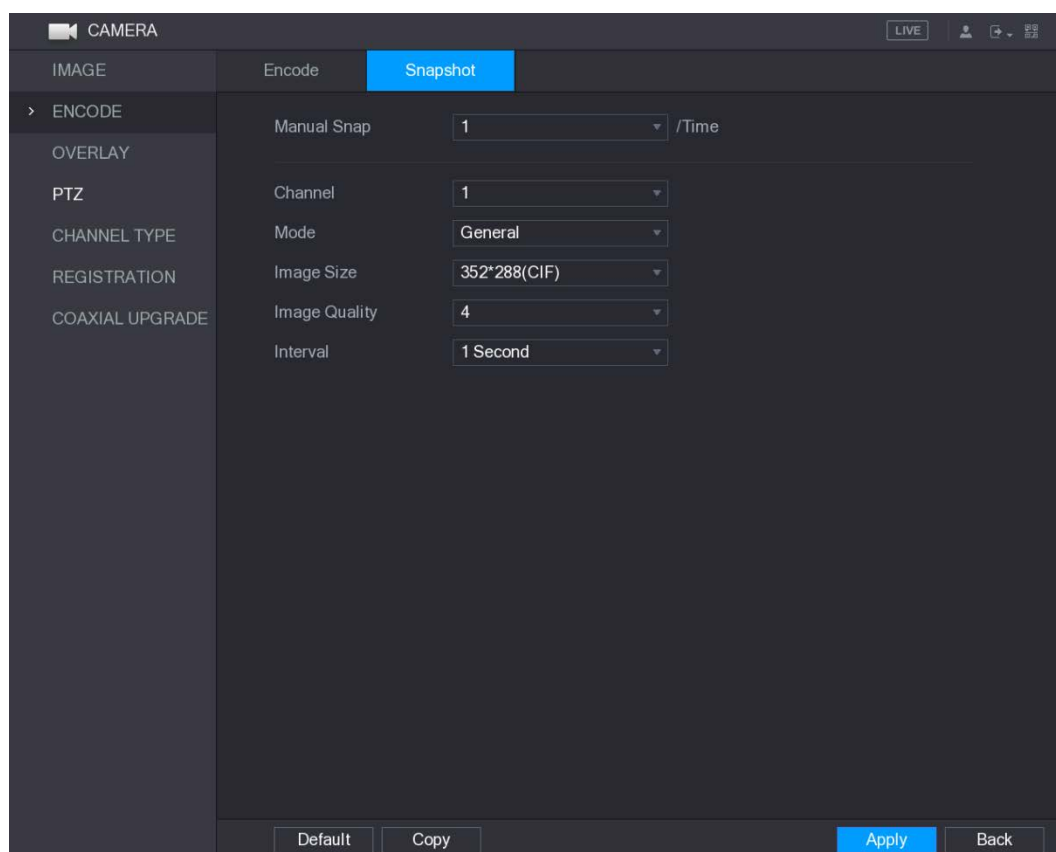


Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

## 5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

Figure 5-62 Snapshot



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters.

Table 5-25 Snapshot parameters

Parameter	Description
Manual Snap	In the <b>Manual Snap</b> list, select how many snapshots you want to take each time.
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.
Mode	In the <b>Mode</b> list, you can select <b>Human Face</b> , <b>Event</b> , or <b>General</b> as the event type for which you want to take a snapshot.
Image Size	In the <b>Image Size</b> list, select a value for the image.
Image Quality	Configures the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the better the image will become.
Interval	Configures or customizes the snapshot frequency.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



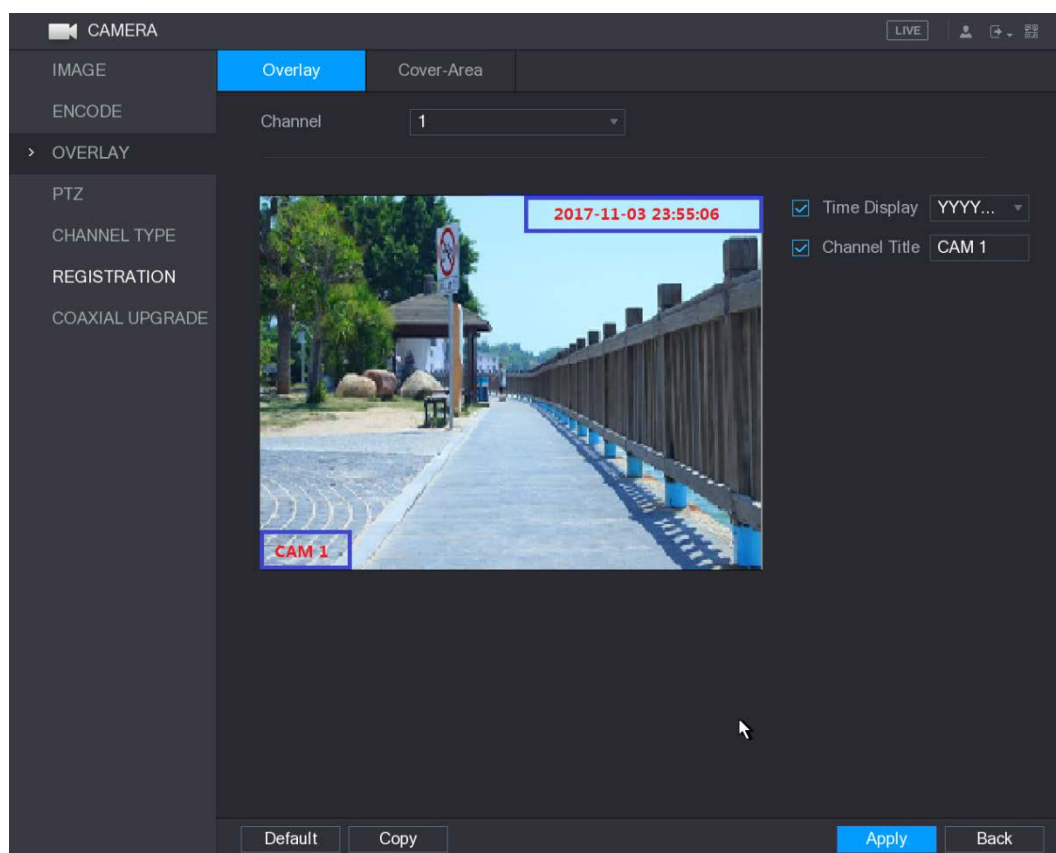
Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

## 5.5.4 Configuring Overlay Settings

You can configure to display system time and channel name on each channel window in the live view screen.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Overlay**.

Figure 5-63 Overlay



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the text overlay parameters.

Table 5-26 Overlay parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.
Time Display	Select the <b>Time Display</b> check box to display the system time on each channel window in the live view screen. In the <b>Time Display</b> list, select time display style.
Channel Title	Select the <b>Channel Title</b> check box to display the channel name on each channel window in the live view screen. In the <b>Channel Title</b> box, enter the name for the selected channel.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

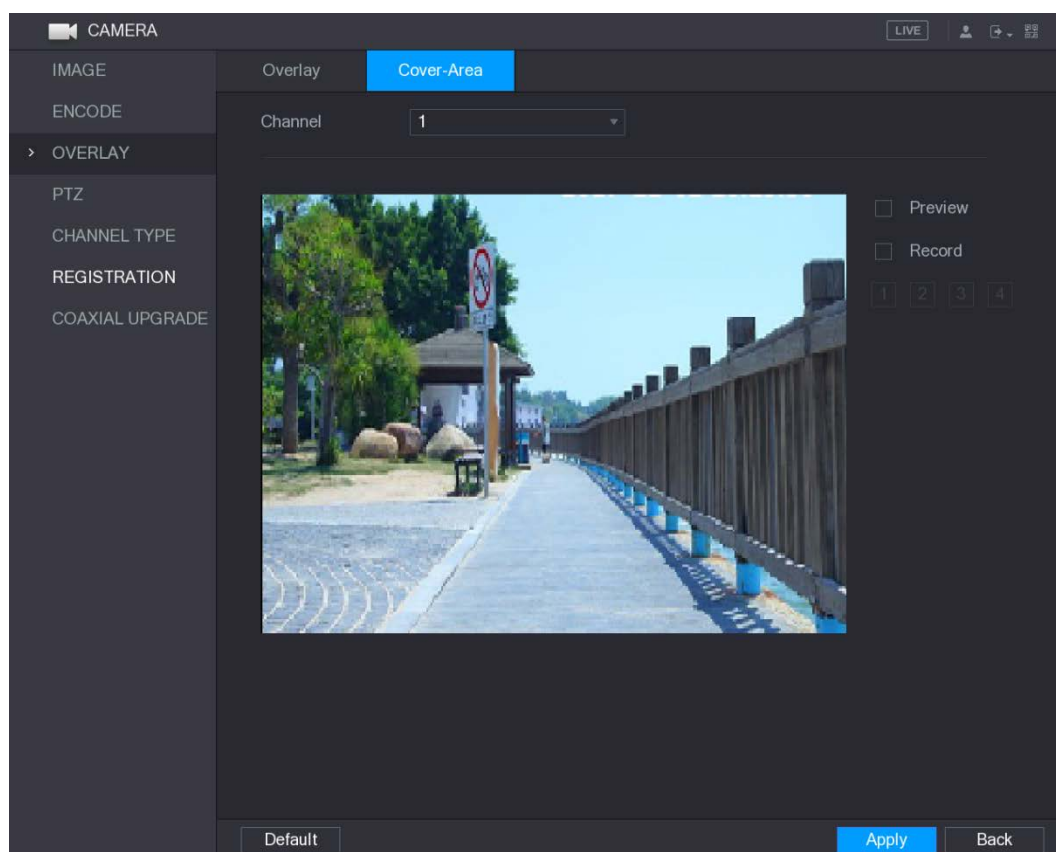


Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

## 5.5.5 Configuring Covered Area Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > OVERLAY > Cover-Area**.

Figure 5-64 Cover area



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the covered area parameters.

Table 5-27 Cover area parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.
Preview	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Preview: Select the <b>Preview</b> check box to apply the configured covered block to the selected channel window in the live view screen.</li> <li>Record: Select the <b>Record</b> check box to apply the configured covered block to the selected channel window during recording.</li> </ul>
Record	<p>To configure covering block, do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the <b>Preview</b> check box or the <b>Record</b> check box, or select the both. The "1, 2, 3, 4" buttons are activated.</li> <li>Click the buttons to select blocks.</li> <li>A triangle solid black block is displayed. You can drag the block to the area that you want to cover and adjust the size of the block.</li> <li>You can configure total 4 covered blocks.</li> </ol>

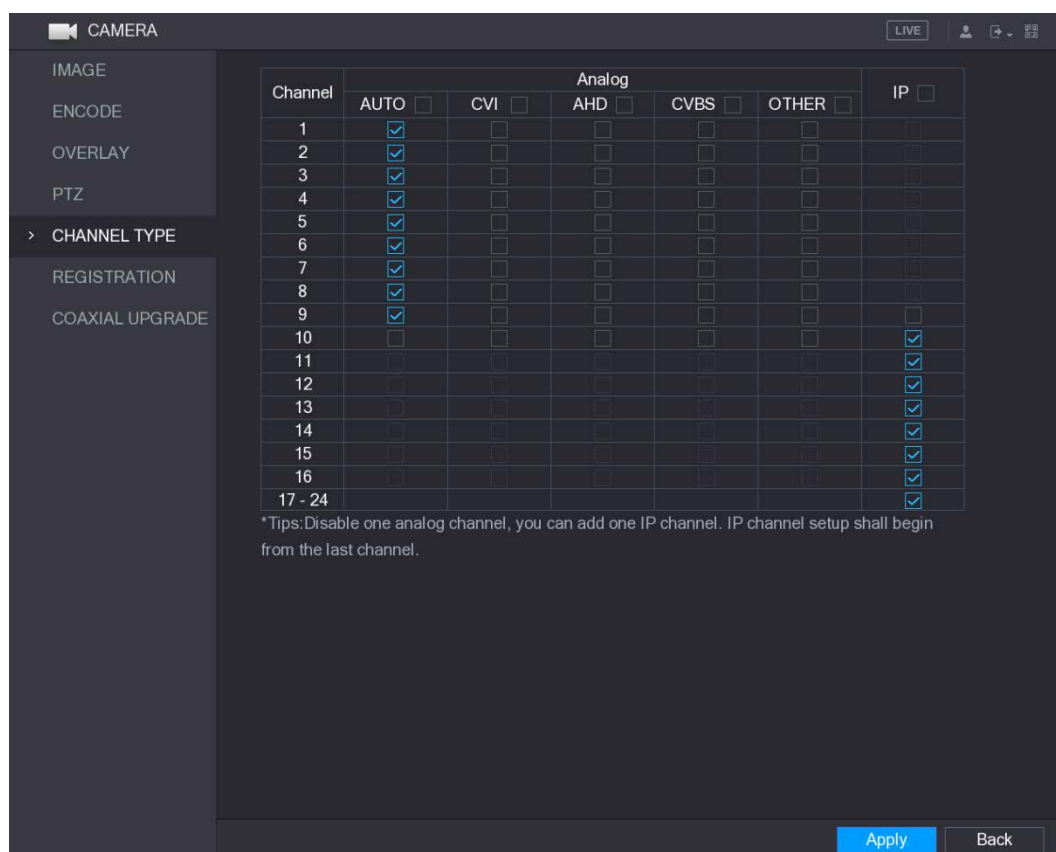
**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type

You can configure the channel type as **Analog** or **IP** channel.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE**.

Figure 5-65 Channel type



Channel	Analog					IP
	AUTO	CVI	AHD	CVBS	OTHER	
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
17 - 24	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

\*Tips: Disable one analog channel, you can add one IP channel. IP channel setup shall begin from the last channel.

### Step 2 Configure the channels.

- Analog Channel: Select the transmission medium such as CVI, CVBS, and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.
- IP Channel: Select a channel for IP camera from the last channel number, for example, in Figure 5-65, select from the **17–24** check box. Then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.



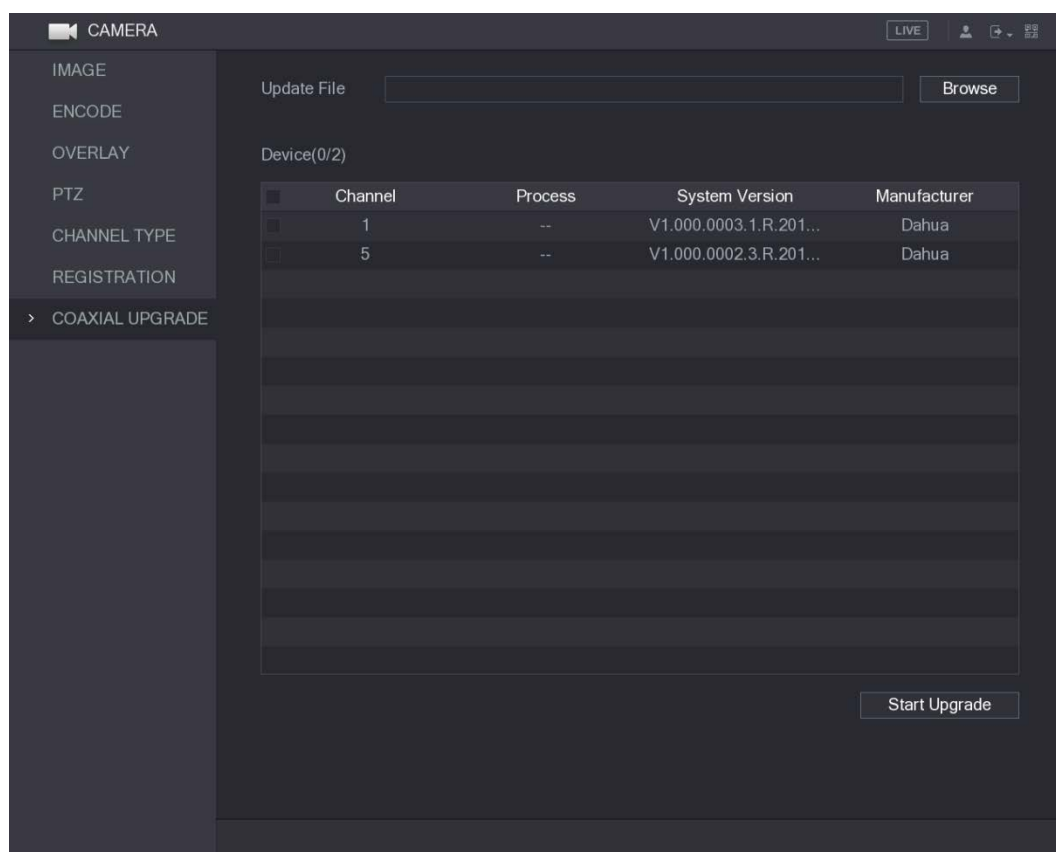
- The 17–24 channels are only for IP camera and the range changes dependent on the model you purchased.
- The channel selection for analog camera or IP camera are in sequence, for example, if you want to select channels for IP camera, you need to select the **17–24** check box first, and then you cannot jump to select the channel **15** directly until you have selected the channel **16**.

### Step 3 Click **Apply** and follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.

## 5.5.7 Upgrading Coaxial Camera

### Step 1 Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > COAXIAL UPGRADE**.

Figure 5-66 Coaxial upgrade



**Step 2** Click **Browse**.

The **Browse** interface is displayed.

**Step 3** Select the upgrade file and click **OK**.

The **COAXIAL UPGRADE** interface is displayed.



You need to insert the USB storage device that contains the upgrading files.

**Step 4** Select the check box of the channel that you want to upgrade.

**Step 5** Click **Start Upgrade**.

If the upgrading is successful, the system pops up a message indicating the upgrading is completed. If the upgrading is failed, please check if the Device

## 5.6 Configuring Remote Devices

### 5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices



This function is available after you have configured the channel type as IP channel as described in previous section, see "5.5.6 Configuring Channel Type."

You can add remote devices by adding the IP address.



Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Registration**, the **Registration** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-67 Registration

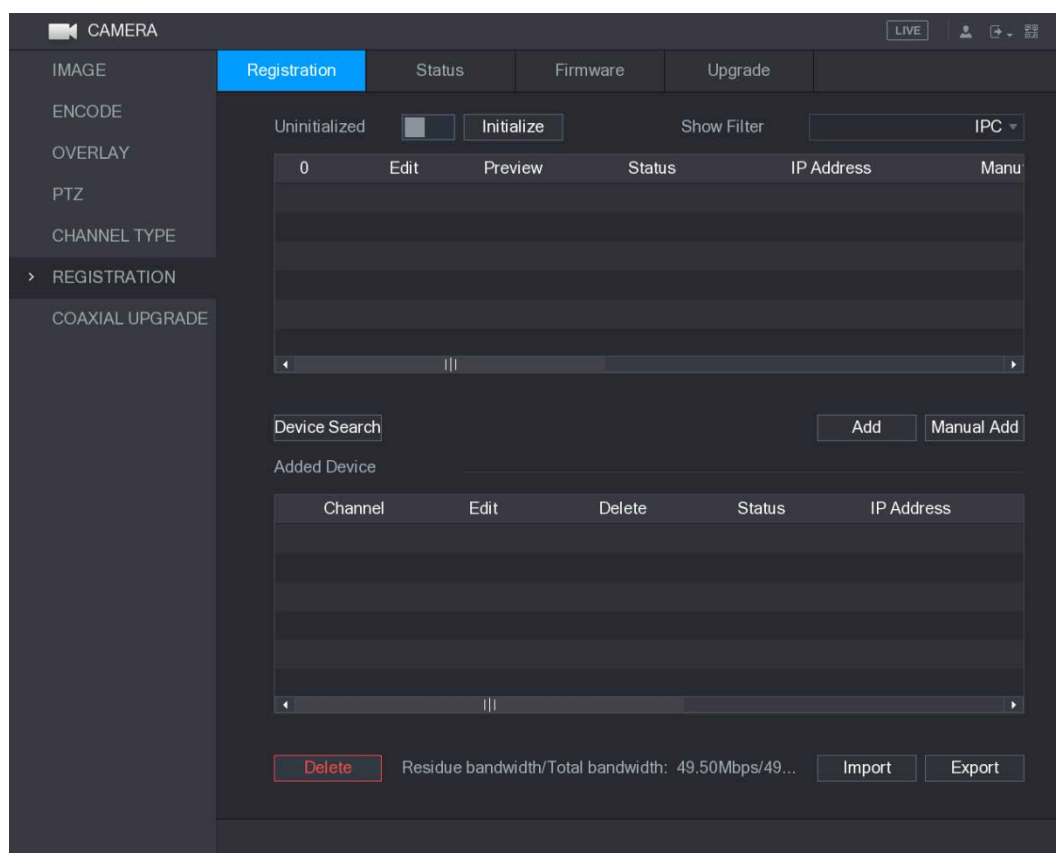




Table 5-28 Registration parameters

Parameter	Description
Uninitialized	Enable the <b>Uninitialized</b> function, the uninitialized devices out of the searched devices are displayed in the searched device list.
Initialize	Select the uninitialized device from the uninitialized device list, and the click <b>Initialize</b> to start initializing device.
Show Filter	In the <b>Show Filter</b> list, select the remote device type that you want to display in the searched device list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None: Display all types of devices.</li> <li>IPC: Display the front-end devices.</li> <li>DVR: Display all storage devices such as NVR, DVR and HCVR.</li> </ul>
Searched Device List	Displays the searched devices. You can view the device information such as status, IP address.

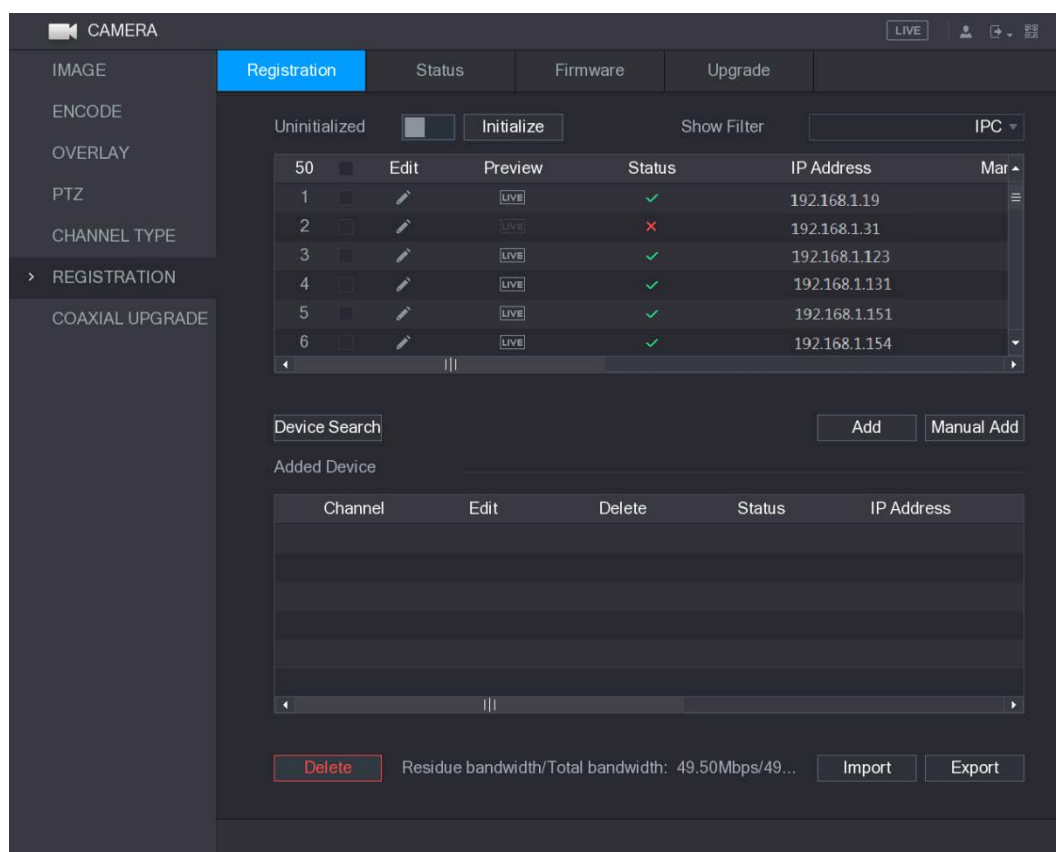
Parameter	Description
Device Search	<p>Click <b>Device Search</b>, the searched devices display in the searched device list.</p> <p>To adjust the display sequence, in the title line, you can click the IP address, Manufacturer, Type, MAC Address, Port, or Device Name text. For example, click the IP address text, the sequence icon  is displayed.</p> <p></p> <p>"*" is displayed next to the added device.</p>
Add	In the Searched Device List area, select the device that you want to add.
Manual Add	Add the device by manually configuring settings such as IP address, channel selection. For details, see "5.6.1.4 Adding Remote Devices Manually."
Added Device List	Displays the added devices. You can edit and delete the device, and view the device information.
Delete	Select the check box of the added device, and then click <b>Delete</b> to delete the added device.
Import	Select the searched devices and then click <b>Import</b> to import the devices in batches.
Export	Select the added devices and then click <b>Export</b> . The exported devices information is saved into the USB storage device.

### 5.6.1.2 Initializing Remote Devices

You can reset the password and IP address of the remote devices through initializing.

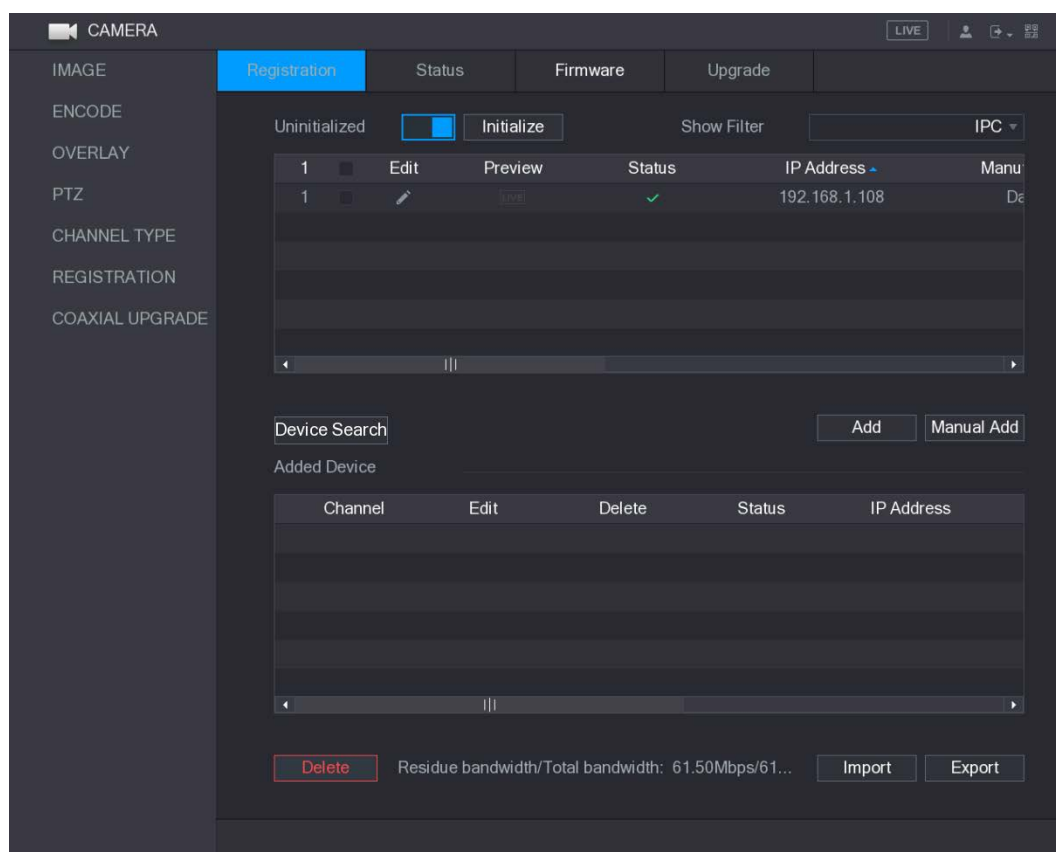
Step 1 Click **Device Search**.

Figure 5-68 Device search



**Step 2** Enable the Initialized function.  
The uninitialized devices are displayed.

Figure 5-69 Initialize

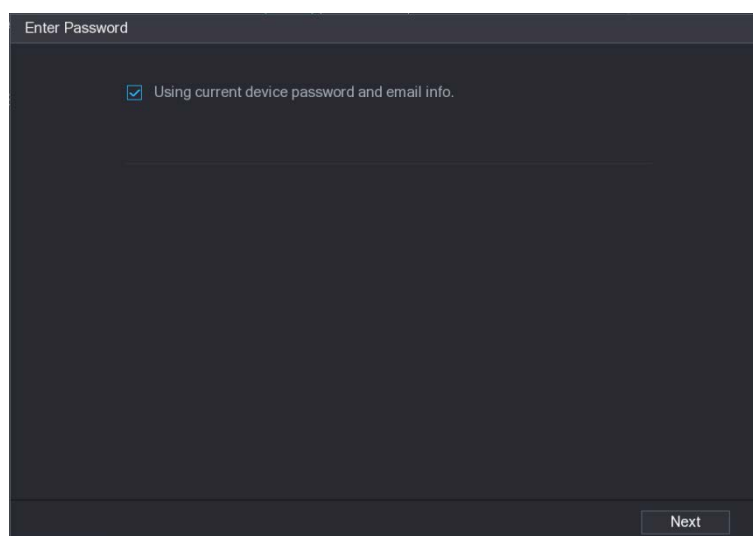


**Step 3** Select the uninitialized device that you want to initialize.

**Step 4** Click **Initialize**.

The **Enter Password** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-70 Enter password



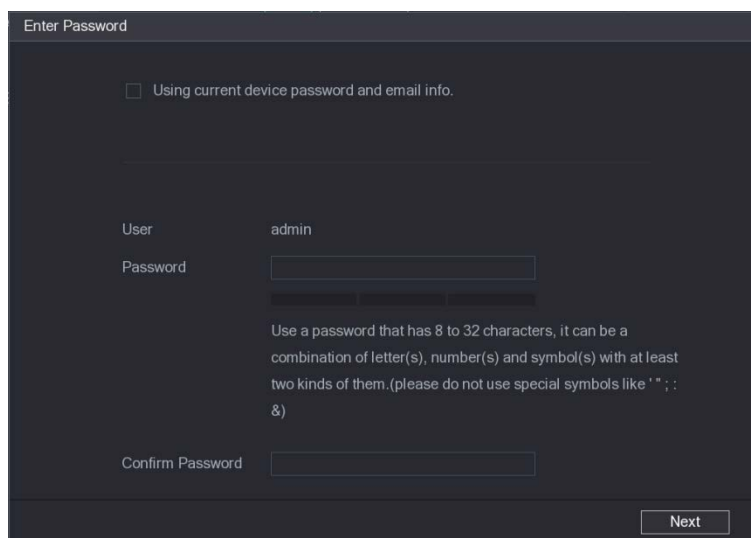
**Step 5** Configure the password and email information.



If you select the **Using current device password and email info** check box, the remote device automatically uses the current password and email information, so you do not need to set the password and email address again and can go to Step 6.

- 1) Clear the Using current device password and email info check box.  
The password setting interface is displayed.

Figure 5-71 Set password



- 2) Configure the settings for the password setting parameters.

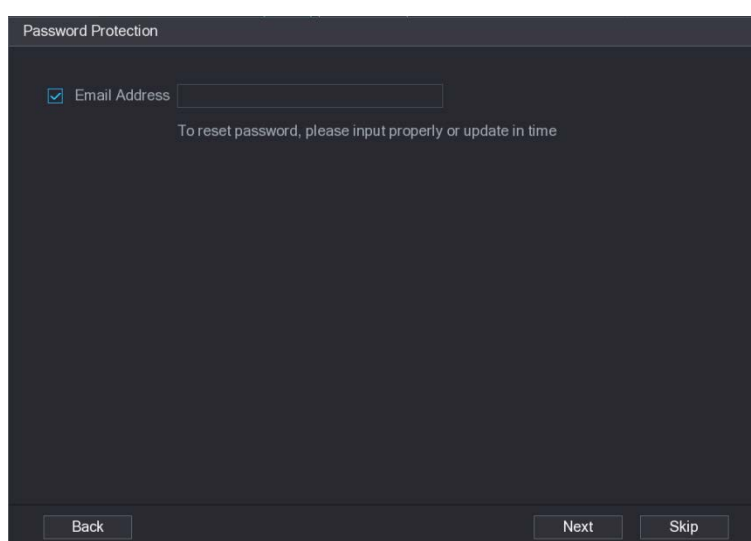
Table 5-29 Password setting parameters

Parameter	Description
User	The default is admin.
Password	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding "" , " ; , " : " and "&").
Confirm Password	Please enter a strong password according to the password strength bar indication.

- 3) Click **Next**.

The **Password Protection** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-72 Password protection



- 4) Select the **Email Address** box and enter the email address that you want to reserve for password reset in the future.



If you do not want to set the reserved email address, click **Skip**.

**Step 6** Click **Next**.

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-73 NETWORK

NETWORK

Checked Device No.: 1

☐ DHCP

☒ STATIC

IP Address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 108 Incremental Value: 1

Subnet Mask: 255 . 255 . 255 . 0

Default Gateway: 192 . 168 . 1 . 1

	IP Address
1	192.168.1.108

Back Next Skip

**Step 7** Configure the IP address.

- Select the **DHCP** check box, you do not need to enter the IP address information, because the system will allocate one IP address to the remote device.
- Select the **STATIC** check box, you need to enter the IP address, subnet mast, default gateway, and incremental value. The system will allocate the IP address to the remote devices by progressively increasing the last part of the IP address when initializing devices in batches.

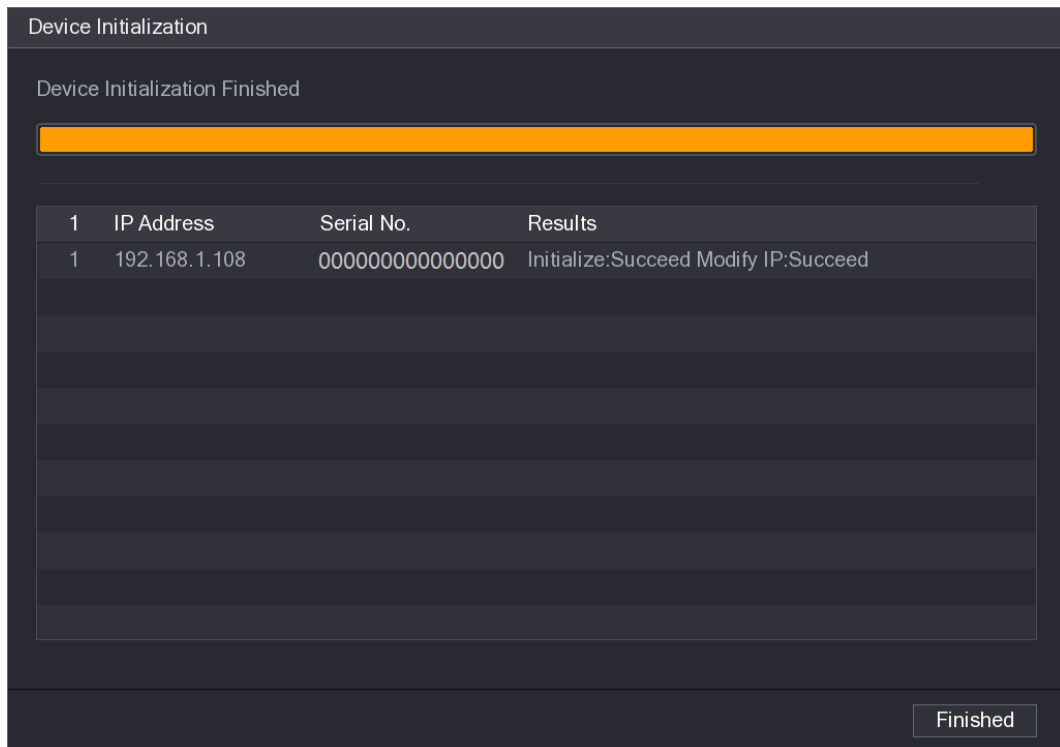


When configuring IP address for multiple remote devices which were not in the same network segment, these remote devices will belong to the same network segment after configuration.

**Step 8** Click **Next**.

The initializing is started.

Figure 5-74 Initialization

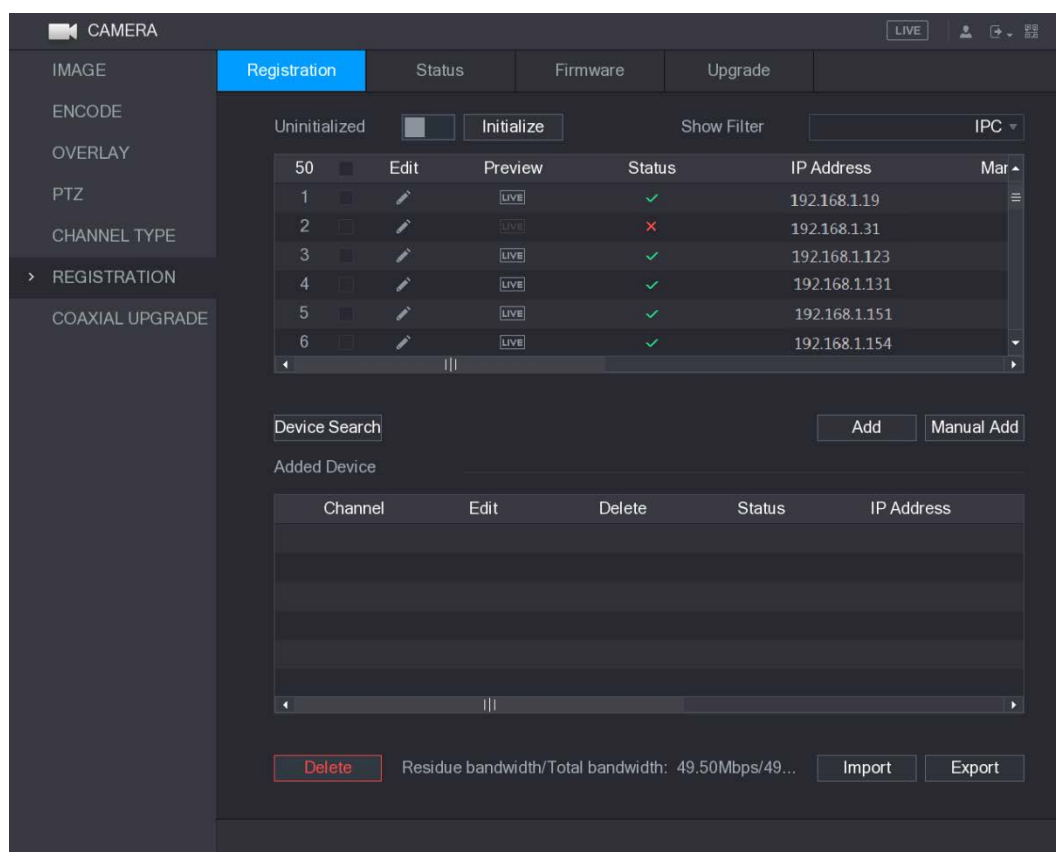


**Step 9** Click **Finished** to complete the settings.

### 5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices Automatically

**Step 1** On the **Registration** interface, click **Device Search**  
The searched devices are displayed.

Figure 5-75 Device search



**Step 2** Select the check box of the device.

**Step 3** Click **Add**.

The device is added into the **Added Device** area.



- You can also double-click the device to add it into the **Added Device** area.
- You can add devices in batches.

#### 5.6.1.4 Adding Remote Devices Manually

**Step 1** On the **Registration** interface, click **Manual Add**.



Figure 5-76 Manual add

Manual Add

Channel

10

Manufacturer

Onvif

IP Address

192.168.0.0

RTSP Port

554

HTTP Port

80

User Name

admin

Password

•••••

Remote Channel

1

Decoder Buffer

Default

☒ Auto
☐ TCP
☐ UDP
☐ MULTICAST

Apply

Back

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the manual adding device parameters.

Table 5-30 Manual add parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want use on the Device to connect the remote device.
Manufacturer	In the <b>Manufacturer</b> list, select the manufacturer of the remote device.
IP Address	In the IP Address box, enter the IP address of remote device. The default is 192.168.0.0 which the system cannot connect to.
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.
HTTP Port	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according to your actual situation. If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter 70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.
User Name	Enter the user name of the remote device.
Password	Enter the password of the user for the remote device
Remote Channel	Enter the remote channel number of the remote device that you want to add.
Decoder Buffer	In the Decoder Buffer list, select Default, Realtime, or Fluent.
Protocol Type	Select <b>Auto</b> , <b>TCP</b> , <b>UDP</b> , or <b>MULTICAST</b> . The default is <b>TCP</b> .

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.



- Only one device can be added manually at one time.
- indicates successful connection and indicates connection failed.

### 5.6.1.5 Modifying or Deleting Remote Devices

You can modify and delete the added devices.

- To modify the remote devices, do the following:


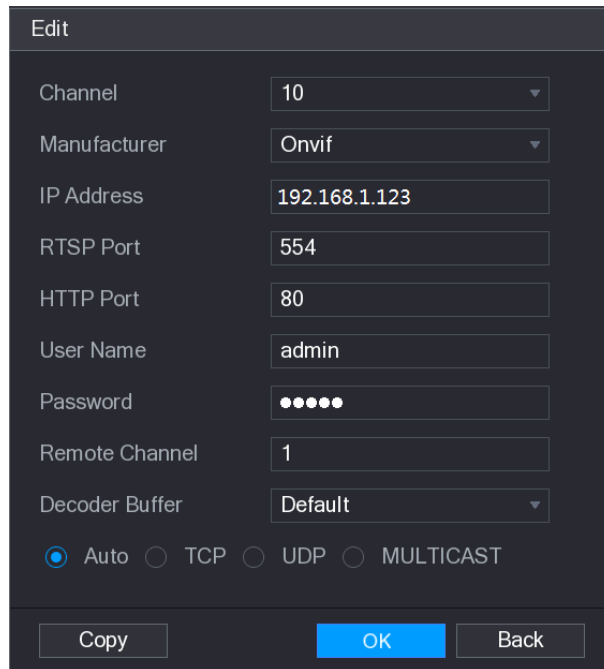
**Step 1** Click  or double-click a device.

Figure 5-77 Edit



The 'Edit' dialog box contains the following fields and options:


Channel	10
Manufacturer	Onvif
IP Address	192.168.1.123
RTSP Port	554
HTTP Port	80
User Name	admin
Password	•••••
Remote Channel	1
Decoder Buffer	Default
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Auto <input type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP <input type="radio"/> MULTICAST	
<div> <div>Copy</div> <div>OK</div> <div>Back</div> </div>	

**Step 2** In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to modify settings for.

**Step 3** Click **OK** to save the settings.



Click **Copy** to copy the user name and password to other channels.

- To delete one or more added devices, do the following:
  - Click  to delete one device
  - Select the check box of the devices that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.

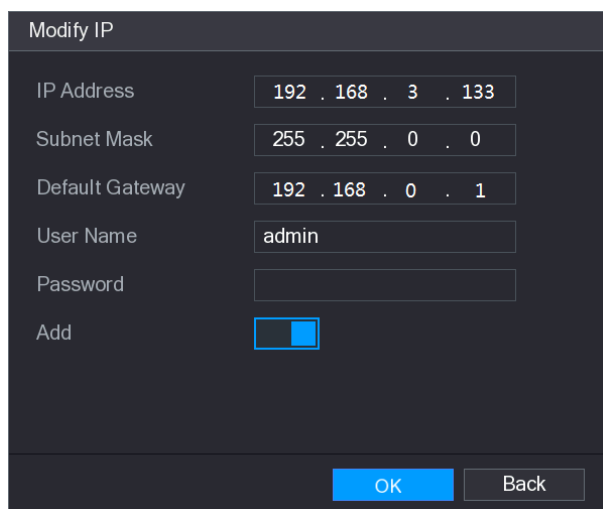
### 5.6.1.6 Modifying IP Address

You can modify a single IP address or multiple IP addresses of remote devices at the one time.

- To modify a single IP address, do the following:

**Step 1** In the Searched Device list area, click  for the device that you want to modify IP.

Figure 5-78 Modify IP interface



IP Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 133
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0 . 1
User Name	admin
Password	
Add	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

OK Back

**Step 2** Configure the settings for IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.

**Step 3** Enable the **Add** function to add the device into the **Added Device** area.

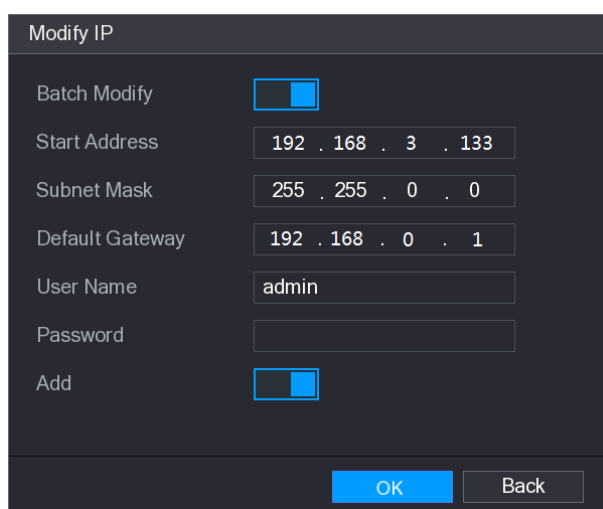
**Step 4** Click **OK** to save the settings.

- To modify IP address in batches, do the following:

**Step 1** In the Searched Device list area, select the devices that you want to modify IP address in batches.

**Step 2** Click .

Figure 5-79 Modify IP interface



Batch Modify	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Start Address	192 . 168 . 3 . 133
Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 0 . 0
Default Gateway	192 . 168 . 0 . 1
User Name	admin
Password	
Add	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

OK Back

**Step 3** Enable the **Batch Modify** function.

**Step 4** Configure the settings for start IP address (the IP address is allocated in sequence), subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.

**Step 5** Enable the **Add** function to add the devices into the **Added Device** area.

**Step 6** Click **Apply** to save the settings.

### 5.6.1.7 Exporting IP Address

You can export the added IP address to the USB storage device.

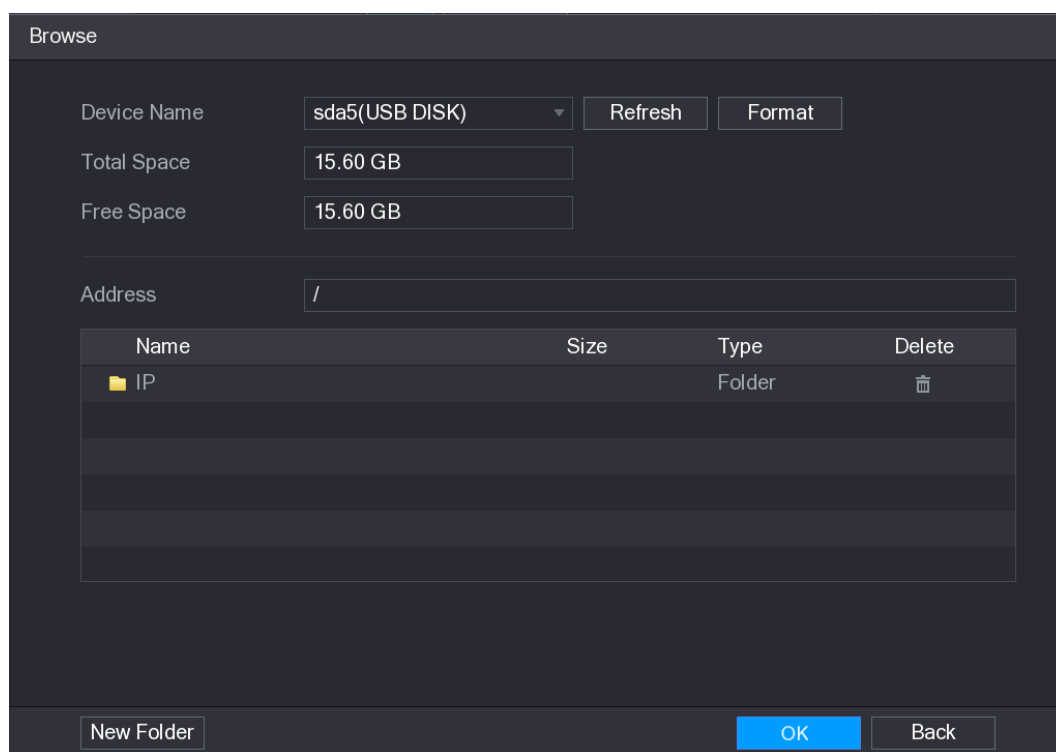


The exported information is saved in .csv file, which includes IP address, port number, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

**Step 1** Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.

**Step 2** Click **Export**.

Figure 5-80 Browse



**Step 3** Configure the save path.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to save the settings.

A pop-up message indicating "Successfully exported" is displayed.

**Step 5** Click **OK**.

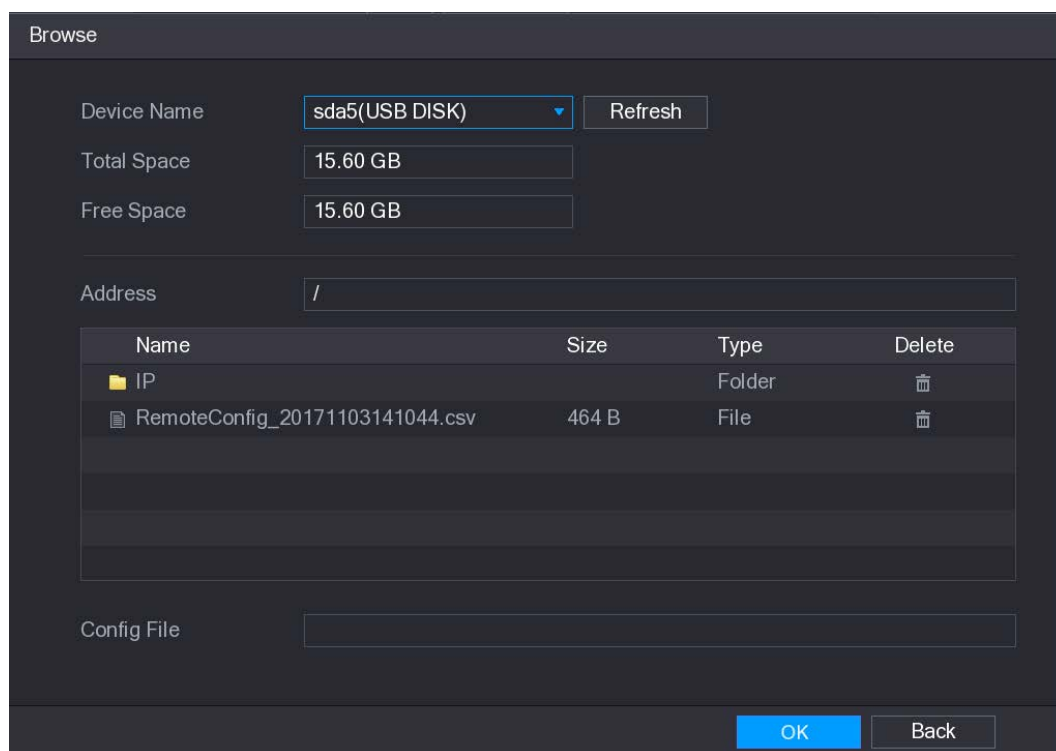
### 5.6.1.8 Importing IP Address

You can add remote devices by importing IP address information.

**Step 1** Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.

**Step 2** Click **Import**.

Figure 5-81 Import



Browse

Device Name: sda5(USB DISK) Refresh

Total Space: 15.60 GB

Free Space: 15.60 GB

Address: /

Name	Size	Type	Delete
IP		Folder	
RemoteConfig_20171103141044.csv	464 B	File	

Config File:

OK Back

**Step 3** Select the file that you want to import.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to start importing.

After importing is completed, a pop-up message indicating "The import succeeded" is displayed.



If the IP address that you want to import already exists in the Device, the system will pop up a message to ask you whether to overwrite the existing content.

- Click **OK** to replace the existing one.
- Click **Cancel** to add it as a separate device in the **Added Device** area.



- You can edit the exported .csv file and be cautious not to change the file format; otherwise the file cannot be imported as it will be judged as invalid.
- The language of .csv file must match the Device language.
- The import and export through customized protocol is not supported.

## 5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices

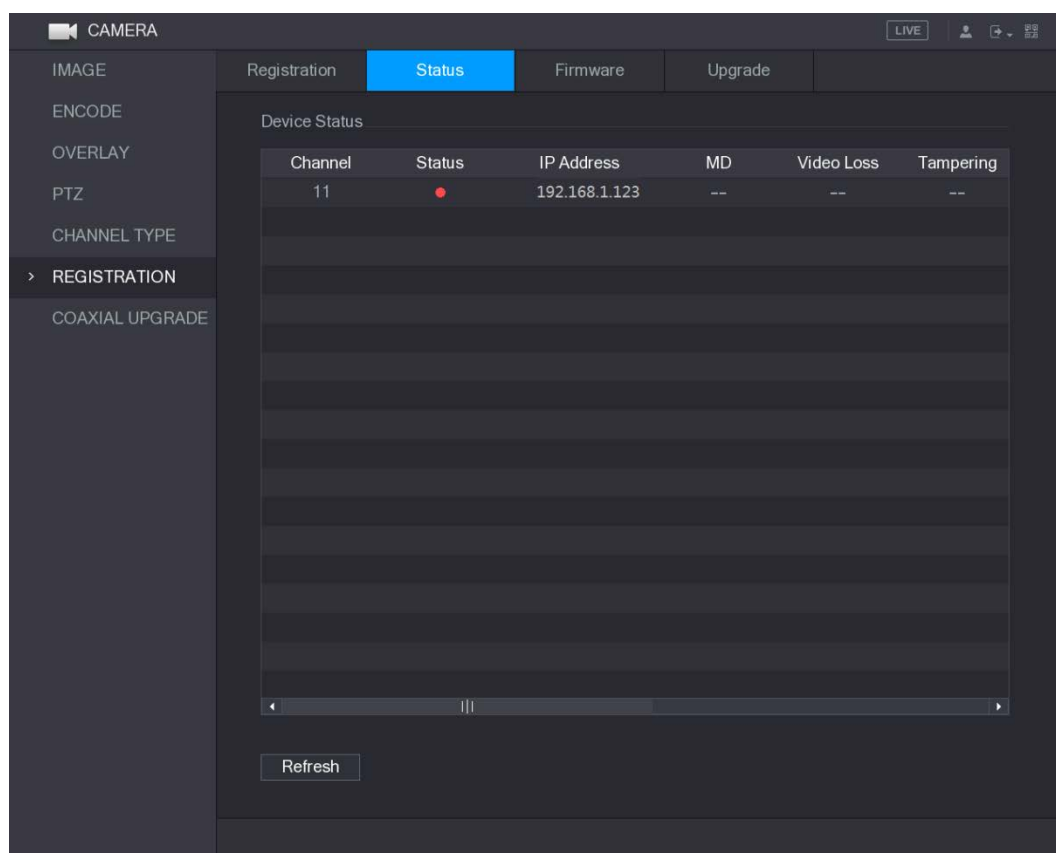
You can view the status of remote devices and upgrade.

### 5.6.2.1 Viewing Status

You can view the device information such as connection status, IP address, motion detection, video loss detection, camera name, and manufacturer.

Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Status**, the **Status** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-82 Status

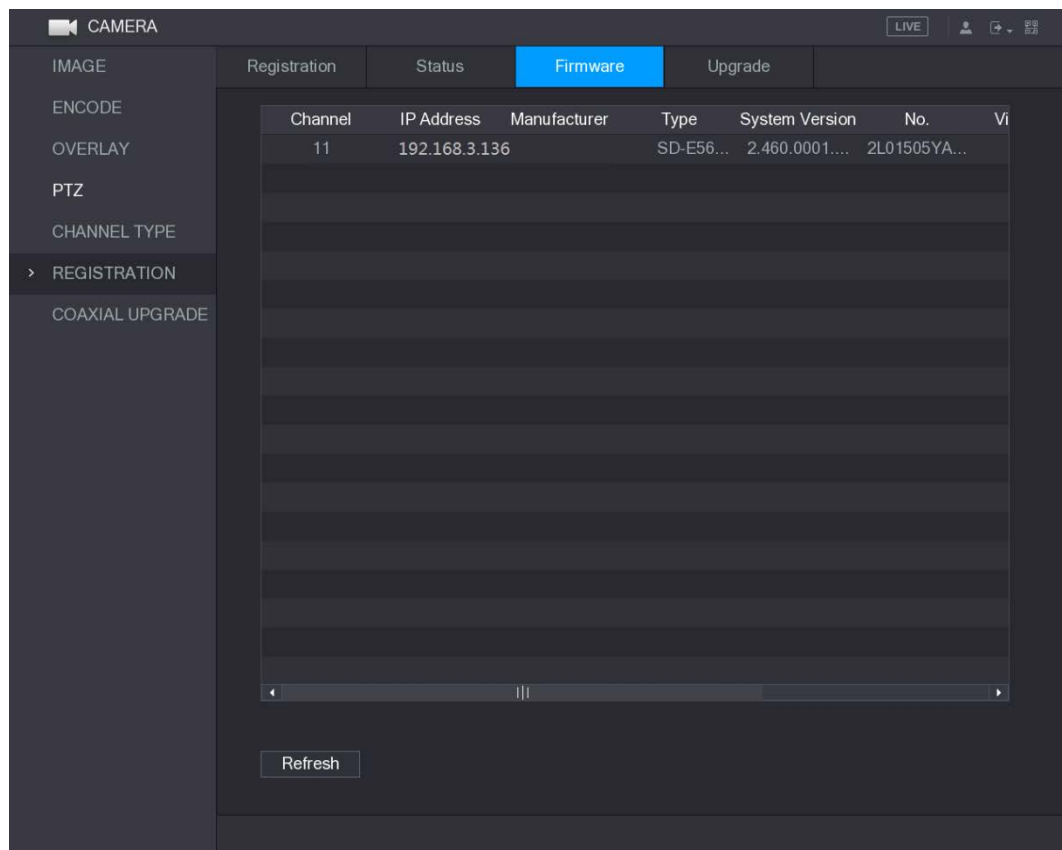


### 5.6.2.2 Viewing Firmware Information

You can view the device firmware information such as channel number, IP address, manufacturer, system version, video input, audio input, and alarm in.

Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Firmware**, the **Firmware** interface is displayed.

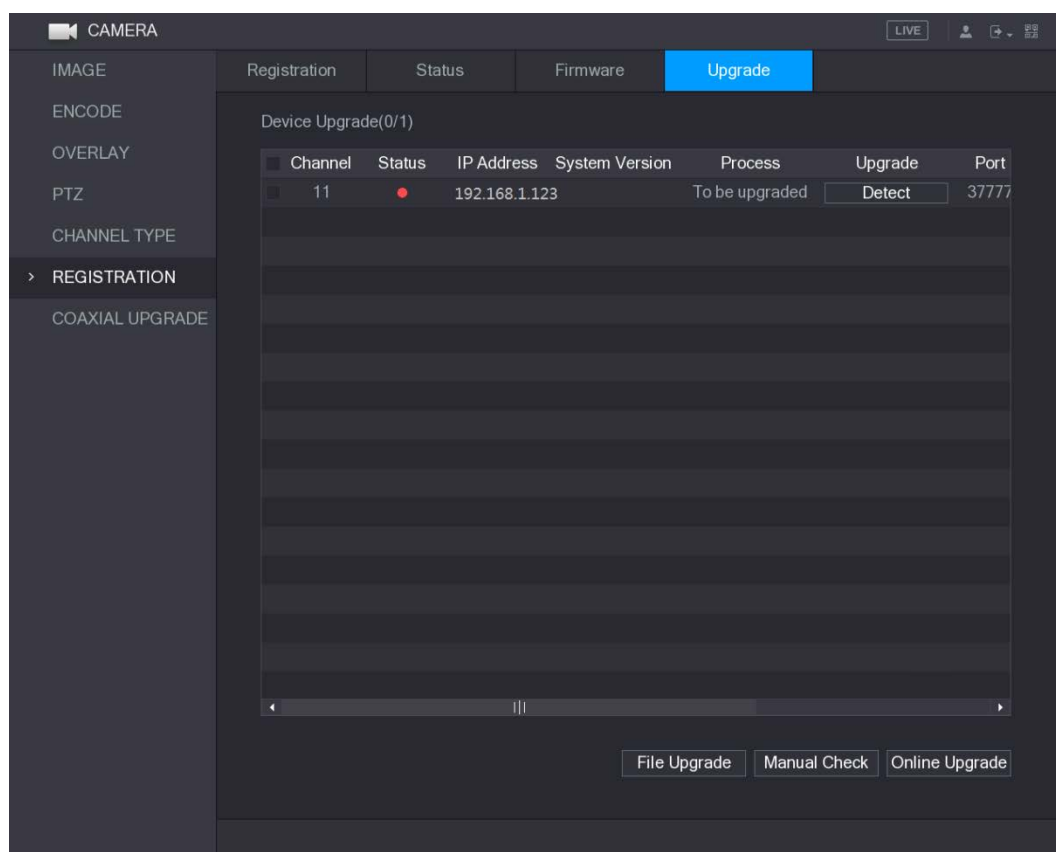
Figure 5-83 Firmware



### 5.6.2.3 Upgrading Remote Devices

**Step 1** Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Upgrade.

Figure 5-84 Upgrade



## Step 2 Upgrade the device.

- File Upgrade
  - 1) Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
  - 2) Select the devices that you want to upgrade.
  - 3) Click File upgrade.  
The **File Upgrade** interface is displayed.
  - 4) Select the upgrading files and click **Apply**.
- Online Upgrade
  - 1) Click **Detect** or select the check box the device that you want to upgrade and click **Manual Check**.  
The system starts detecting if there is a new version on the online server.
  - 2) Select the check box of all the devices that have new version.
  - 3) Click Online Upgrade.



- The system will pop up a message to indicate if the upgrading is successful.
- You can use the Type list to filter the devices so that you can find the devices quickly.



## 5.7 Configuring Record Settings

You can record video manually or automatically and configure the recording settings to main stream and sub stream respectively.

### 5.7.1 Enabling Record Control

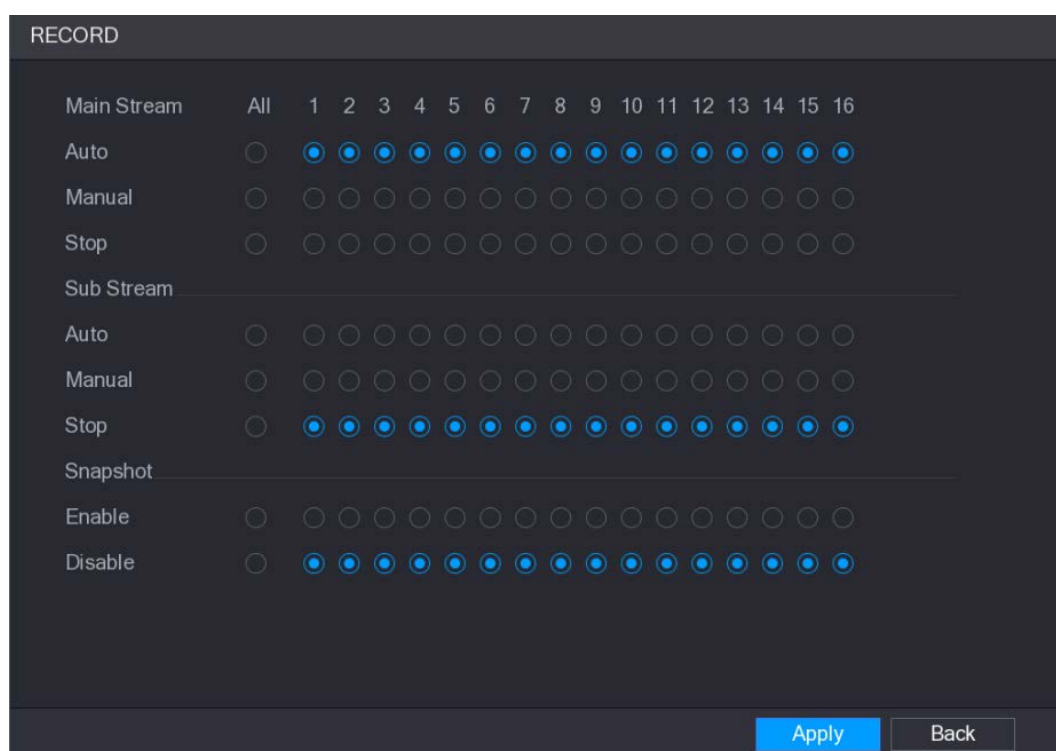


- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access **STORAGE** settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

**Step 1** Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**.

Figure 5-85 RECORD



RECORD		All	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Main Stream	Auto	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
	Manual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Stop	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Sub Stream	Auto	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Manual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Stop	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Snapshot	Enable	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Disable	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

Apply Back

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the record control parameters.

Table 5-31 Record control

Parameter	Description
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels. You can select a single channel or select <b>All</b> .
Record status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Auto</b>: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule.</li> <li><b>Manual</b>: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel.</li> <li><b>Stop</b>: Do not record.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding channels.

Step 3 Click **Apply**.

## 5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the recorded video so that the recorded video can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule."

## 5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings

### 5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger

The snapshot is divided into scheduled snapshot, event triggered snapshot, and face detection triggered snapshot. When the both are enabled, the event triggered snapshot has the priority.

- If there is no alarm event, the system performs scheduled snapshot.
- If there is any alarm event, the system performs event triggered snapshot.

#### 5.8.1.1 Configuring Scheduled Snapshot

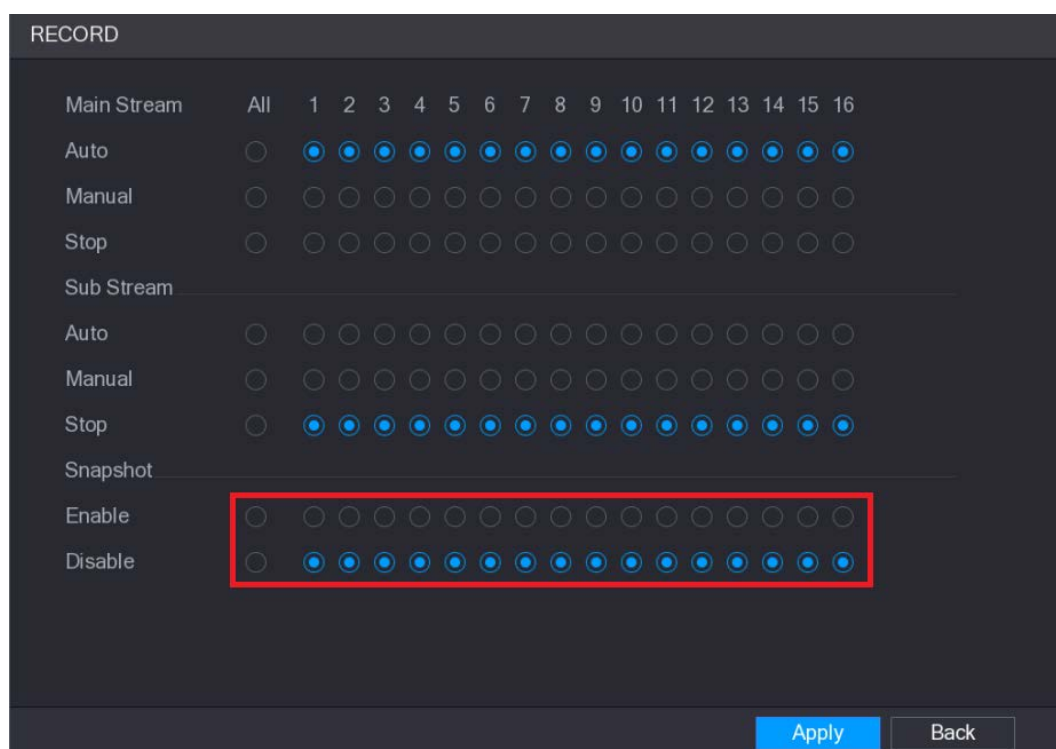
Step 1 Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed.

Step 2 On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**.

The **RECORD** interface is displayed.

Step 3 In the **Snapshot** area, enable the snapshot for the channels if needed.

Figure 5-86 Record



	All	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Main Stream																	
Auto	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Manual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Stop	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Sub Stream																	
Auto	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Manual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Stop	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Snapshot																	
Enable	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Disable	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

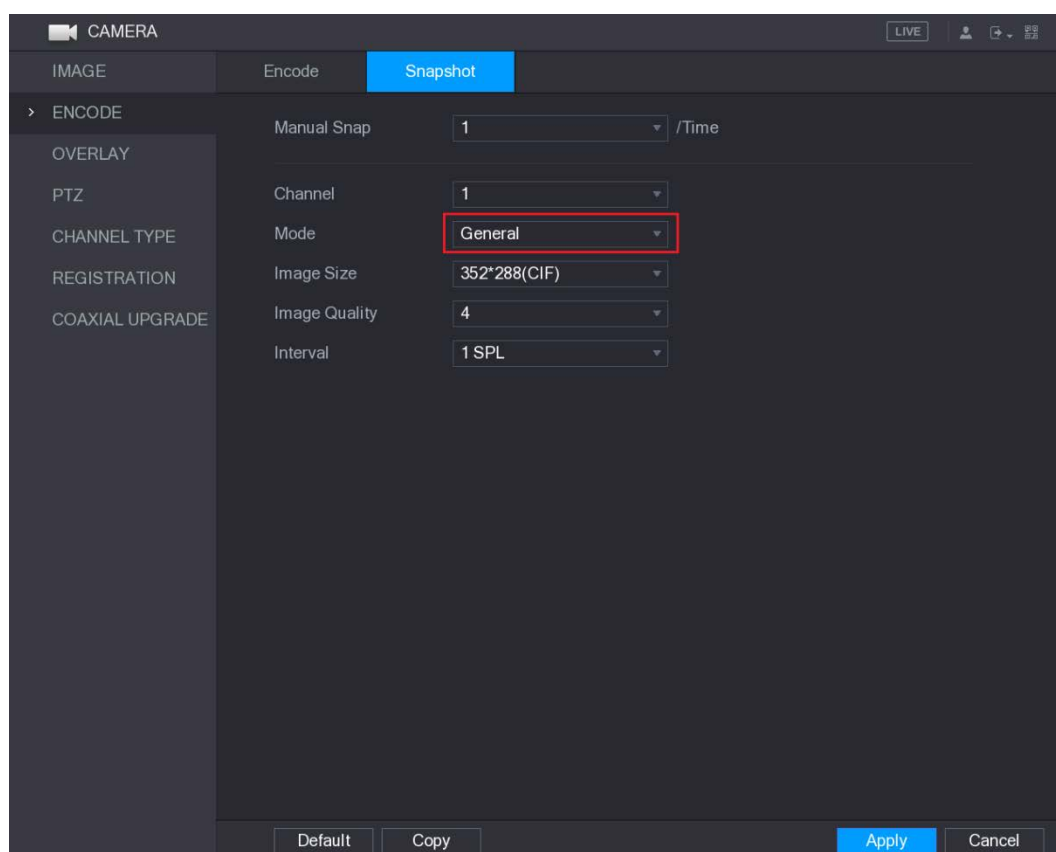
Apply Back

**Step 4** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

**Step 5** In the **Mode** list, select **General**, and then configure other parameters.

Figure 5-87 Snapshot



CAMERA

Encode Snapshot

Manual Snap: 1 /Time

Channel: 1

Mode: General

Image Size: 352\*288(CIF)

Image Quality: 4

Interval: 1 SPL

Default Copy Apply Cancel

**Step 6** Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- If you have configured the snapshot schedule, the configuration has been completed.
- If you have not configured the snapshot schedule, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

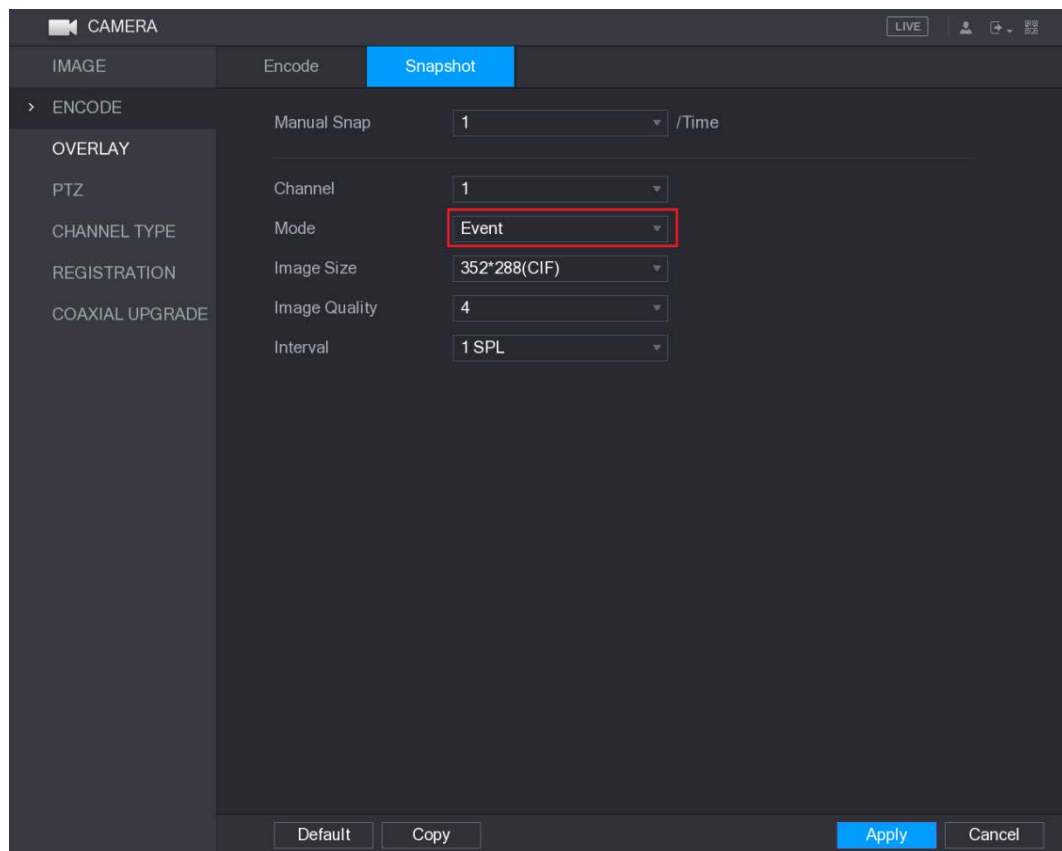
### 5.8.1.2 Configuring Event Triggered Snapshot

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

**Step 2** In the **Mode** list, select **Event**, and then configure other parameters.

Figure 5-88 Event



**Step 3** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT**, and select the event type to configure, for example, select the **Motion Detect** tab.

Figure 5-89 Motion detect

The screenshot displays the 'ALARM' configuration page with the 'Motion Detect' tab selected. The left sidebar shows 'ALARM INFO', 'ALARM INPUT', 'ALARM OUTPUT', 'VIDEO DETECT', and 'ABNORMALITY'. The main area contains settings for motion detection, including Channel (1), Enable MD (checked), Region (Setting), Enable PIR (checked), Period (Setting), Alarm Out (Setting), Anti-Dither (5 Sec.), Latch (10 Sec.), Show Message (unchecked), Alarm Upload (unchecked), Send Email (unchecked), Record Channel (checked, 1-16), PTZ (Setting), Post Record (10 Sec.), Tour (unchecked, 1-16), Snapshot (checked, 1-16), Video Matrix (unchecked), Buzzer (unchecked), Log (unchecked), Voice Prompts (None), and a dropdown menu. The Snapshot checkbox and its corresponding channel selection (1-16) are highlighted with a red box. At the bottom, there are buttons for Default, Copy, Test, Apply, and Back.

**Step 4** Select the **Snapshot** check box and select the corresponding channel.

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

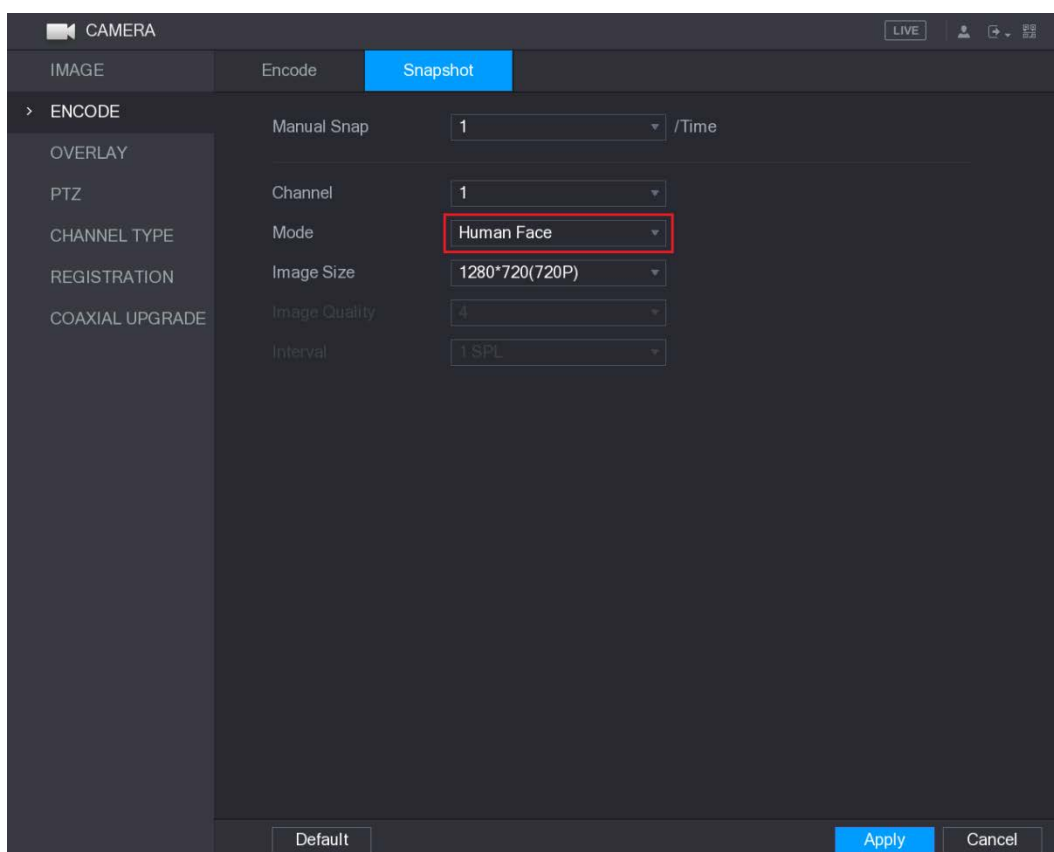
### 5.8.1.3 Configuring Face Detection Triggered Snapshot

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

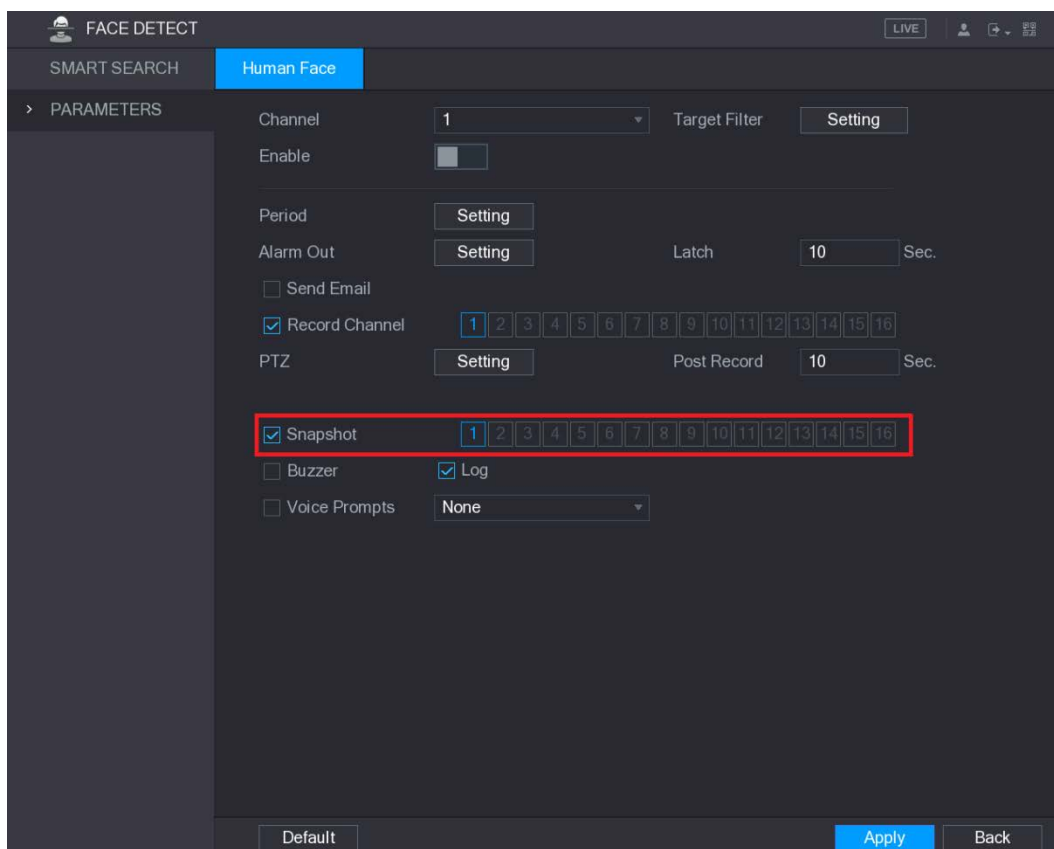
**Step 2** In the **Mode** list, select **Human Face**, and then configure other parameters.

Figure 5-90 Select human face



**Step 3** Select Main Menu > FACE DETECT > PARAMETERS > Human Face.

Figure 5-91 Human face



**Step 4** Select the **Snapshot** check box and select the corresponding channel.

**Step 5** Click **Apply**.

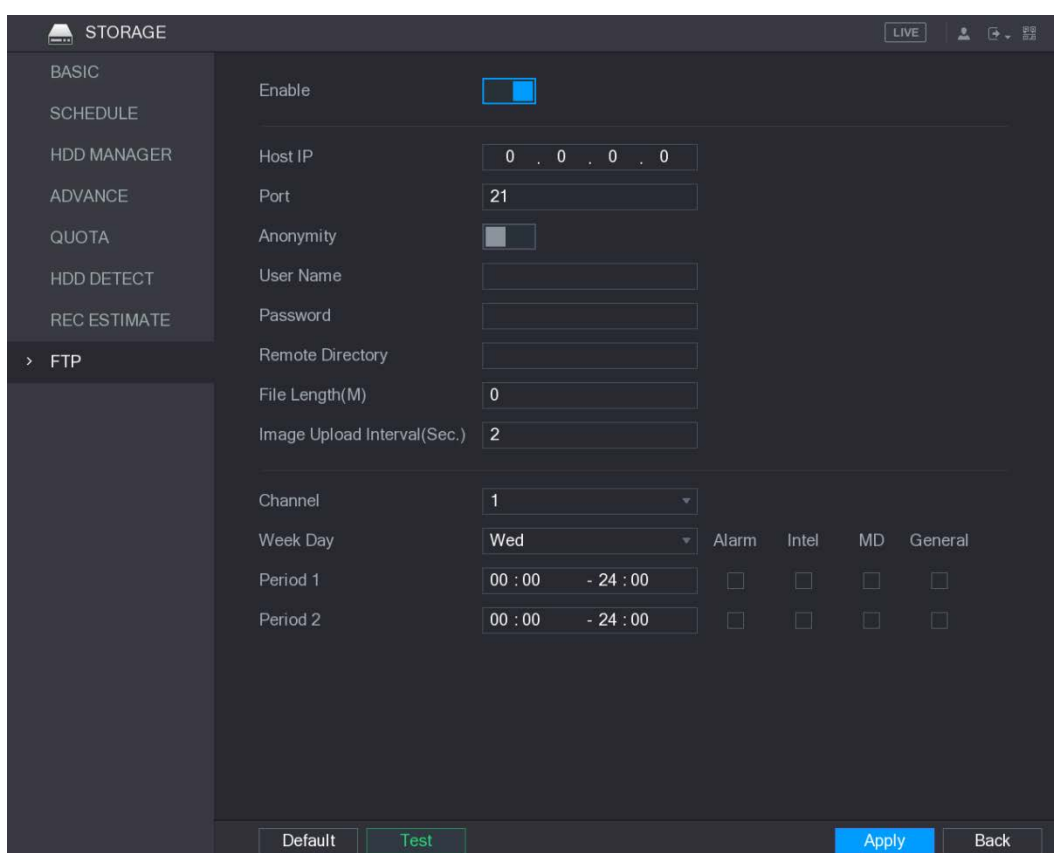
## 5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the snapshot so that the snapshot can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

## 5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP**.

Figure 5-92 FTP



The screenshot shows the 'STORAGE' configuration page with the 'FTP' tab selected. The 'Enable' checkbox is checked. The 'Host IP' is set to 0.0.0.0, 'Port' is 21, 'Anonymity' is unchecked, 'User Name' and 'Password' are empty, 'Remote Directory' is empty, 'File Length(M)' is 0, and 'Image Upload Interval(Sec.)' is 2. The 'Channel' is set to 1. The 'Week Day' is set to Wed. The 'Period 1' and 'Period 2' time ranges are both set to 00:00 - 24:00. The 'Apply' button is highlighted in blue.

**Step 2** Enable the FTP function and configure the parameters. For details, see "5.17.8 Configuring FTP Storage Settings."

The snapshots will be uploaded to FTP for backup.

## 5.9 Playing Back Video

### 5.9.1 Enabling Record Control

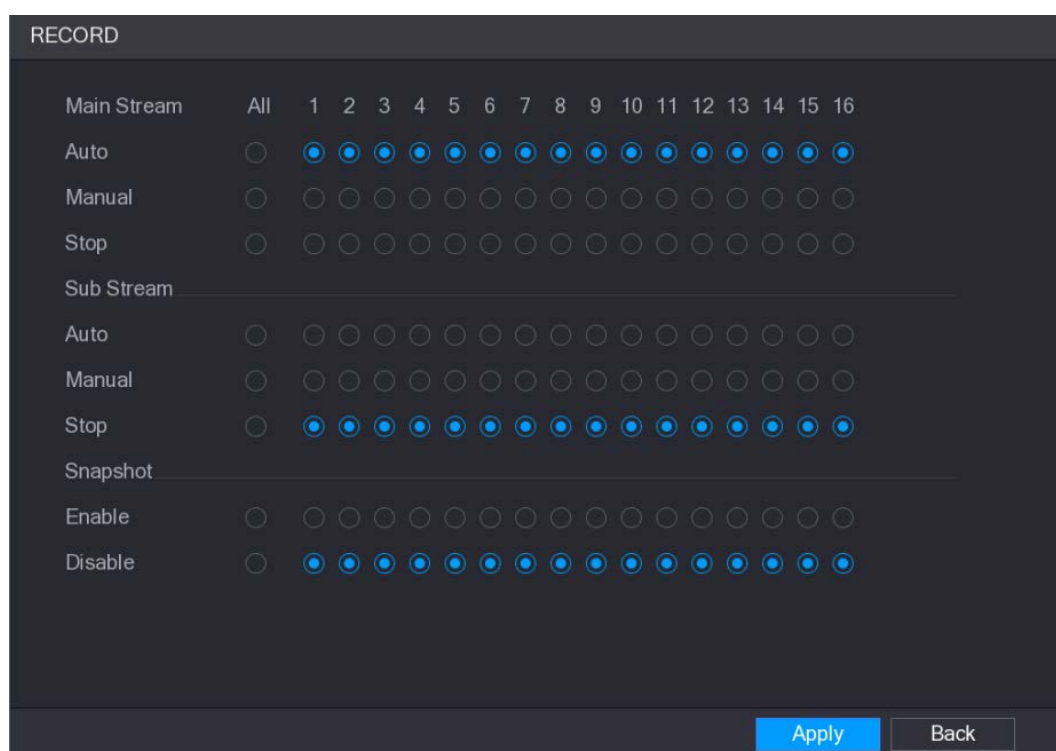


- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access **STORAGE** settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

**Step 1** Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual > Record Control**.

Figure 5-93 RECORD



RECORD		All	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Main Stream	Auto	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
	Manual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Stop	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Sub Stream	Auto	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Manual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Stop	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Snapshot	Enable	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Disable	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

Apply Back

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the record control parameters.

Table 5-32 Record control parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels. You can select a single channel or select <b>All</b> .
Record status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Auto</b>: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule.</li> <li><b>Manual</b>: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel.</li> <li><b>Stop</b>: Do not record.</li> </ul>
Snapshot status	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding channels.



## 5.9.2 Instant Playback

You can use the instant playback function to play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video in any channel. For details about instant playback function, see "5.2.2.1 Instant Playback."

## 5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback

You can search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.

Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

Figure 5-94 Video playback

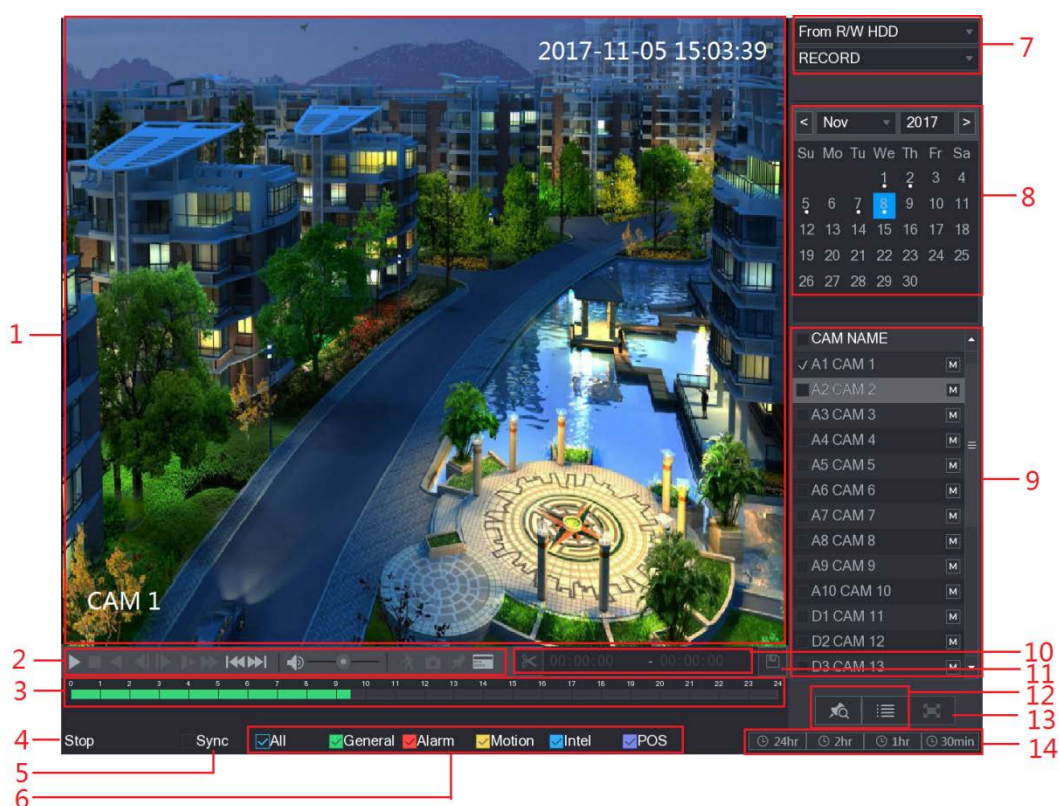









Table 5-33 Video playback description

No.	Function	Description
1	Display Window	Display the searched recorded video or picture. It supports playing in single-channel, 4-channel, 9-channel, and 16-channel simultaneously.  When playing back in a single channel mode, hold down the left mouse button to select the area that you want to enlarge. The area is enlarged after the left mouse button is released. To exit the enlarged status, right-click on the image.
2	Playback Controls Bar	Playback control buttons. For details about the control buttons, see "5.9.3.2 Introducing Playback Controls."
3	Time Bar	Display the type and time period of the current recorded video.

No.	Function	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the 4-channel layout, there are four time bars are displayed; in the other view layouts, only one time bar is displayed.</li> <li>Click on the colored area to start playback from a certain time.</li> <li>In the situation when you are configuring the settings, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming in from 0. In the situation when playback is ongoing, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming from the time point where the playback is located.</li> <li>Time bar colors: Green indicates general type; Red indicates external alarm; Yellow indicates motion detection; Blue indicates intelligent events; Purple indicates POS events.</li> <li>For some models, when you are clicking on the blank area in the time bar, the system automatically jumps to the next time point where there is a recorded video located.</li> </ul>
4	Play Status	Includes two playback status: <b>Play</b> and <b>Stop</b> .
5	Sync	Select the <b>Sync</b> check box to simultaneously play recorded videos of different channels in the same period in multi-channel view.
6	Record type	Select the check box to define the recording type to search for.
7	Search type	Select the content to play back: <b>Record</b> , <b>PIC</b> , <b>Splice Playback</b> . For details about the selecting search type, see "5.9.3.3 Selecting Search Type."
8	Calendar	Click the date that you want to search, the time bar displays the corresponding record. The dates with record or snapshot have a small solid circle under the date.
9	View Layout and Channel Selection	<p>In the <b>CAM NAME</b> list, select the channel(s) that you want to play back.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The window split is decided by how you select the channel(s). For example, if you select one channel, the playback is displayed in the single-channel view; if you select two to four channels, the playback is displayed in the four-channel view. The maximum is eight channels.</li> <li>Click  to switch the streams.  indicates main stream, and  indicates sub stream.</li> </ul>
10	Video Splice	Splice a section of recorded video and save it. For details about splicing a recorded video, see "5.9.3.4 Clipping Recorded Video."
11	Backup	Back up the recorded video files. For details, see "5.9.3.5 Backing up Recorded Video."
12	List Display	<p>This area includes <b>Mark List</b> and <b>File List</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>: Click the <b>Mark List</b> button, the marked recorded video list is displayed. Double-click the file to start playing.</li> </ul>

No.	Function	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the : Click the <b>File List</b> button, the searched recorded video list is displayed. You can lock the files. For details, see "5.9.8 Using the File List."</li> </ul>
13	Full Screen	Click  to display in full screen. In the full screen mode, point to the bottom of the screen, the time bar is displayed. Right-click on the screen to exit full screen mode.
14	Time Bar Unit	You can select 24hr, 2hr, 1hr, or 30min as the unit of time bar. The time bar display changes with the setting.

### 5.9.3.2 Introducing Playback Controls Bar











You can perform the operations such as control the speed of playback, add mark, and take snapshots through the playback controls bar.

















Figure 5-95 Playback control bar



The play backward function and playback speed are dependent on the product version. The actual product shall govern. You can also contact the technical support to consult the hardware version information.

Table 5-34 Playback control bar description

Icon	Function
	Play/Pause. During playing back, you can switch between play and pause.
	Stop. During playing back, you can click the <b>Stop</b> button to stop playback.
	Play Backward. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During playing back, click the <b>Play Backward</b> button to backward play the recorded video, the button switches to ; click  to stop playing backward.</li> <li>During playing back, click  to start playing forward.</li> </ul>
	Previous Frame/Next Frame. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the playback is paused, click  or click  to play single-frame recorded video.</li> <li>When playing back single-frame recorded video, click  to start playing forward.</li> </ul>

Icon	Function
	<p>Slow Playback.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During playing back, click  to set the speed of slow playback as SlowX1/2, SlowX1/4, SlowX1/8, or SlowX1/16.</li> <li>During fast playback, click  to slow down the speed of fast playback.</li> </ul>
	<p>Fast Playback.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During playing back, click  to set the speed of fast playback as FastX2, FastX4, FastX8, or FastX16.</li> <li>During slow playback, click  to speed up slow playback.</li> </ul>
	<p>Previous Day/Next Day.</p> <p>Click  or click  to play the previous day or next day of the current recorded video.</p>
	Adjust volume of playback.
	Smart Search. For details about the using the smart search, see "5.9.4 Smart Search."
	In the full screen mode, click  to take a snapshot and save into the USB storage device or mobile HDD.
	Add Mark for the recorded view. For details about adding mark, see "5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video."
	<p>Hide POS Hide.</p> <p>During single-channel playback, click  to display or hide POS information on the screen.</p>

### 5.9.3.3 Selecting Search Type

You can search the recorded videos, splice, or snapshots from HDD or external storage device.

- From R/W HDD:** Recorded videos or snapshots playback from HDD of the Device.

Figure 5-96 R/W HDD



- From I/O Device:** Recorded videos playback from external storage device.


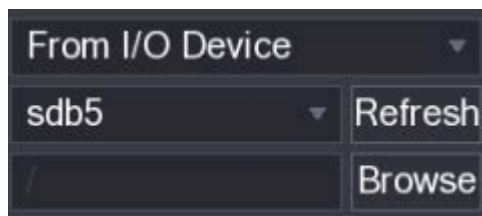
Click **Browse**, select the save path of recorded video file that you want to play. Double-click the video file or click  to start playing.

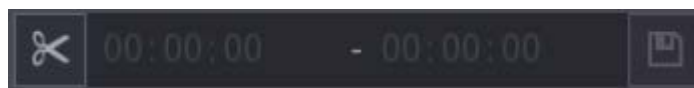
Figure 5-97 Browse




### 5.9.3.4 Clipping Recorded Video


During playback, clip sections of recorded video and save to the USB storage device.

Figure 5-98 Video clip



**Step 1** Select a recorded video that you want to play.

- Click  to start playing from the beginning.
- Double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

**Step 2** Click on the time bar to select the start time, and then click  to start clipping.

**Step 3** Click on the time bar to select the start time, and then click  to stop clipping.

**Step 4** Click .

The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. You can back up the files.




- You can clip the video of a single-channel or multiple channels.
- Maximum 1024 files can be backed up at one time.
- The files that are selected in the **File List** cannot be clipped.

### 5.9.3.5 Backing up Recorded Video

You can back up the recorded video file or splice video file into the USB storage device.

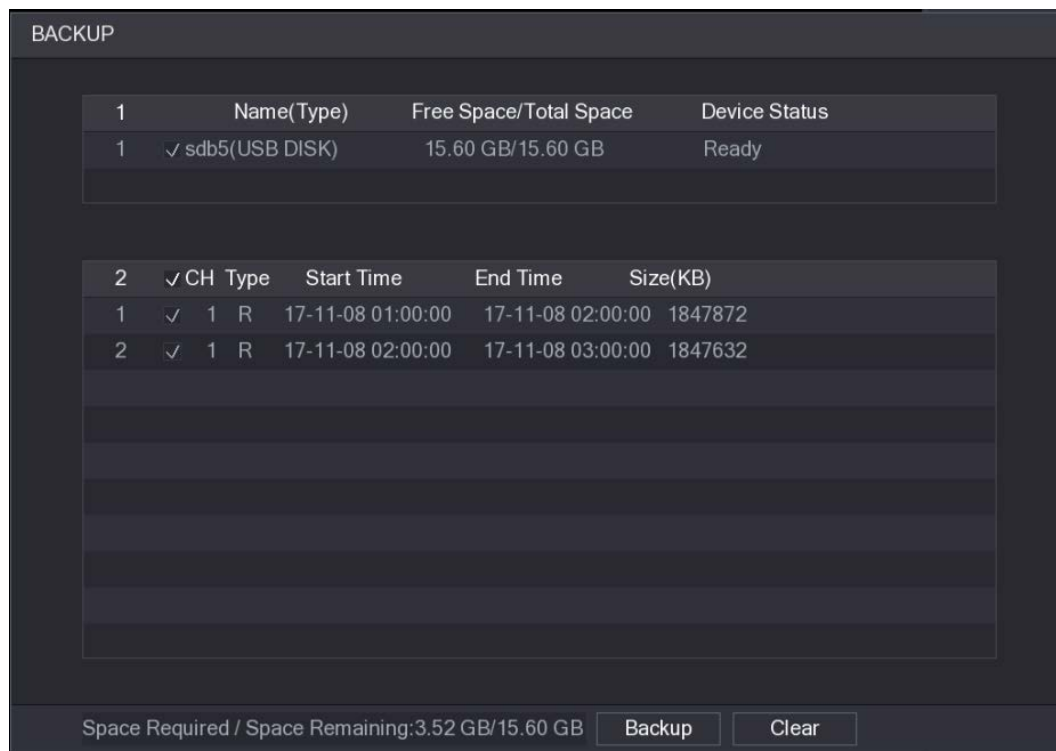
**Step 1** Select the recorded video file that you want to back up. You can select the following two types of files:

- Recorded video file: Click , the **File List** area is displayed. Select the file(s) that you want to back up.

- Splice video file. For details about splicing video file, see "5.9.3.4 Clipping Recorded Video."

**Step 2** Click .

Figure 5-99 Backup



**Step 3** Click **Backup**.



If you do not want to back the file, clear the check box.

## 5.9.4 Smart Search

During playback, you can analyze a certain area to find if there was any motion detection event occurred. The system will display the images with motion events of the recorded video.




Not all models support this function.

To use the Smart Search function, you need to enable the motion detection for the channel by selecting **Main Menu > ALARM > VIDEO DETECT > Motion Detect**.

To use the Smart Search function, do the following:

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

**Step 2** In the **CAME NAME** list, select the channel(s) that you want to play.

**Step 3** Click  or double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

**Step 4** Click .

The grid is displayed on the screen.



- Only single-channel supports smart search.
- If multi-channels are selected, double-click on the channel window to display this channel only on the screen, and then you can start using smart search function.

**Step 5** Drag the pointer to select the searching area.




The grid area supports 22×18(PAL) and 22×15(NTSC).

**Step 6**

Click .

The screen starts playing back the motional splices of recorded video for the selected searching area.

**Step 7**

Click  to exit the playback.

## 5.9.5 Marking and Playing Back Video

You can mark the recording for somewhere important. Then you can easily find the marked recording by searching time and mark name.

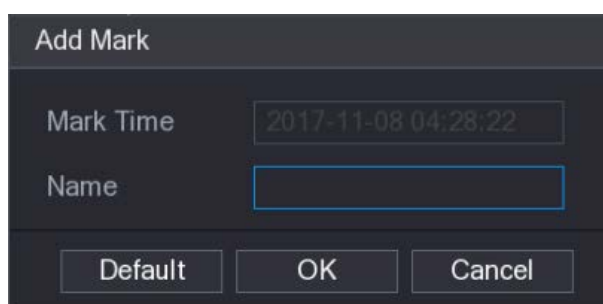
### Marking a Video

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

**Step 2**

In the playback mode, click .

Figure 5-100 Add mark



**Step 3** In the **Name** box, enter a name.

**Step 4** Click **OK**.

This marked video file displays in the **Mark List**.

### Playing Back Marked Video



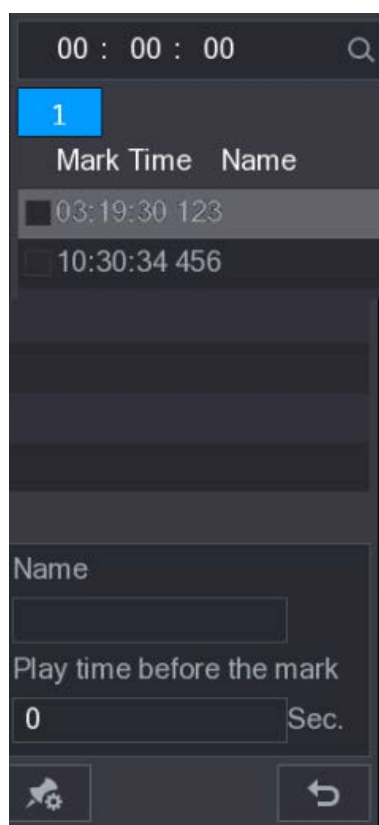
This function is supported on single-channel playback.

**Step 1** In the **CAME NAME** list, select one channel.

**Step 2**

Click .

Figure 5-101 Mark list



**Step 3** Double-click the file that you want to play back.

To search the marked video by time, in the **SEARCH** box on the top of the interface, enter the time, and then click .

## Playing Back Time before the Mark

You can configure to play N seconds of the marked video before the marked time.

**Step 1** In the **Name** box, enter the name of a marked video.

**Step 2** In the Playback time before the mark box, enter N seconds.

**Step 3** Click .

The playback starts from N seconds before the marked time.



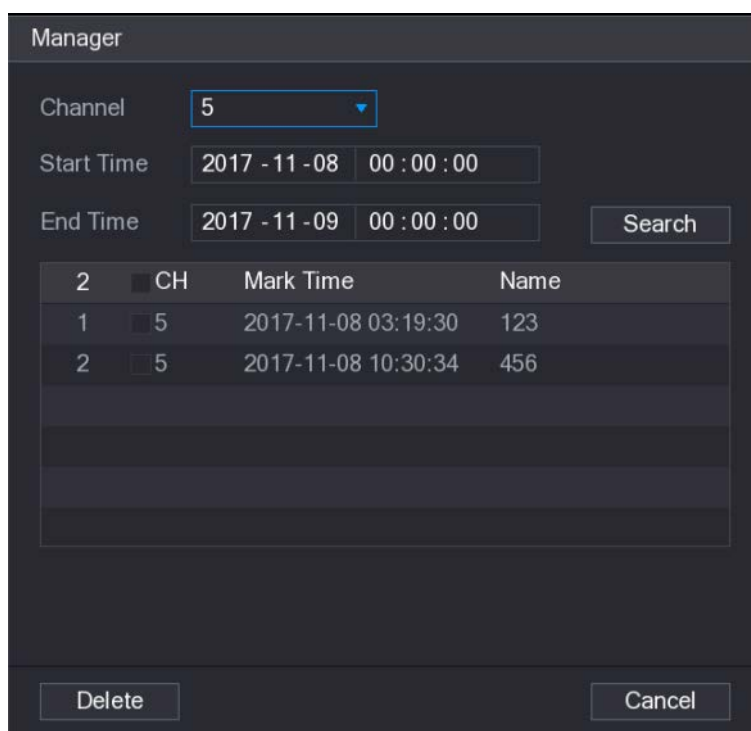
If there is N seconds exist before the marked time, the playback starts from N seconds before the marked time. If there is not, it plays back as much as there is.

## Managing Marked Video

In the **Mark List** interface, click , the **Manager** interface is displayed.



Figure 5-102 Manager



The Manager interface displays a table of marked videos and search filters. The table has columns for an index, channel (CH), mark time, and name. Two videos are listed: one from 2017-11-08 03:19:30 with name 123, and another from 2017-11-08 10:30:34 with name 456. Search filters include a Channel dropdown set to 5, Start Time (2017-11-08 00:00:00), and End Time (2017-11-09 00:00:00). Buttons for Search, Delete, and Cancel are present.

	CH	Mark Time	Name
1	5	2017-11-08 03:19:30	123
2	5	2017-11-08 10:30:34	456

- Be default, it manages all the marked videos of the selected channel.
- To search the marked video, select channel number from the **Channel** list, enter time in **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, and then click **Search**.
- All the marked videos display in time order.
- To modify the name of marked video, double-click a marked video, the **Edit Mark** dialog box is displayed.
- To delete the marked video, select the marked video, and then click **Delete**.



After opening the **Manger** interface, the playback will pause until exiting this interface. If the marked video that was in playing back is deleted, the playback will start from the first marked video in the **Mark List**.

## 5.9.6 Playing Back Snapshots

You can search and play back the snapshots.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

**Step 2** In the **Search Type** list, select **PIC**.

**Step 3** In the **Channel** list, select a channel number.

**Step 4** In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

**Step 5** Click .

The system starts playing snapshots according to the configured intervals.

## 5.9.7 Playing Back Splices

You can clip the recorded video files into splices and then play back at the same time to save your time.

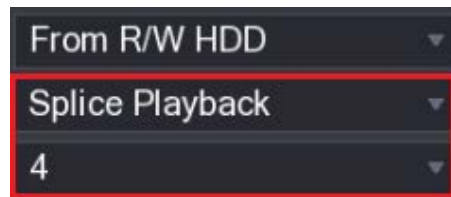


Not all models support this function.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.

**Step 2** In the **Search Type** list, select **Splice Playback**; In the **Split Mode** list, select **4, 9, or 16**.

Figure 5-103 Split mode



**Step 3** In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

**Step 4** In the **CAM NAME** list, select a channel.



Only single-channel supports this function.

**Step 5** Start playing back splices.


- Click , the playback starts from the beginning.
- Double-click anywhere on the time bar, the playback starts from where you click.

Figure 5-104 Time bar



Every recorded video file must be at least five minutes. If a recorded video file is less than 20 minutes but still choose to split into four windows, the system will automatically adjust the windows quantity to ensure every splice is more than five minutes, and in this case it is possible that there are no images are displaying in some windows.

## 5.9.8 Using the File List

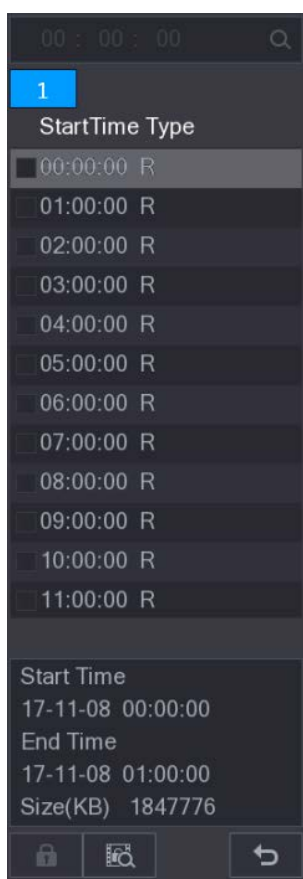
You can view all the recorded videos within a certain period from any channel in the **File List**.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed.


**Step 2** Select a channel(s).

**Step 3** Click .


Figure 5-105 File list



#### Step 4 Start playback.

- Click , the playback starts from the first file by default.
- Click any file, the system plays back this file.



- In the time box on the top of the file list interface, you can enter the specific time to search the file that you want to view.
- In the File List area, there are 128 files can be displayed.
- File type: **R** indicates general recorded video; **A** indicates recorded video with external alarms; **M** indicates recorded video with motion detection events; **I** indicates recorded video with intelligent vents.
- Click  to return to the interface with calendar and CAM NAME list.

## Locking and Unlocking the Recorded Video



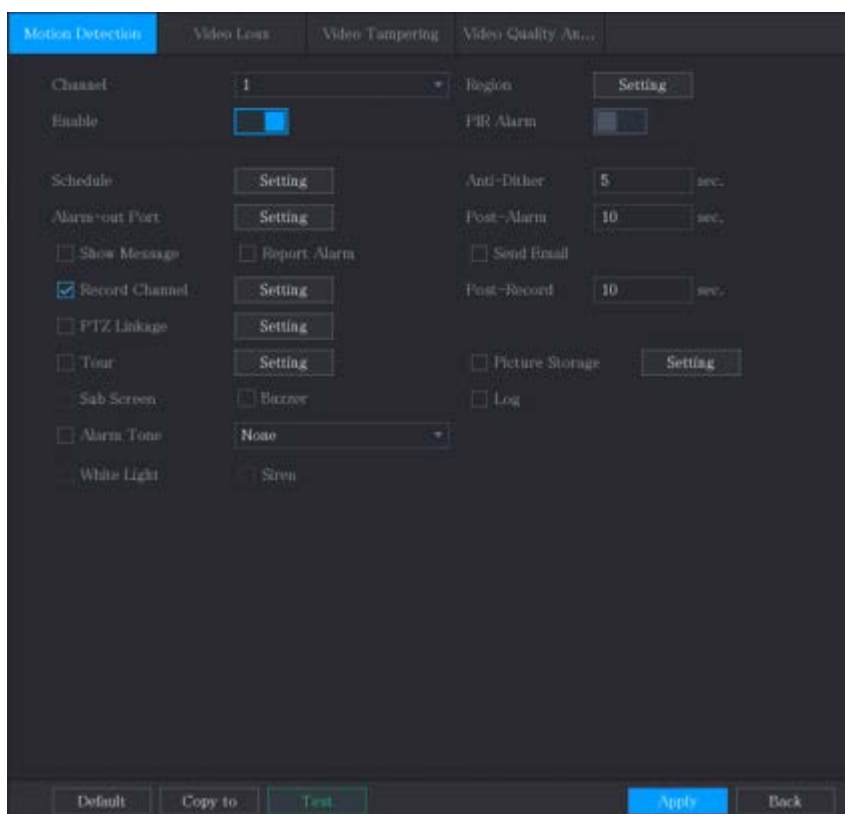
- To lock the recorded video, in the **File List** interface, select the check box of the recorded video, and then click . The locked video will not be covered.
- To view the locked information, click , the **FILE LOCKED** interface is displayed.








Figure 5-107 Motion detection





**Step 2** Configure the settings for the motion detection parameters.

Table 5-35 Motion detection parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to set the motion detection.
Region	Click <b>Setting</b> to define the motion detection region.
Enable	Enable or disable the motion detection function.
PIR Alarm	<p>PIR function helps enhancing the accuracy and validity of motion detect. It can filter the meaningless alarms that are activated by the objects such as falling leaves, flies. The detection range by PIR is smaller than the field angle.</p> <p>PIR function is enabled by default if it is supported by the cameras. Enabling PIR function will get the motion detect to be enabled automatically to generate motion detection alarms; if the PIR function is not enabled, the motion detect just has the general effect.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Only when the channel type is CVI, the PIR function can be enabled.</li> <li>If the camera does not support PIR function, it will be unusable.</li> <li>If the Device does not support PIR function, it will not be displayed on the interface.</li> </ul>
Schedule	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of alarm.

Parameter	Description
Alarm-out Port	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Post-Alarm	<p>Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.</p>
Show Message	<p>Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</p>
Report Alarm	<p>Select the <b>Report Alarm</b> check box to enable the system to upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm event occurs.</p>
Send Email	<p>Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</p>  <p>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; Email</b>.</p>
Record Channel	<p>Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.</p>  <p>The recording for motion detection and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."</p>
PTZ Linkage	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.</p> <p>Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.</p>  <p>Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.</p>
Post Record	<p>Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.</p>
Tour	<p>Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.</p>
Picture Storage	<p>Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.</p>  <p>To use this function, select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; Encode &gt; Snapshot</b>, in the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>Event</b>.</p>

Parameter	Description
Sub Screen	<p>Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour &gt; Sub Screen</b>.</p> <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>To use this function, extra screen shall be enabled.</li> </ul>
Video Matrix	<p>Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour</b>.</p> <p></p> <p>Not all models support this function.</p>
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast/alarm tones in response to a motion detection event.
White Light	Select the check box to enable white light alarm of the camera.
Siren	Select the check box to enable sound alarm of the camera.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.



- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to**, in the **Copy to** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.
- Click **Test** to test the settings.

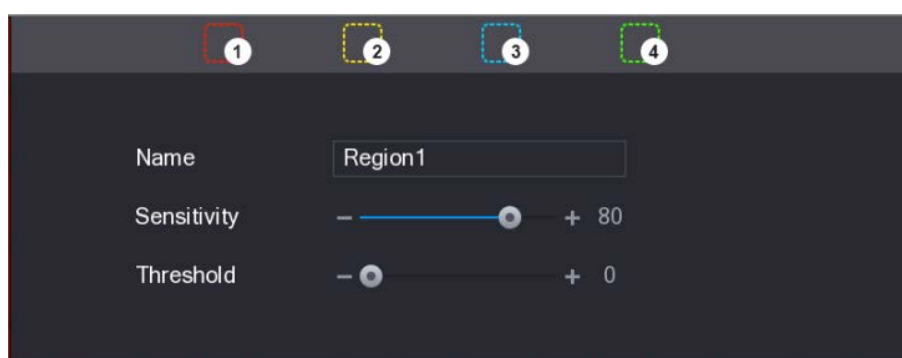
## Setting the Motion Detection Region

**Step 1** Next to **Region**, click **Setting**.

The region setting screen is displayed.

**Step 2** Point to the middle top of the interface.


Figure 5-108 Setting



**Step 3** Configure the regions settings. You can configure totally four regions.



When any one of the four regions activates motion detect alarm, the channel where this region belongs to will activate motion detect alarm.

- Select one region, for example, click .

- 2) Drag on the screen to select the region that you want to detect.  
The selected area shows the color that represents the region.
- 3) Configure the parameters.

Table 5-36 Region settings

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter a name for the region.
Sensitivity	Every region of every channel has an individual sensitivity value. The bigger the value is, the easier the alarms can be activated.
Threshold	Adjust the threshold for motion detect. Every region of every channel has an individual threshold.

**Step 4** Right-click on the screen to exit the region setting interface.

**Step 5** On the **Motion Detection** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## Setting Motion Detection Period






The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.

**Step 1** Next to **Schedule**, click **Setting**.

Figure 5-109 Setting



**Step 2** Define the motion detection period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
  - ◇ Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.
  - ◇ Define for several days of a week: Click  before each day, the icon switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days with  will take the same settings.






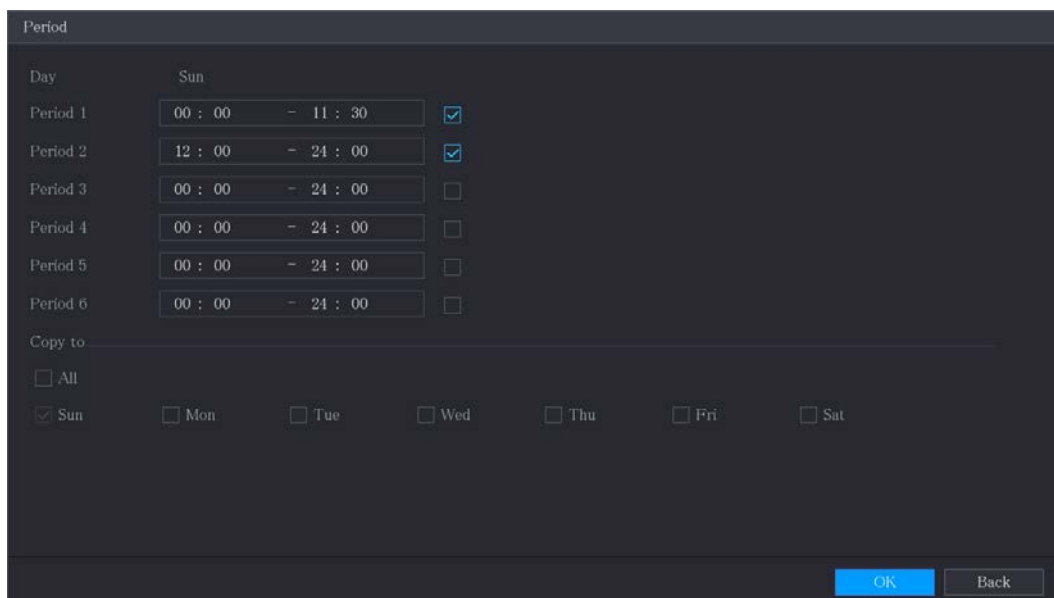
- ◇ Define for all days of a week: Click **All**, all  switches to . On the timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.
- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
  - 1) Click .

Figure 5-110 Period



Day	Sun
Period 1	00 : 00 - 11 : 30 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Period 2	12 : 00 - 24 : 00 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Period 3	00 : 00 - 24 : 00 <input type="checkbox"/>
Period 4	00 : 00 - 24 : 00 <input type="checkbox"/>
Period 5	00 : 00 - 24 : 00 <input type="checkbox"/>
Period 6	00 : 00 - 24 : 00 <input type="checkbox"/>

Copy to

☐ All ☒ Sun ☐ Mon ☐ Tue ☐ Wed ☐ Thu ☐ Fri ☐ Sat

OK Back

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period, and then select the check box to enable the settings.
  - ◇ There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ◇ Under **Copy to**, select **All** to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

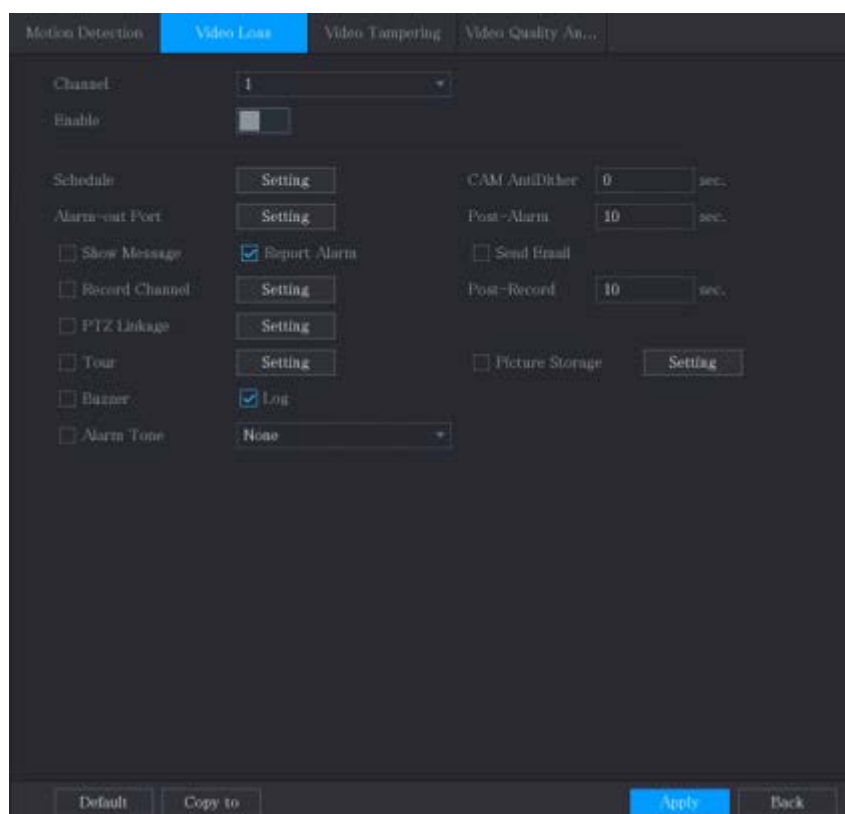
**Step 3** On the **Motion Detection** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.10.1.2 Configuring Video Loss Settings

When the video loss occurs, the system activates the alarm.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Video Loss**.

Figure 5-111 Video loss



**Step 2** To configure the settings for the video loss detection parameters, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."



For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to**, in the **Copy to** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

### 5.10.1.3 Configuring Tampering Settings

When the camera lens is covered, or the video is displayed in a single color because of the causes such as sunlight status, the monitoring cannot be continued normally. To avoid such situations, you can configure the tampering alarm settings.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Video Tampering**.

Figure 5-112 Video tampering

**Step 2** To configure the settings for the tampering detection parameters, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."



For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to**, in the **Copy to** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

#### 5.10.1.4 Configuring Video Quality Analytics



This function can be used only when it is supported by the camera.

When conditions such as blurry, overexposed, or the color changes occur on the video image, the system activates the alarm.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Video Quality Analytics**.

Figure 5-113 Video quality analytics

**Step 2** To configure the settings for the diagnosis parameters, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

### Setting the Types for Diagnosing Targets

**Step 1** Next to **Rule**, click **Setting**.

Figure 5-114 Video quality analytics

**Step 2** Select the items that you want to diagnose and set the threshold (30 by default).

Table 5-37 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
Stripe	A horizontal, vertical or diagonal stripe that might appear in the video because of device aging or electronic interruption. Such stripe brings visual interruption.
Noise	Video noises such as blurriness or quality reduction that is caused by optical distortion or device problem during camera shooting.
Color Cast	Variances in the normal proportions of RGB colors.
Defocus	Blurry video is caused during camera shooting, transferring and processing. Such condition is a common image quality reduction problem and defined as out of focus.
Overexposure	The video brightness refers to the intensity of image pixel. The range is between 0 (the darkest black) and 255 (the brightest white). If the brightness exceeds the threshold, the image is over exposed.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.

The system returns to the **Video Quality Analytics** interface.

**Step 4** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

## 5.10.2 IVS Function

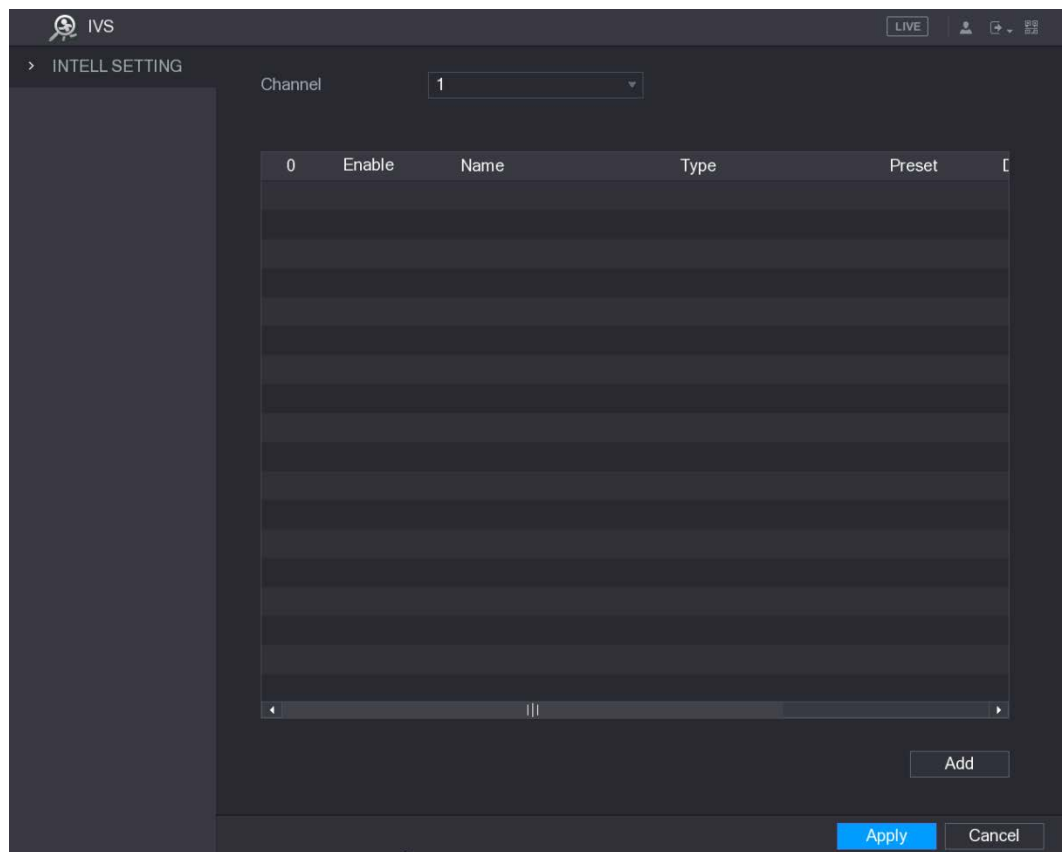


Please disable IP channels function first before using IVS function.

IVS function processes and analyzes the images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > IVS > INTELL SETTING**.

Figure 5-115 INTELL

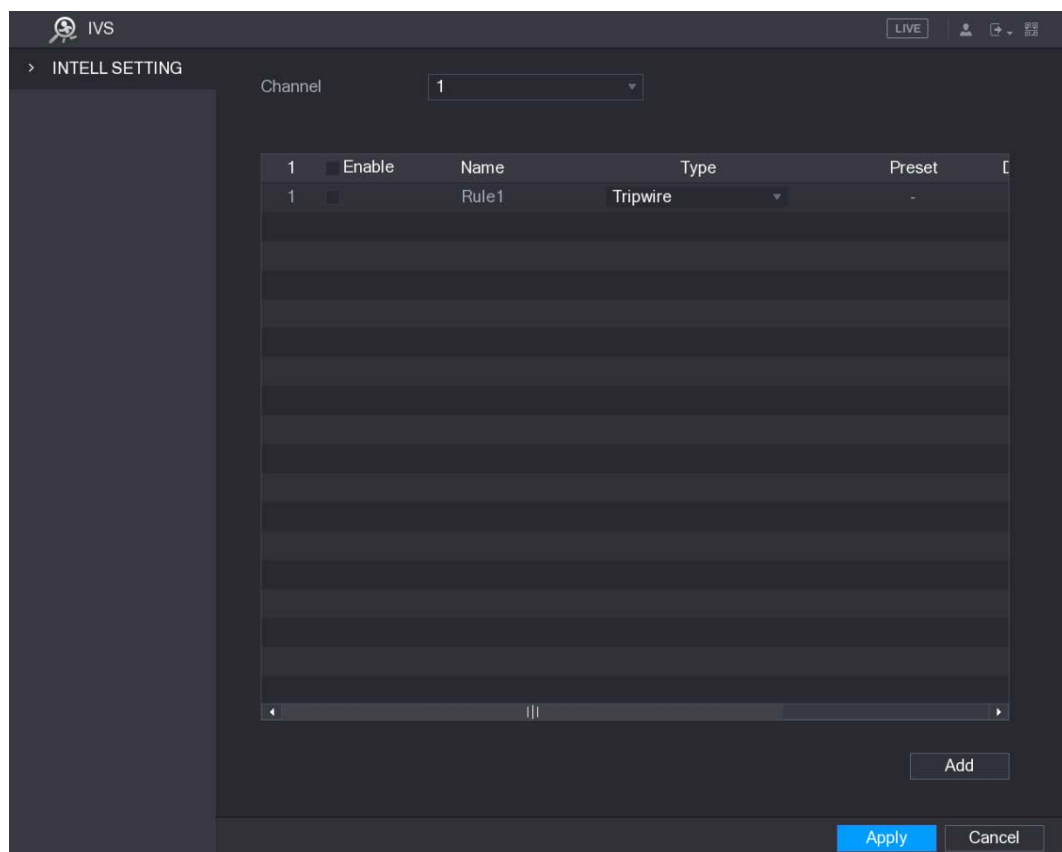


**Step 2** In the **Channel** list, select the channel number that you want to configure the IVS function for.

**Step 3** Click **Add**.



Figure 5-117 Tripwire



### Step 2 Draw a tripwire.

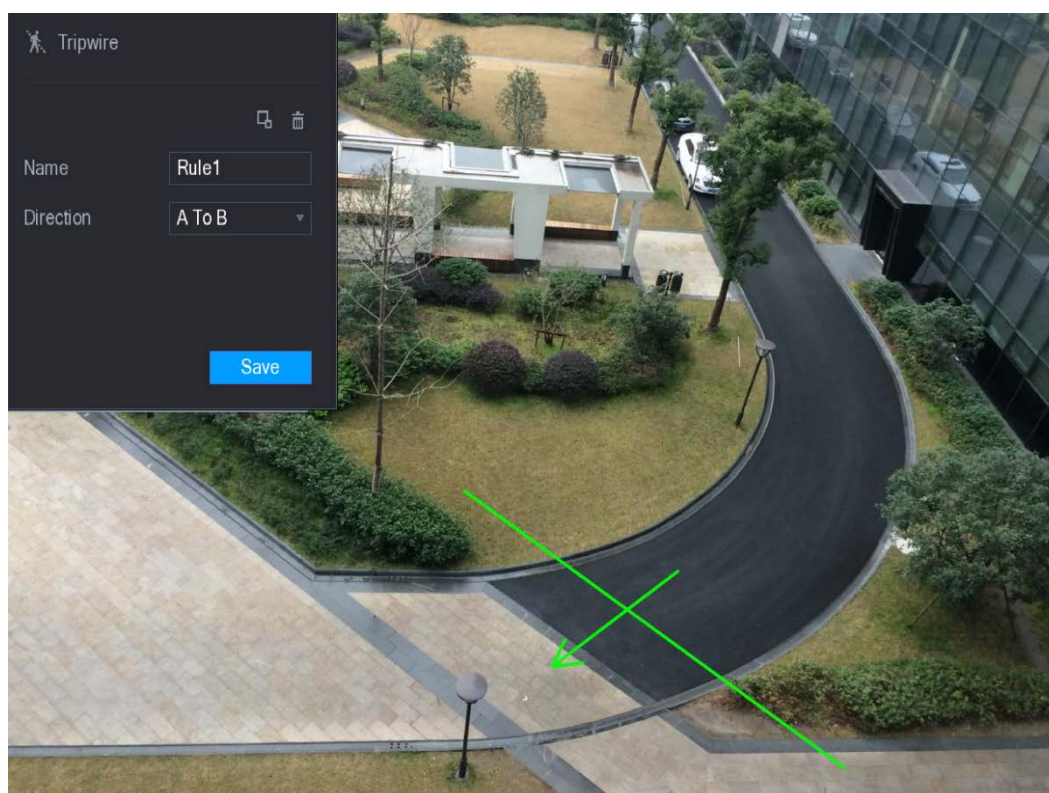
- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.

- 2) Click .

The monitoring screen to configure the tripwire rules is displayed.





Figure 5-118 Tripwire rule




3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

Table 5-38 Rule parameters

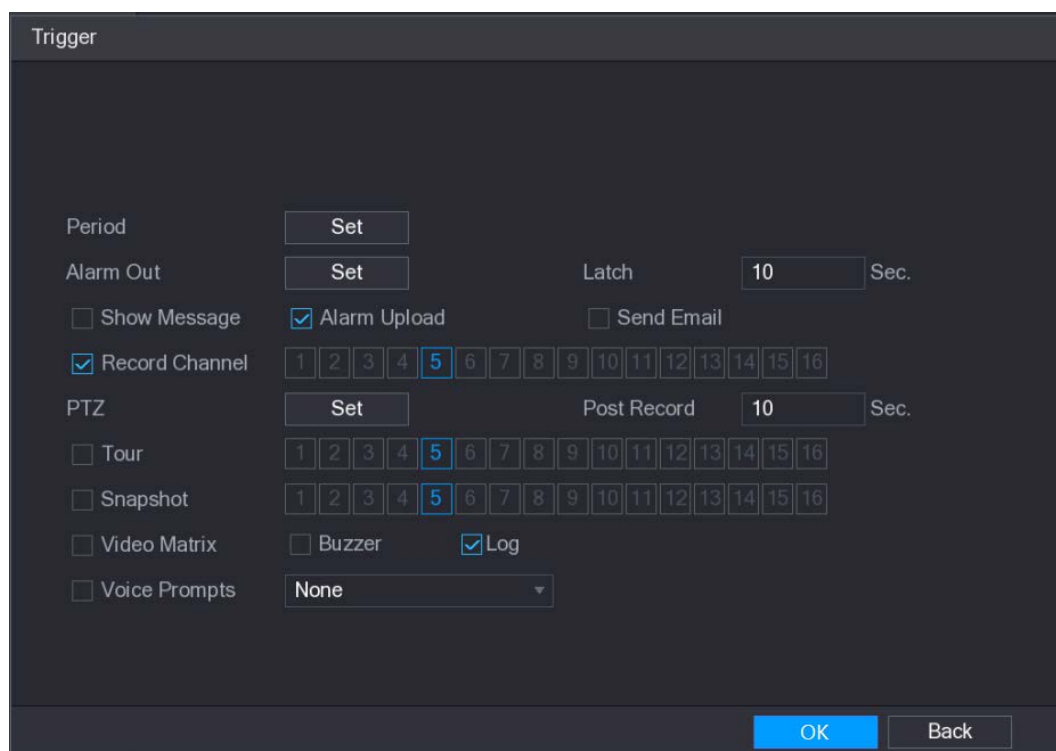
Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Direction	Set the direction of the tripwire. You can choose <b>A to B</b> (left to right), <b>B to A</b> (right to left), and <b>Both</b> .
Filtering Target	<p>Click  to draw areas to filter the target.</p> <p></p> <p>You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.</p>

- 4) Drag to draw a tripwire. The tripwire can be a straight line, broken line or polygon.
- 5) Click **Save** to save the settings.

**Step 3** Click  to set the actions to be triggered.

The **Trigger** interface is displayed.







Figure 5-119 Trigger



**Step 4** Configure the triggering parameters.

Table 5-39 Trigger parameters

Parameter	Description
Period	Click <b>Set</b> to display set interface. Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
Alarm Out	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.
Alarm Upload	Select the <b>Alarm Upload</b> check box to enable the system to upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.

Parameter	Description
	 To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b> .
Record Channel	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.  The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
PTZ	Click <b>Set</b> to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.  Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.  To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR</b> .
Snapshot	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.  To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot</b>.</li> <li>Select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; Snapshot</b>, in the <b>Mode</b> list, select <b>Event</b>.</li> </ul>
Video Matrix	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in " <b>Main Menu &gt; Display &gt; Tour</b> ."  Not all models support this function.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a motion detection event.

**Step 5** Click **Apply** to save the settings.

The **INTELL SETTING** interface is displayed.

**Step 6** Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The tripwire detecting function is active. When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

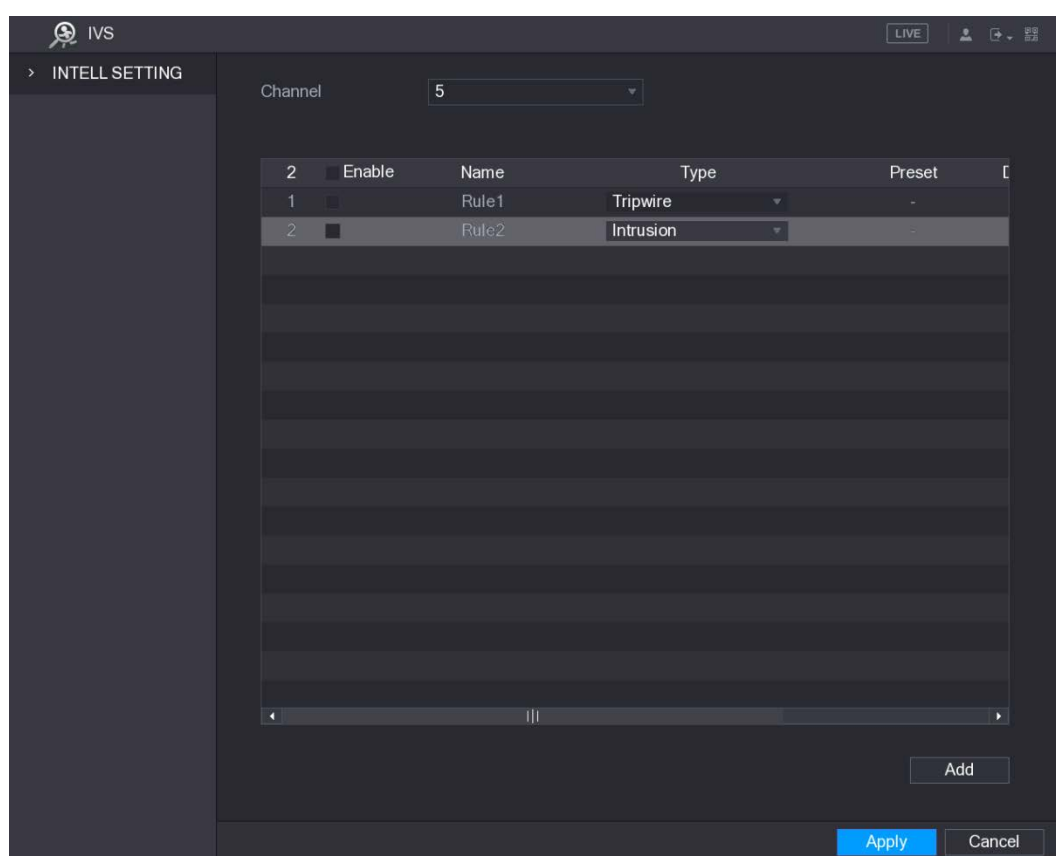
## 5.10.2.2 Configuring Intrusion Rules

When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that enter and leave the intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that are moving in the intrusion areas. The quantity of areas and lasting time can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

**Step 1** On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Intrusion**.

Figure 5-120 Intrusion



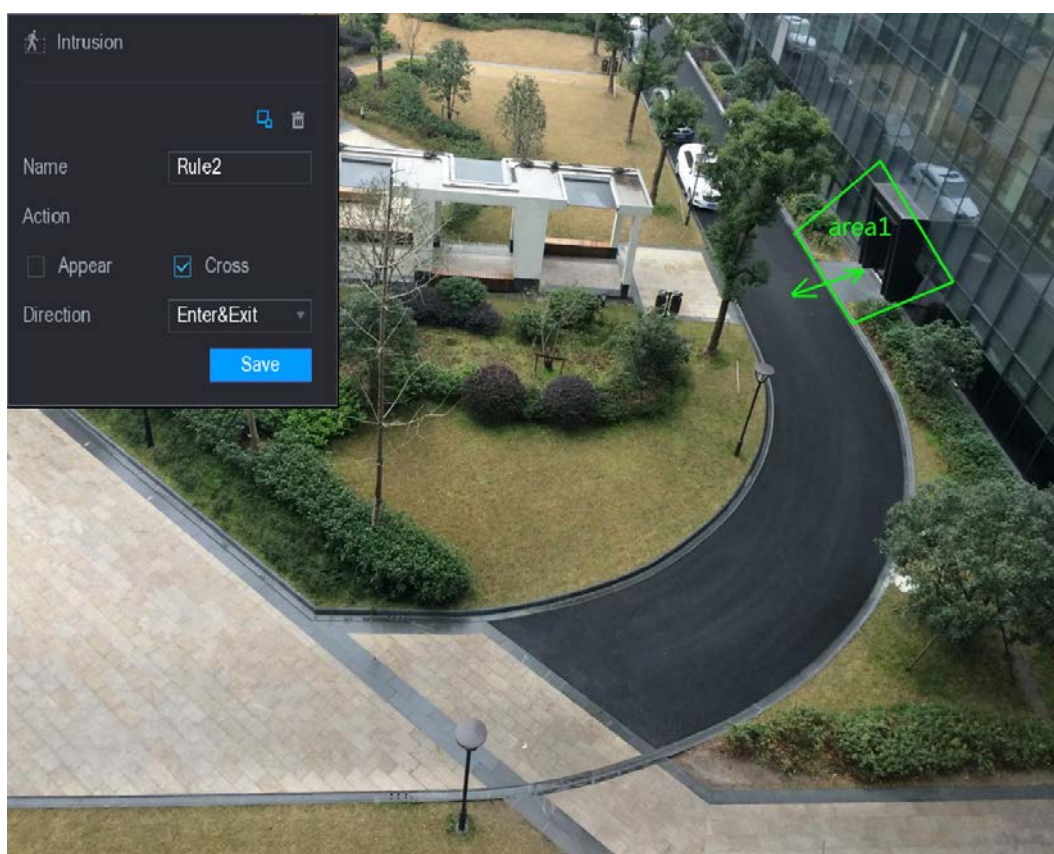
**Step 2** Draw a tripwire.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.

- 2) Click .



The monitoring screen to configure the intrusion rules is displayed.

Figure 5-121 Intrusion rule




3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

Table 5-40 Rule parameters

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Action	Configure the actions that are defined as intrusion. You can select the <b>Appear</b> check box and the <b>Cross</b> check box.
Direction	In the <b>Direction</b> list, select the direction of crossing the configured area. You can select <b>Enter&amp;Exit</b> , <b>Enters</b> , and <b>Exits</b> .
Filtering Target	<p>Click  to draw areas to filter the target.</p> <p></p> <p>You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.</p>

4) Drag to draw an area.

5) Click **Save** to save the settings.

**Step 3** Click  to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.10.2.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."

**Step 4** Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The intrusion detecting function is active. When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

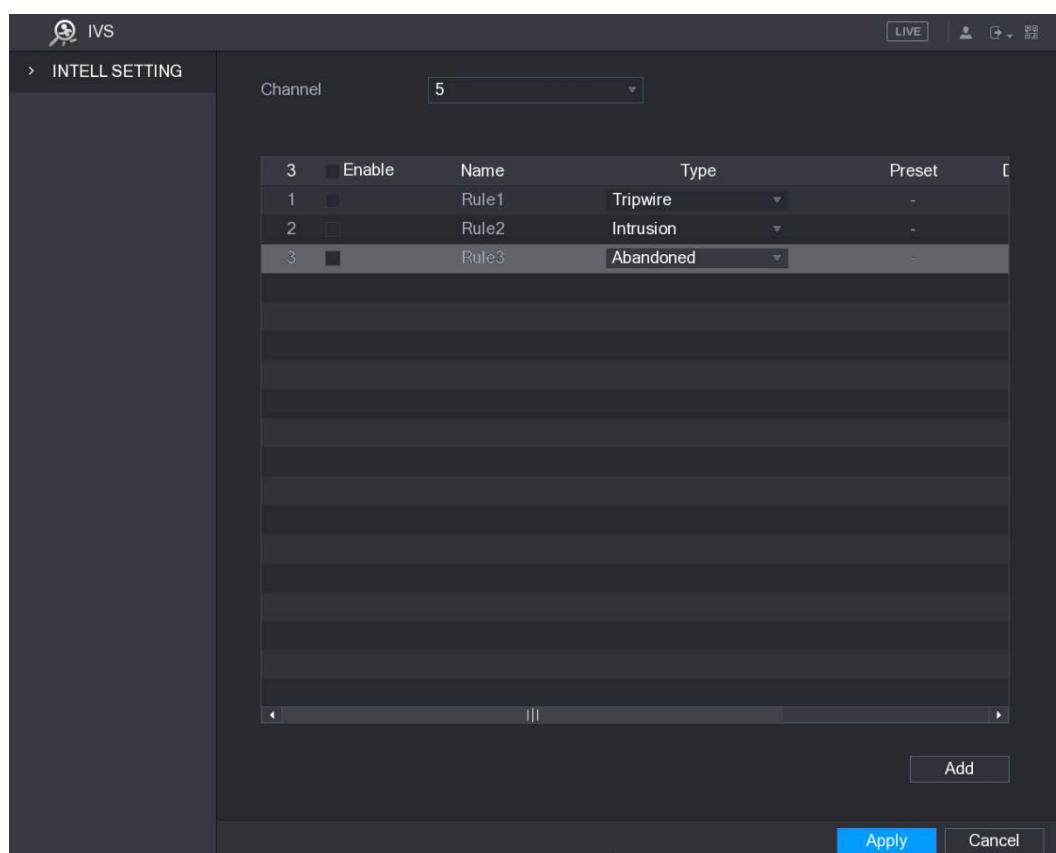
### 5.10.2.3 Configuring Abandoned Rules

When the object is placed in the defined detection area for more than the set time, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Period value can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

**Step 1** On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Abandoned**.

Figure 5-122 Abandoned



**Step 2** Draw an area.

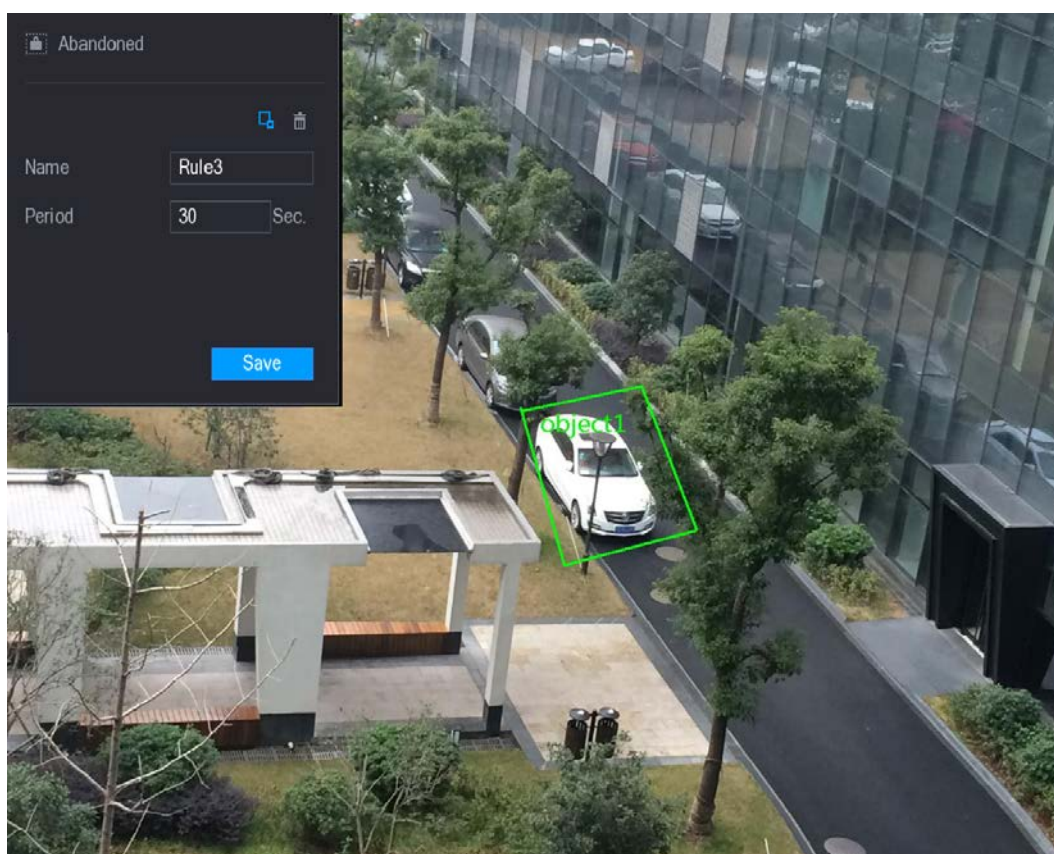
- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.

- 2) Click .

The monitoring screen to configure the abandoned rules is displayed.





Figure 5-123 Abandoned rule




- 3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

Table 5-41 Rule parameters

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Period	Configure the minimum time period for activating alarms by detecting the abandoned objects.
Filtering Target	<p>Click  to draw areas to filter the target.</p> <p> You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.</p>

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **Save** to save the settings.

**Step 3** Click  to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.10.2.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."

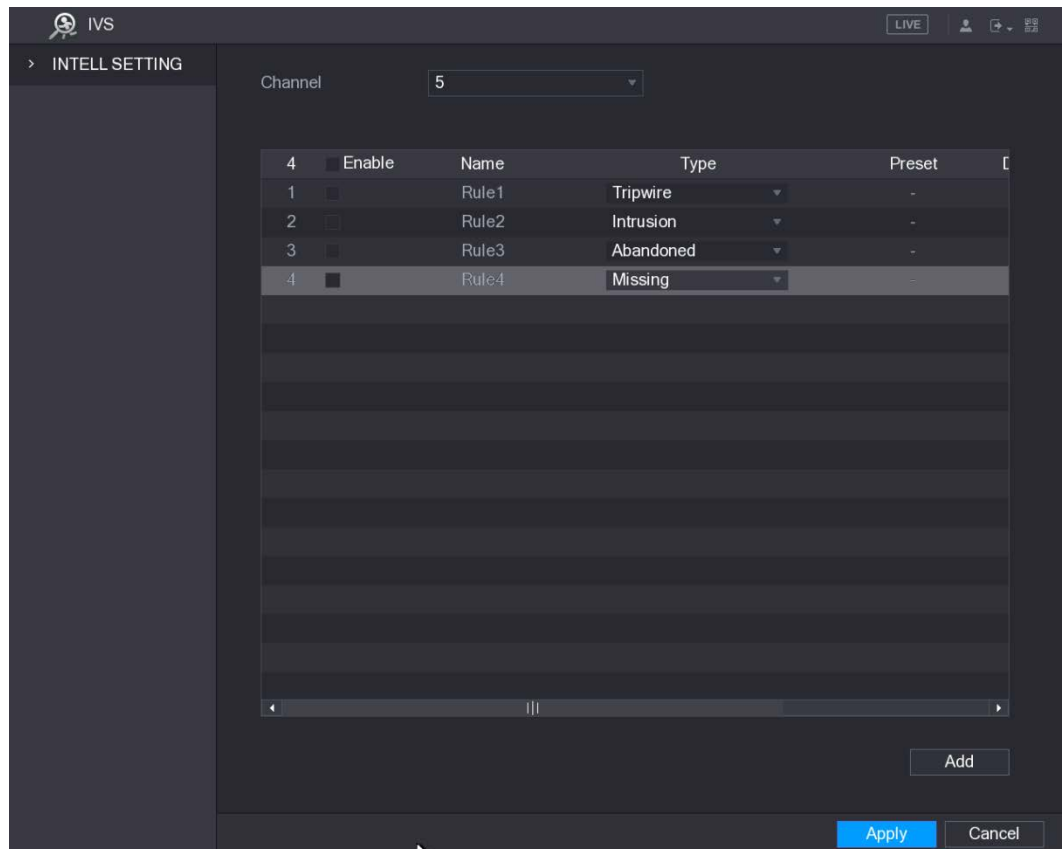
**Step 4** Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.  
The abandoned object detecting function is active. When the object is placed in the defined detection area for more than the set time, the system activates alarms.

## 5.10.2.4 Configuring Missing Rules

When the target is taken away from the defined area exceeds the set time, the system activates alarms.

**Step 1** On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Missing**.

Figure 5-124 Missing



**Step 2** Draw an area.

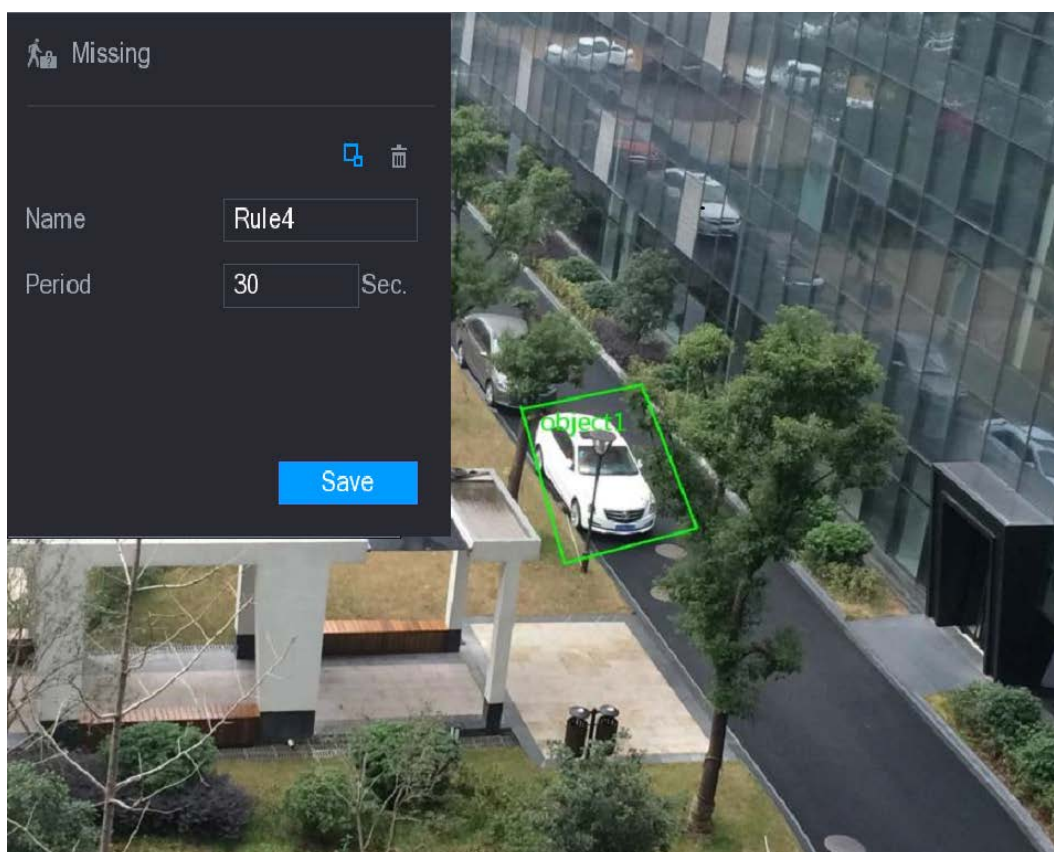
1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.

2) Click .

The monitoring screen to configure the missing rules is displayed.





Figure 5-125 Missing rule




- 3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

Table 5-42 Rule parameters

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Period	Configure the minimum time period for activating alarms by detecting the missing objects.
Filtering Target	<p>Click  to draw areas to filter the target.</p> <p> You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.</p>

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **Save** to save the settings.

**Step 3** Click  to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see "5.10.2.1 Configuring Tripwire Rules."

**Step 4** Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.  
The missing object detecting function is active. When the target is taken away from the defined area exceeds the set time, the system activates alarms.

## 5.10.3 Face Detection

You can configure the face detection settings and search the detected faces in the defined time period.

### 5.10.3.1 Configuring Face Detection Settings

When the Device detects the human faces, the system activates alarms.

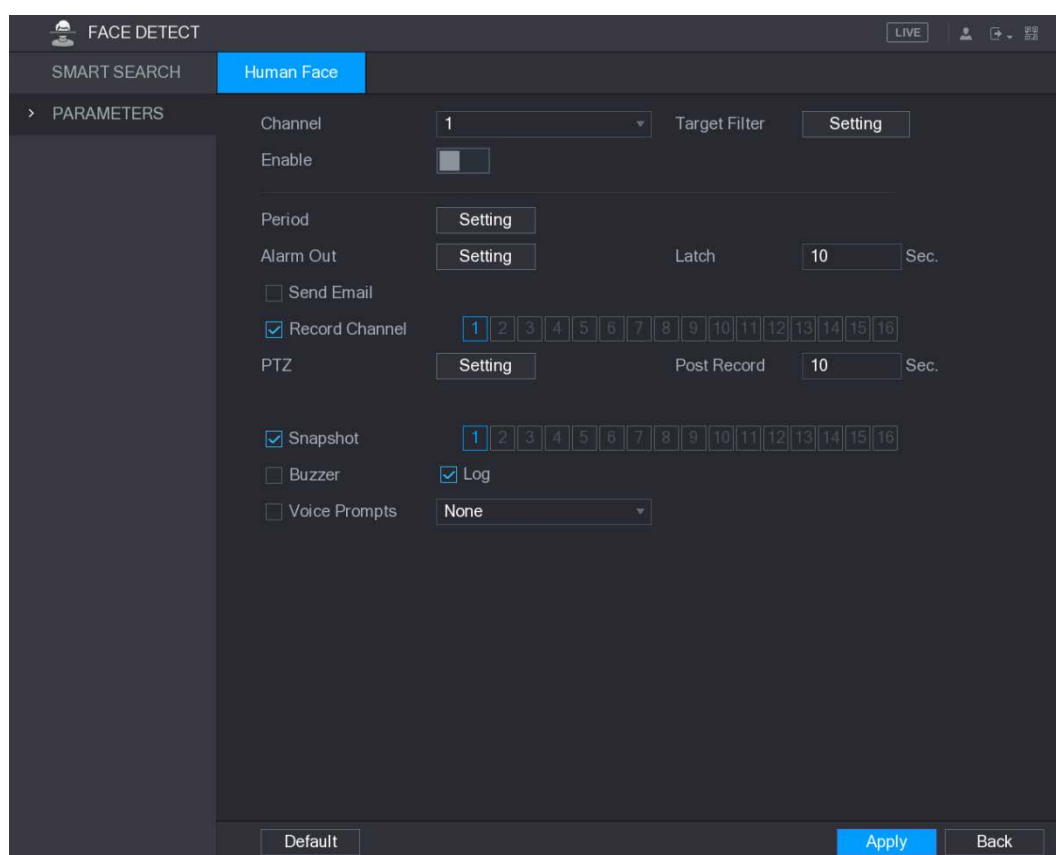


- Not all models support this function.
- Smart IPC must be equipped with face detect function.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > FACE DETECT > Parameters**.

The **Human Face** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-126 Human face








The screenshot shows the 'FACE DETECT' configuration window with the 'Human Face' tab selected. The 'Parameters' section is expanded, showing various settings for face detection. The 'Channel' is set to 1, 'Enable' is checked, 'Period' is set to 10 seconds, 'Alarm Out' is set to 10 seconds, 'Latch' is set to 10 seconds, 'Send Email' is unchecked, 'Record Channel' is checked, 'PTZ' is set to 10 seconds, 'Post Record' is set to 10 seconds, 'Snapshot' is checked, 'Buzzer' is unchecked, 'Log' is checked, and 'Voice Prompts' is set to None. The 'Apply' button is highlighted in blue.

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the face detection parameters.

Table 5-43 Face detection parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to set the face detection.

Parameter	Description
Target Filter	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to draw areas to filter the target.</p>  <p>You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.</p>
Enable	Enable or disable the face detection function.
Period	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.
Alarm Out	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.</p> <p>Enable alarm activation function. Select the alarm output port(s) to which the peripheral alarm devices are connected. When an alarm event occurs, the system activates the peripheral alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</p>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Send Email	<p>Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</p>  <p>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b>.</p>
Record Channel	<p>Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.</p>  <p>The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."</p>
PTZ	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.</p> <p>Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.</p>  <p>Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.</p>
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.

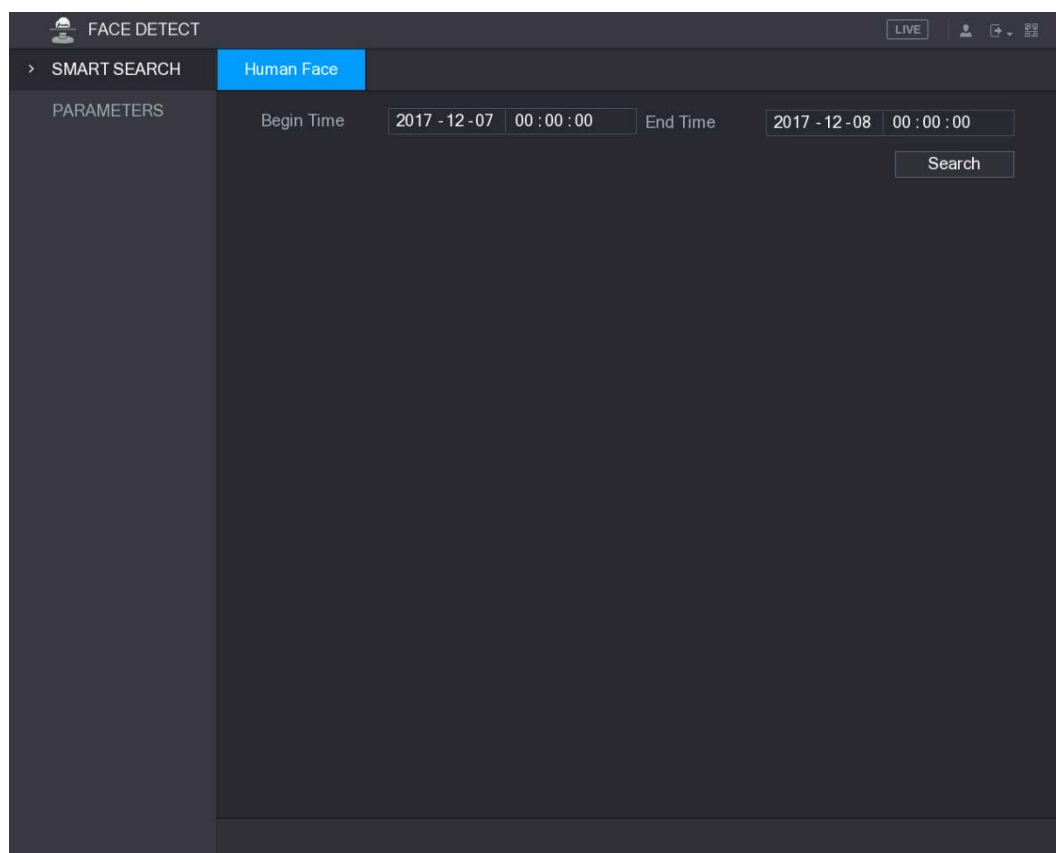
Parameter	Description
Snapshot	<p>Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.</p>  <p>To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot</b>.</li> <li>Select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt; Snapshot</b>, in the <b>Mode</b> list, select <b>Event</b>.</li> </ul>
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a human face detection event.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.10.3.2 Searching for Detected Faces

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > FACE DETECT > SMART SEARCH**.

Figure 5-127 Smart search

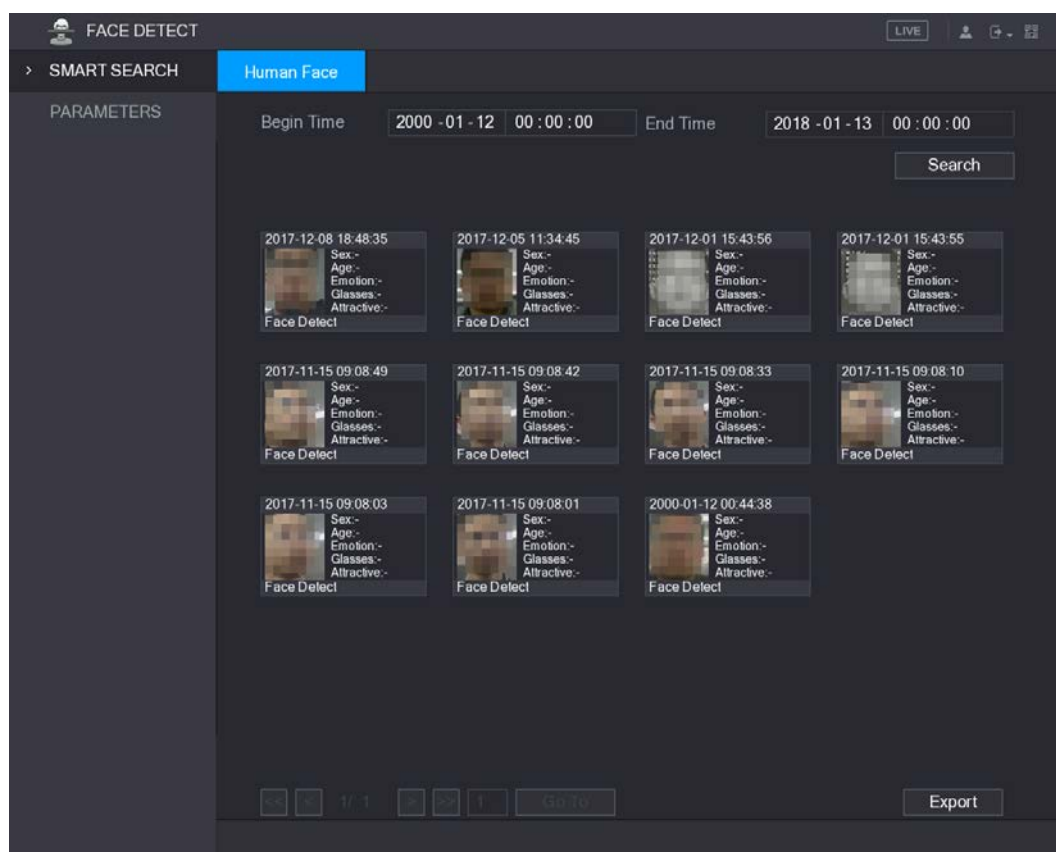


**Step 2** In the **Begin Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time.

**Step 3** Click **Search**.

The faces searched in the defined period display.

Figure 5-128 Search results



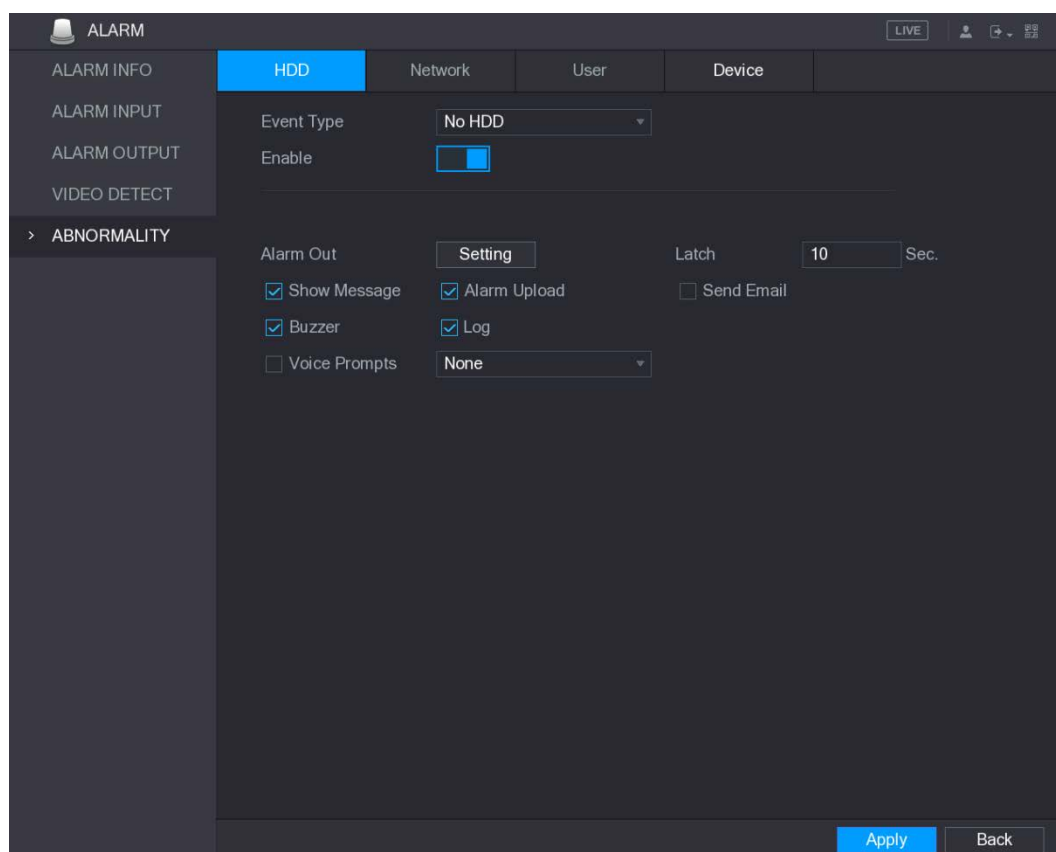
## 5.10.4 System Events

You can configure the alarm output for three types of system event (HDD, Network, and User). When there is an abnormal system event occurs, the system activates alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

### 5.10.4.1 Configuring HDD Event Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > HDD**.

Figure 5-129 HDD interface



The screenshot shows the 'HDD' tab selected in the 'ALARM' settings. The left sidebar lists 'ALARM INFO', 'ALARM INPUT', 'ALARM OUTPUT', 'VIDEO DETECT', and 'ABNORMALITY'. The main area displays the following settings:


- Event Type:** No HDD (dropdown menu)
- Enable:** ☒ (toggle switch)
- Alarm Out:** Setting (button)
- Latch:** 10 (input field) Sec.
- Show Message:** ☒ (checkbox)
- Alarm Upload:** ☒ (checkbox)
- Send Email:** ☐ (checkbox)
- Buzzer:** ☒ (checkbox)
- Log:** ☒ (checkbox)
- Voice Prompts:** ☐ (checkbox)
- None:** (dropdown menu)

Buttons for 'Apply' and 'Back' are located at the bottom right of the interface.

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the HDD event.

Table 5-44 HDD event configuration

Parameter	Description
Event Type	In the <b>Event Type</b> list, select <b>No HDD</b> , <b>HDD Error</b> , or <b>HDD No Space</b> as the event type.
Enable	Enable or disable the HDD event detection function.
Alarm Out	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.
Alarm Upload	Select the <b>Alarm Upload</b> check box to enable the system to upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm event occurs.

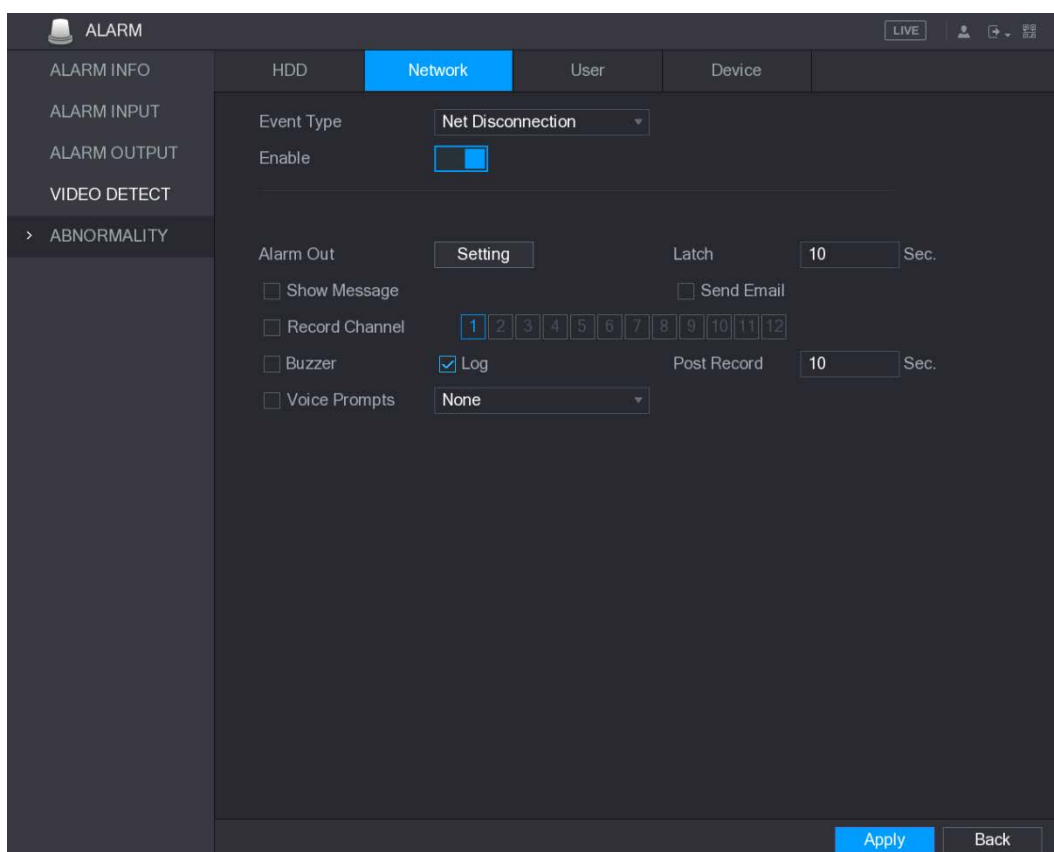
Parameter	Description
Send Email	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.  To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b> .
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a HDD alarm event.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.4.2 Configuring Network Event Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMALITY > Network**.


Figure 5-130 Network



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the Network event. See Step 3.

Table 5-45 Event parameters

Parameter	Description
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select Net Disconnection, IP Conflicted, or MAC Conflicted as the event type.
Enable	Enable or disable the Network event detection function.

Parameter	Description
Alarm Out	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.
Send Email	<p>Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</p>  <p>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b>.</p>
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a network alarm event.

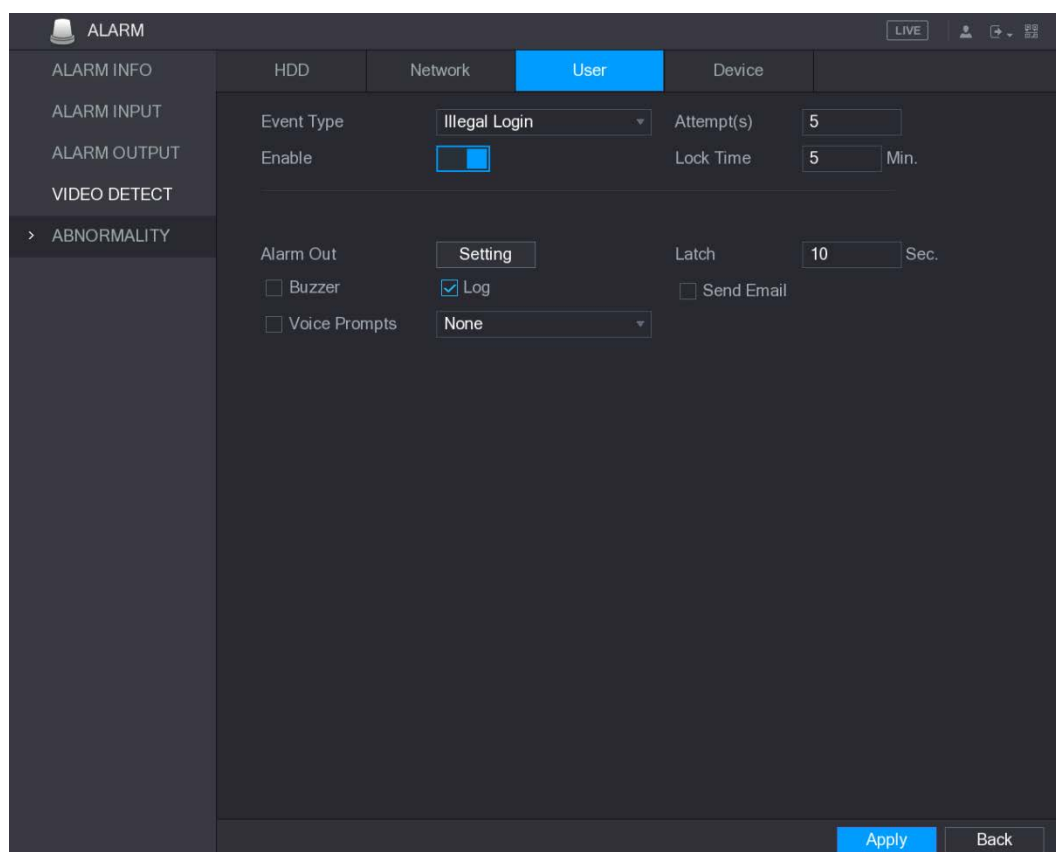
**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.10.4.3 Configuring User Event Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > User**.



Figure 5-131 User interface




The screenshot shows the 'ALARM' configuration page with the 'User' tab selected. The left sidebar lists 'ALARM INFO', 'ALARM INPUT', 'ALARM OUTPUT', 'VIDEO DETECT', and 'ABNORMALITY'. The main area contains settings for the 'User' event type, which is set to 'Illegal Login'. The 'Enable' checkbox is checked. The 'Attempt(s)' field is set to 5, and the 'Lock Time' is set to 5 minutes. Under the 'Alarm Out' section, the 'Setting' button is visible, and the 'Log' checkbox is checked. The 'Latch' field is set to 10 seconds. At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Back' buttons.

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the User event.

Table 5-46 Event configuration

Parameter	Description
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select Illegal Login.
Enable	Enable the user error detection function. If you do not enable this function, there will be no limit for wrong password entry and the account cannot be locked because of the wrong password.
Attempt(s)	Set the maximum number of allowable wrong password entries. The account will be locked after your entries exceed the maximum number.
Lock Time	Set how long the account is locked for. The value ranges from 1 minute to 60 minutes.
Alarm Out	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.

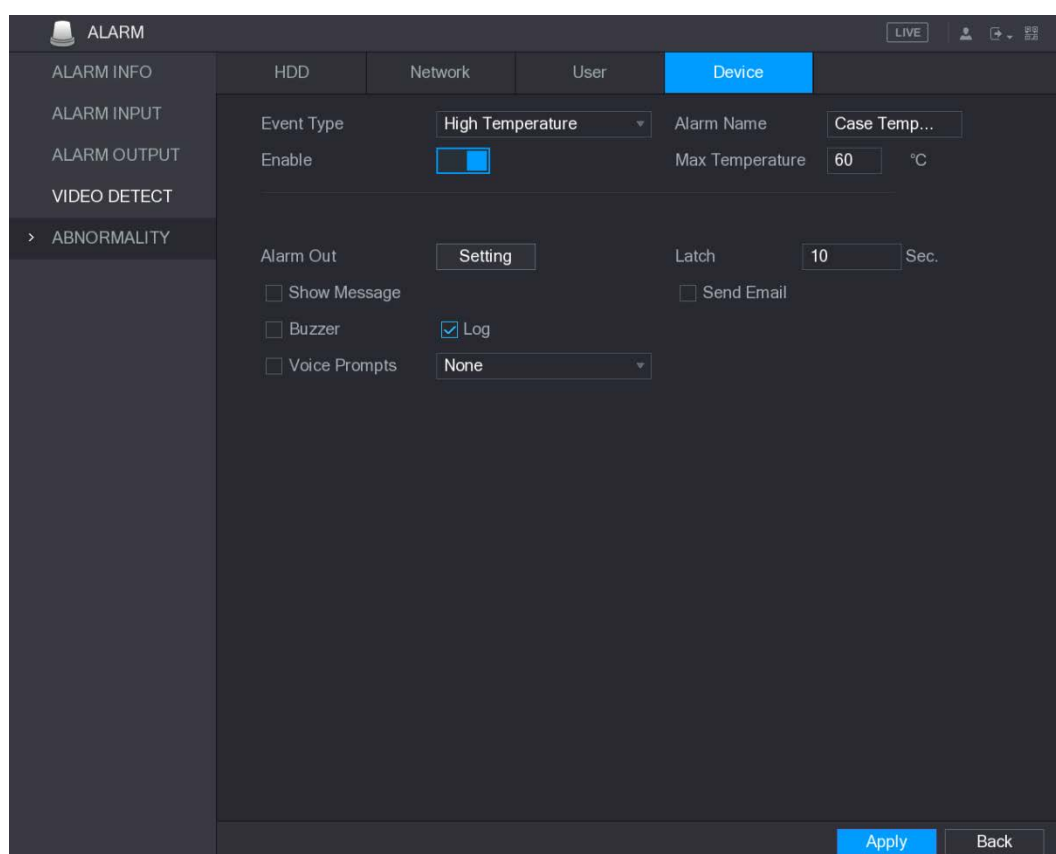
Parameter	Description
Send Email	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.  To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b> .
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a user account alarm event.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.4.4 Configuring Device Event Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ABNORMITY > Device**.


Figure 5-132 Device



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the device event.

Table 5-47 Event settings

Parameter	Description
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select High Temperature or Fan Speed Abnormal.
Alarm Name	Enter the name for the event type.
Enable	Enable the device event detection function.

Parameter	Description
Max Temperature	In the <b>Max Temperature</b> box, enter the max temperature value.
Alarm Out	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Send Email	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.  To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b> .
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a Device alarm event.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.5 Alarm Input Settings

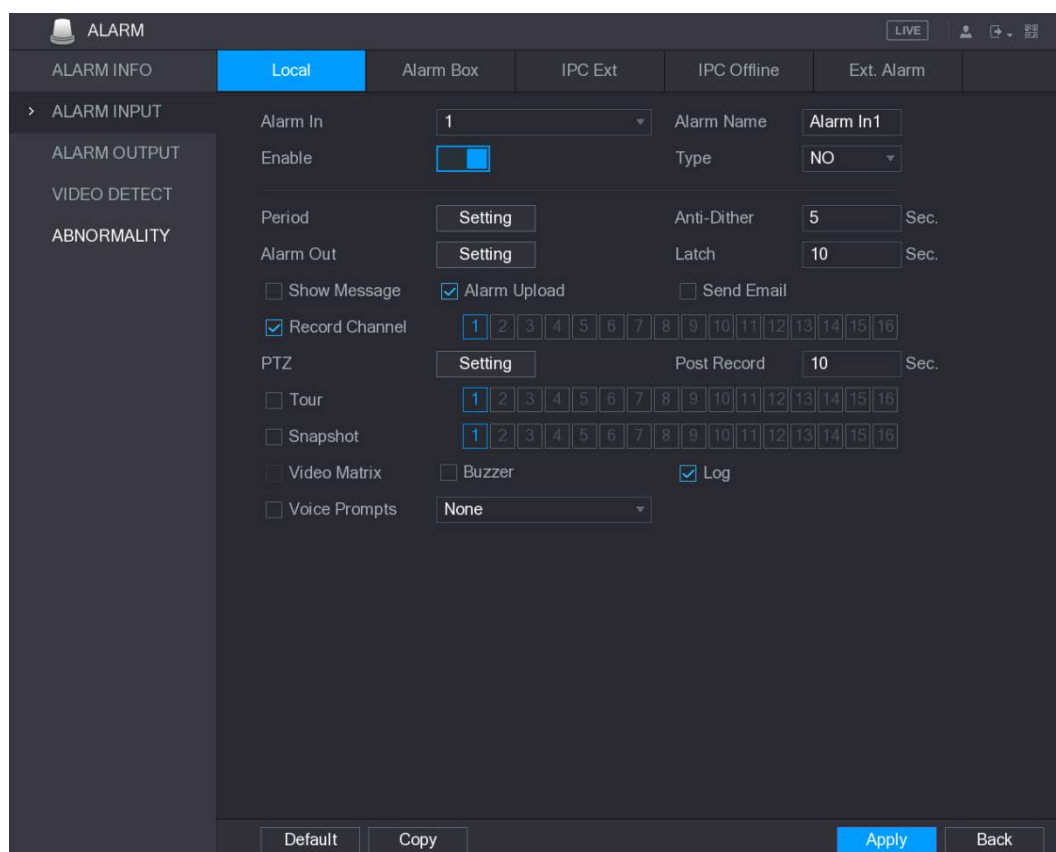
Connect the alarm input and output ports by referring to "4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output." You can configure the alarm settings for each channel individually or apply the settings to all channels and then save the settings.

### 5.10.5.1 Configuring Local Alarms

You can connect the alarm device to the alarm input port of the Device. When the alarm is activated on the alarm device, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the local alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Local**.






Figure 5-133 Local



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the local alarms.

Table 5-48 Alarm settings

Parameter	Description
Alarm In	Select the channel number.
Alarm Name	Enter the customized alarm name.
Enable	Enable or disable the local alarm function.
Type	In the <b>Type</b> list, select <b>NO</b> or select <b>NC</b> as the voltage output type.
Period	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 600 seconds.
Alarm Out	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.
Alarm Upload	Select the <b>Alarm Upload</b> check box to enable the system to upload the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	<p>Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</p> <p> To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b>.</p>
Record Channel	<p>Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.</p> <p> The recording for alarm and auto snapshot must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."</p>
PTZ	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.</p> <p>Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.</p>
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Tour	<p>Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.</p> <p> To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR</b>.</p>
Snapshot	<p>Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.</p> <p> To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot</b>.</li> <li>• Select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt; Snapshot</b>, in the <b>Mode</b> list, select <b>Event</b>.</li> </ul>
Video Matrix	<p>Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "<b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR</b>."</p> <p> Not all models support this function.</p>
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.

Parameter	Description
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local alarm event.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy**, in the **Copy** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the local alarm settings to, and then click **Apply**.

## 5.10.5.2 Configuring Alarms from Alarm Box

You can connect the alarm box to the RS485 port of the Device. When the alarm is detected by the alarm box, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Alarm Box**.

Figure 5-134 Alarm box

The screenshot shows the 'ALARM' configuration page with the 'Alarm Box' tab selected. The left sidebar lists 'ALARM INPUT', 'ALARM OUTPUT', 'VIDEO DETECT', and 'ABNORMALITY'. The main area contains the following settings:

- Alarm Box:** 4 (dropdown)
- Alarm In:** 1 (dropdown)
- Enable:** ☒
- Period:** Setting (button)
- Alarm Out:** Setting (button)
- Latch:** 10 Sec.
- Show Message:** ☐
- Send Email:** ☐
- Record Channel:** ☒ (1-16)
- PTZ:** Setting (button)
- Post Record:** 10 Sec.
- Tour:** ☐ (1-16)
- Snapshot:** ☐ (1-16)
- Video Matrix:** ☐
- Buzzer:** ☐
- Log:** ☒
- Voice Prompts:** None (dropdown)

At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Default', 'Apply', and 'Back'.

**Step 2** In the **Alarm Box** list, select the alarm box number corresponding to the address number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.

**Step 3** In the **Alarm In** list, select the alarm input port on the Alarm Box.

**Step 4** Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Step 3.

**Step 5** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

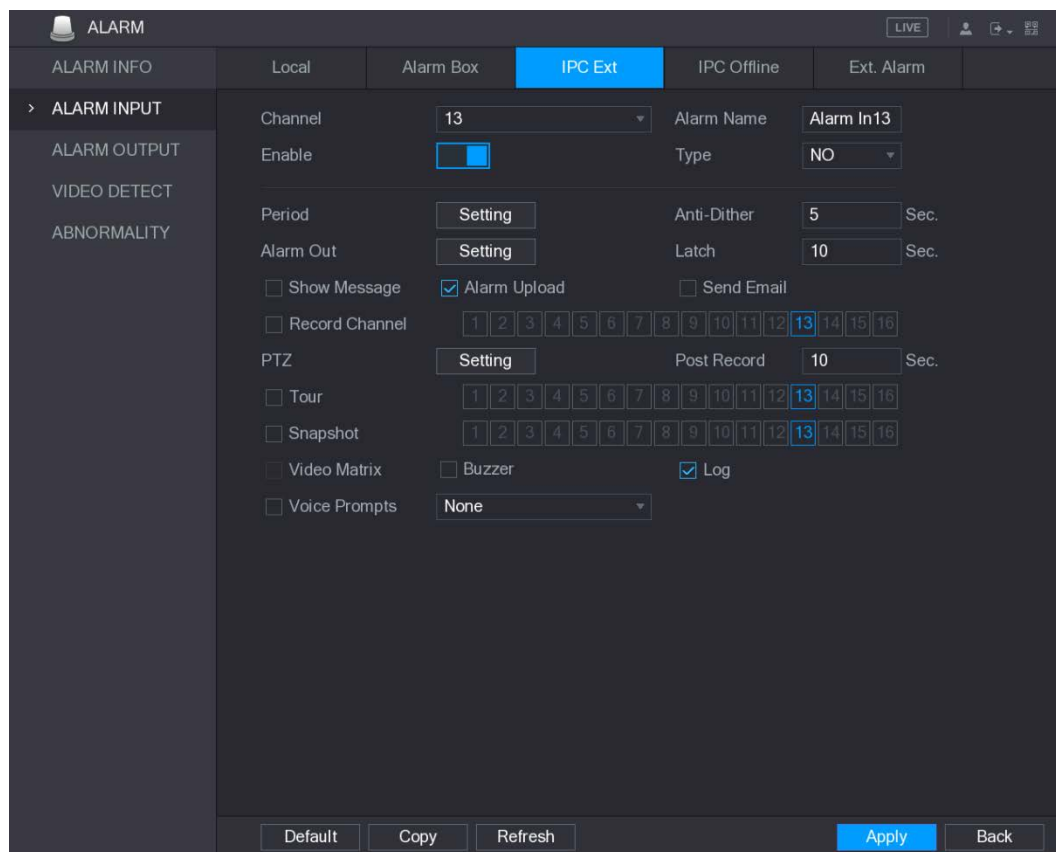


Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

### 5.10.5.3 Configuring Alarms from External IP Cameras

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Ext.**

Figure 5-135 IPC Ext



The screenshot shows the 'ALARM' configuration page with the 'IPC Ext' tab selected. The left sidebar contains 'ALARM INPUT', 'ALARM OUTPUT', 'VIDEO DETECT', and 'ABNORMALITY'. The main area displays settings for channel 13. The 'Channel' dropdown is set to 13, and the 'Alarm Name' is 'Alarm In13'. The 'Enable' checkbox is checked. The 'Type' is set to 'NO'. The 'Period' and 'Alarm Out' are both set to 'Setting'. The 'Anti-Dither' is set to 5 seconds, and the 'Latch' is set to 10 seconds. The 'Show Message' checkbox is unchecked, 'Alarm Upload' is checked, and 'Send Email' is unchecked. The 'Record Channel' section shows a grid of 16 channels, with channel 13 selected. The 'PTZ' section shows a grid of 16 channels, with channel 13 selected. The 'Post Record' is set to 10 seconds. The 'Tour' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Snapshot' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Video Matrix' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Buzzer' checkbox is unchecked. The 'Log' checkbox is checked. The 'Voice Prompts' dropdown is set to 'None'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Default', 'Copy', 'Refresh', 'Apply', and 'Back'.

**Step 2** Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



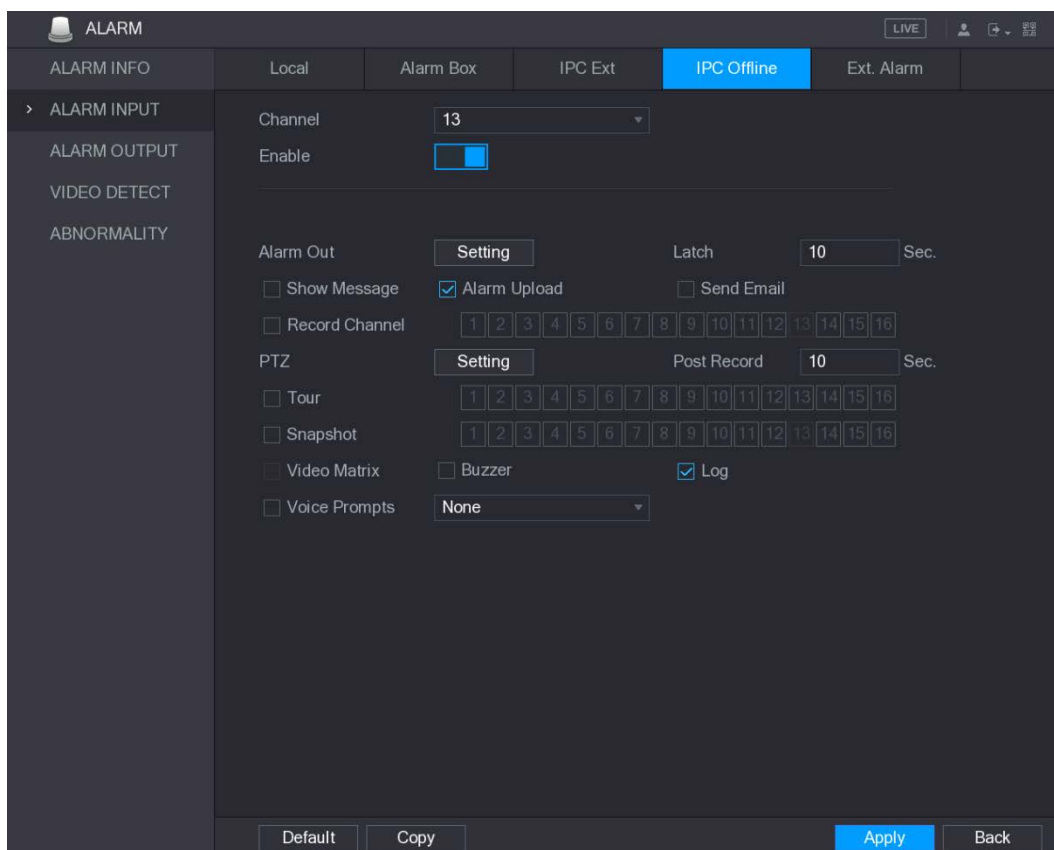
- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
- Click **Refresh** to refresh configured settings.

### 5.10.5.4 Configuring Alarms for IP Camera Offline

You can configure the alarm settings for the situation when the IP camera is offline.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > IPC Offline.**

Figure 5-136 IPC offline



The screenshot shows the 'ALARM' configuration window with the 'IPC Offline' tab selected. The left sidebar contains 'ALARM INFO', 'ALARM INPUT', 'ALARM OUTPUT', 'VIDEO DETECT', and 'ABNORMALITY'. The main area is divided into sections for 'Channel' (set to 13), 'Enable' (checked), 'Alarm Out' (with a 'Setting' button), 'Latch' (set to 10 Sec.), 'Show Message' (unchecked), 'Alarm Upload' (checked), 'Send Email' (unchecked), 'Record Channel' (with a 16-channel grid), 'PTZ' (with a 'Setting' button), 'Post Record' (set to 10 Sec.), 'Tour' (with a 16-channel grid), 'Snapshot' (with a 16-channel grid), 'Video Matrix' (unchecked), 'Buzzer' (unchecked), 'Log' (checked), and 'Voice Prompts' (set to None). At the bottom are 'Default', 'Copy', 'Apply', and 'Back' buttons.

**Step 2** Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



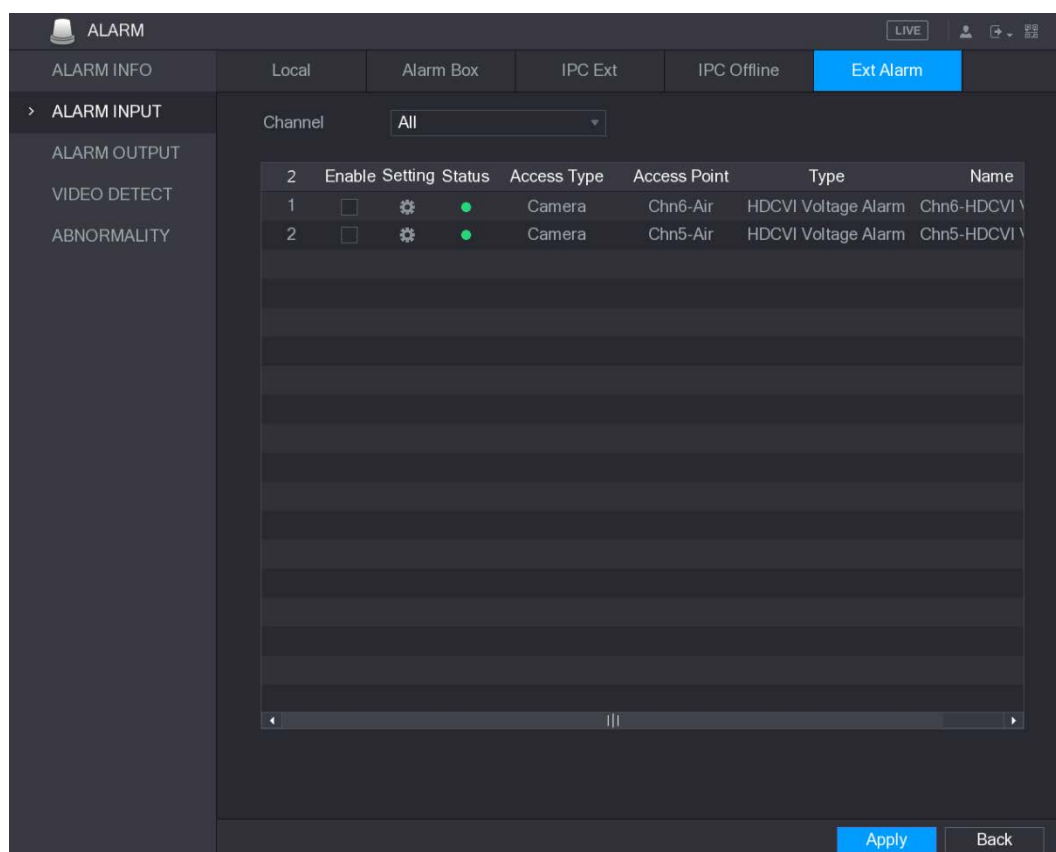
- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

### 5.10.5.5 Configuring Alarms from External Devices

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > ALARM INPUT > Ext. Alarm**.



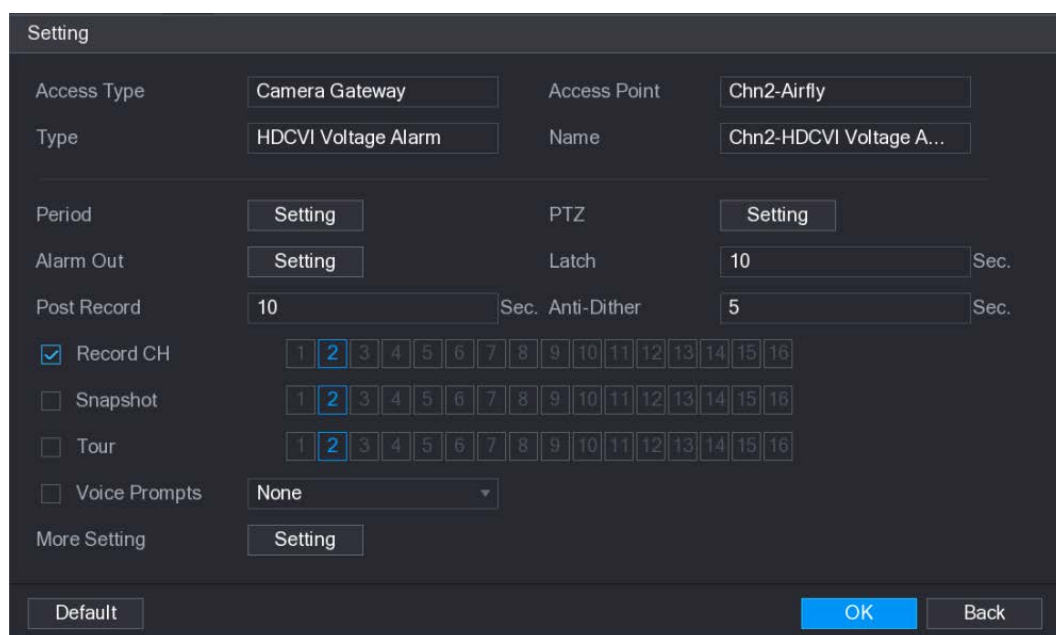
Figure 5-137 Ext alarm



**Step 2** In the **Channel** list, select a channel or **all**.

**Step 3** Click .

Figure 5-138 Setting



**Step 4** Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Step 3.

**Step 5** Click **OK** to complete the settings.

## 5.10.6 Alarm Output Settings

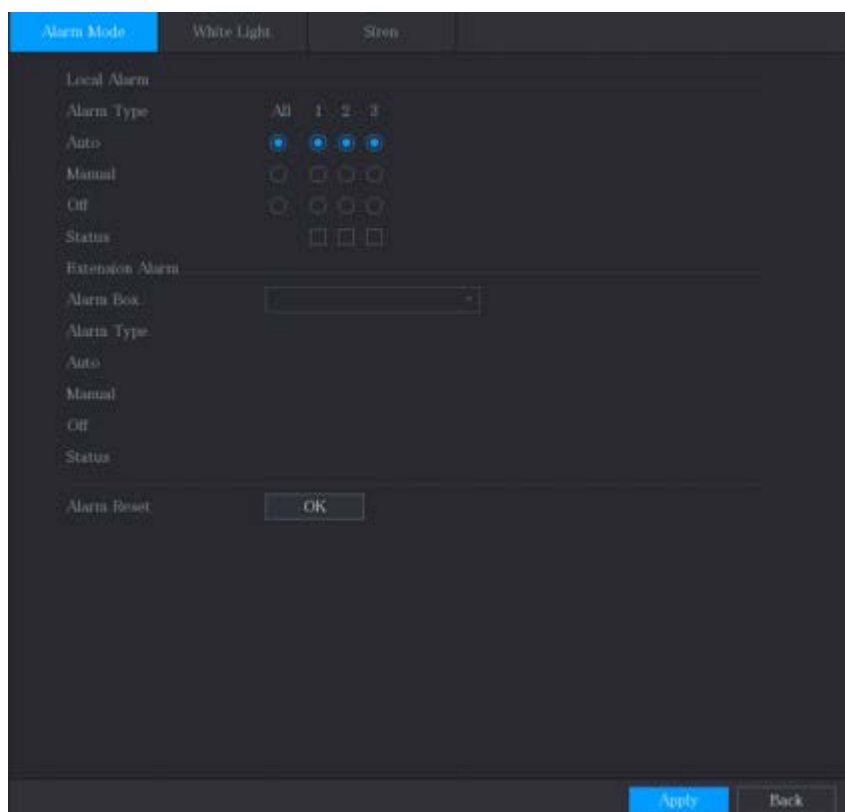
### 5.10.6.1 Configuring Alarm Output

When the Device activates alarms, the connected alarm device generates alarms in the way that you can configure in this section. You can connect to the output port of the Device or connect wirelessly.

- **Auto:** When an alarm event is triggered on the Device, the connected alarm device generates alarms.
- **Manual:** The alarm device is forced to keep generating alarms.
- **Stop:** The alarm output function is not enabled.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-out Port > Alarm Mode**.

Figure 5-139 Alarm mode



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the alarm output.

Table 5-49 Alarm output parameters

Parameter		Description
Local Alarm	Alarm Type	Select alarm type for each alarm output port.
	Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.
Extension Alarm	Alarm Box	Select the alarm box number corresponding to the address number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.
	Alarm Type	Select the alarm type for each alarm output ports.
	Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.
Alarm Reset		Click <b>OK</b> to clear all alarm output status.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.

## 5.10.6.2 Configuring White Light

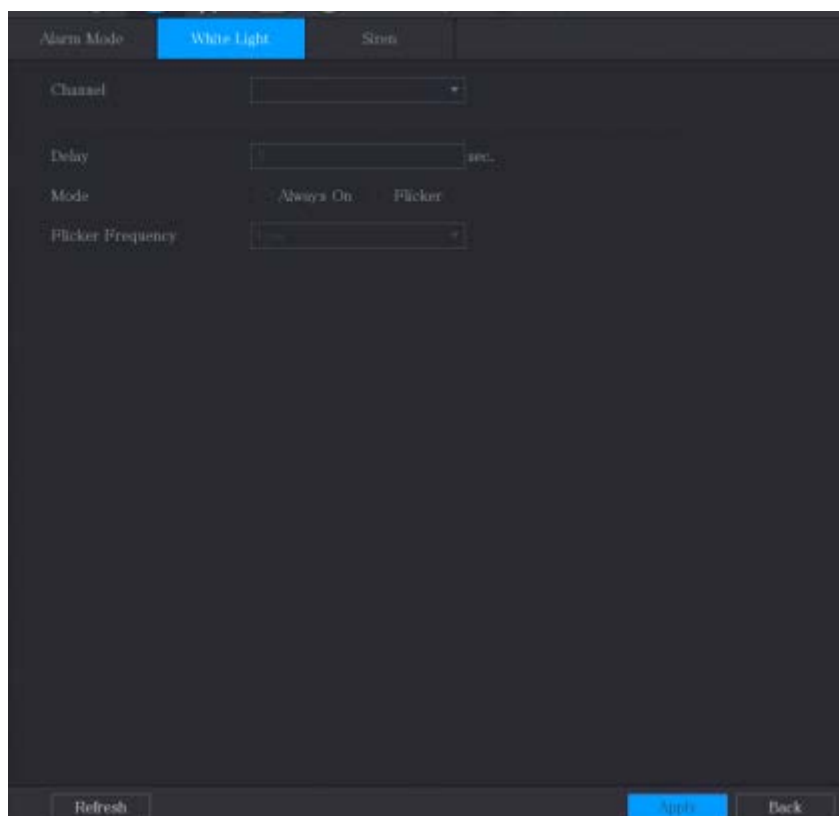
When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate white light alarm.



To use this function, connect at least one white light camera to your Device.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-out Port > White Light**.

Figure 5-140 White light



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the white light parameters.

Table 5-50 White light parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel that is connected to a white light camera.
Delay	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30 seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.
Mode	Set the alarm mode of white light to be <b>Always on</b> or <b>Flicker</b> .
Flicker Frequency	When setting the alarm mode of white light to be <b>Flash</b> , you can select the flash frequency from <b>Low</b> , <b>Middle</b> , and <b>High</b> .

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.10.6.3 Configuring Siren

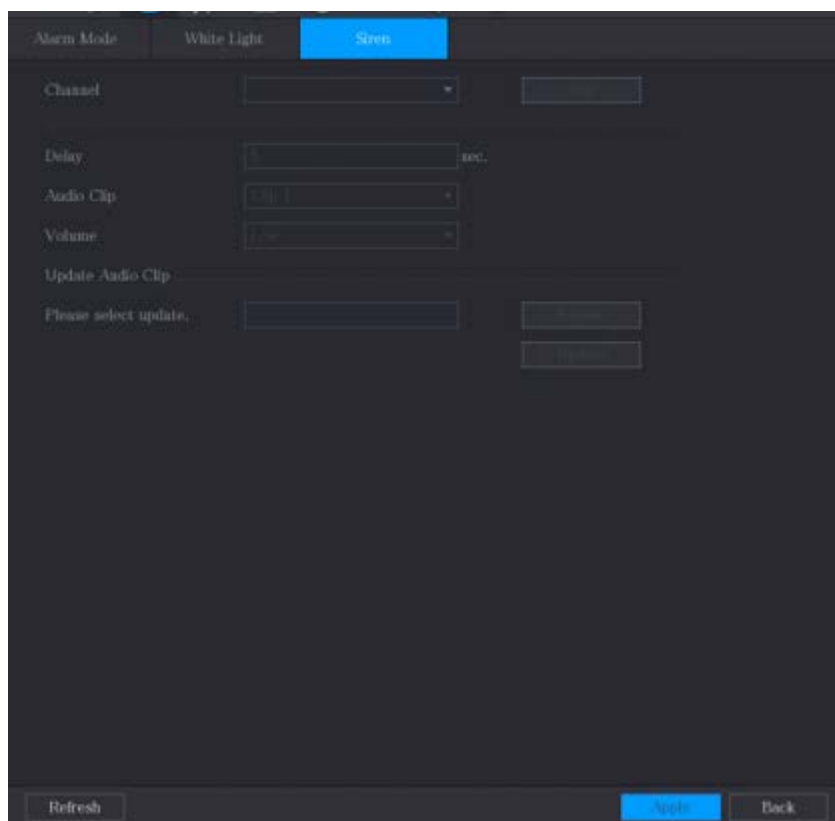
When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate sound alarm.



To use this function, connect at least one camera that supports audio function.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-out Port > Siren**.

Figure 5-141 Siren



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the siren parameters.

Table 5-51 Siren parameters

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel that is connected to a camera that supports audio function.
Play	Click <b>Play</b> to manually trigger the IP camera to play audio file.
Delay	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30 seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.
Audio Clip	Select the audio clip for the siren sound. The default setting is <b>Clip 1</b> .
Volume	Select the volume for the audio clip. You can select the flash frequency from <b>Low</b> , <b>Middle</b> , and <b>High</b> .
Update Audio Clip	Import the upgrade audio file (.bin) to upgrade the alarm audio file of the camera.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## Upgrade Audio File of Camera



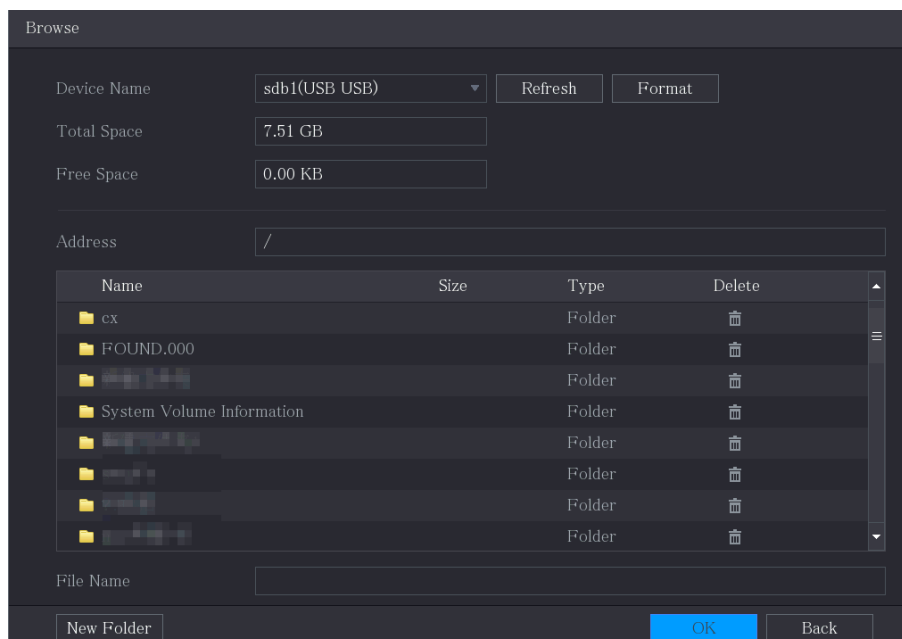
This function is supported only on the local interface.

**Step 1** Prepare a USB device or other external storage device and plug it into the Device.

**Step 2** Click **Browse**.

The **Browse** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-142 Browse



**Step 3** Select the upgrade audio file (.bin).

**Step 4** Click **OK** to return to the Siren interface.

**Step 5** Click **Upgrade** to upgrade the alarm audio file of the camera.

## 5.11 IoT Function

### 5.11.1 Configuring Sensor Settings

You can connect external sensors wirelessly through the Device with USB gateway or through connecting to a camera gateway. After connection, you can activate alarm events through external sensors.

#### 5.11.1.1 Connecting Sensor through Device

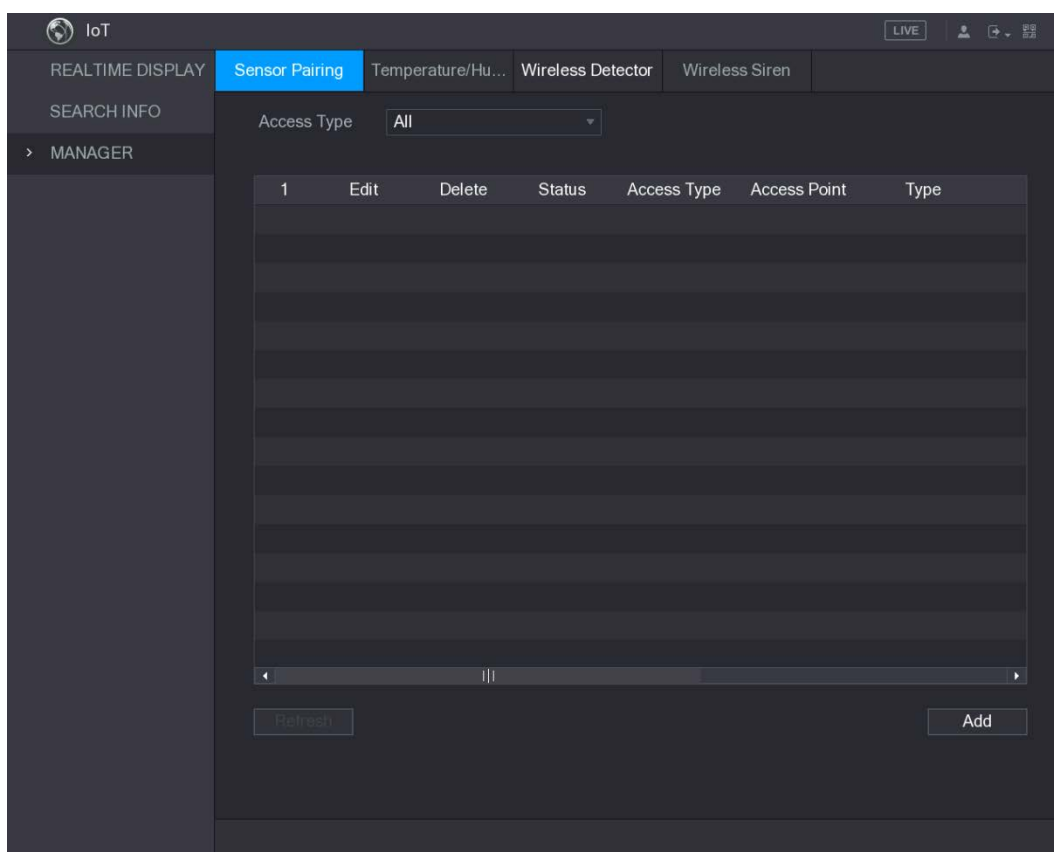


Only the Device with USB gateway supports this function.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing**.

The **Sensor Pairing** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-143 IoT



**Step 2** In the **Access Type** list, select **USB Gateway**.

**Step 3** Click **Add**.

Figure 5-144 Add

Add

Access Type

USB Gateway

Add Way

Pair

Pair

Access Point

USB Gateway-1

Serial No.

Name

Type

Class

Status

--

Back

**Step 4** Click **Pair**.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor.



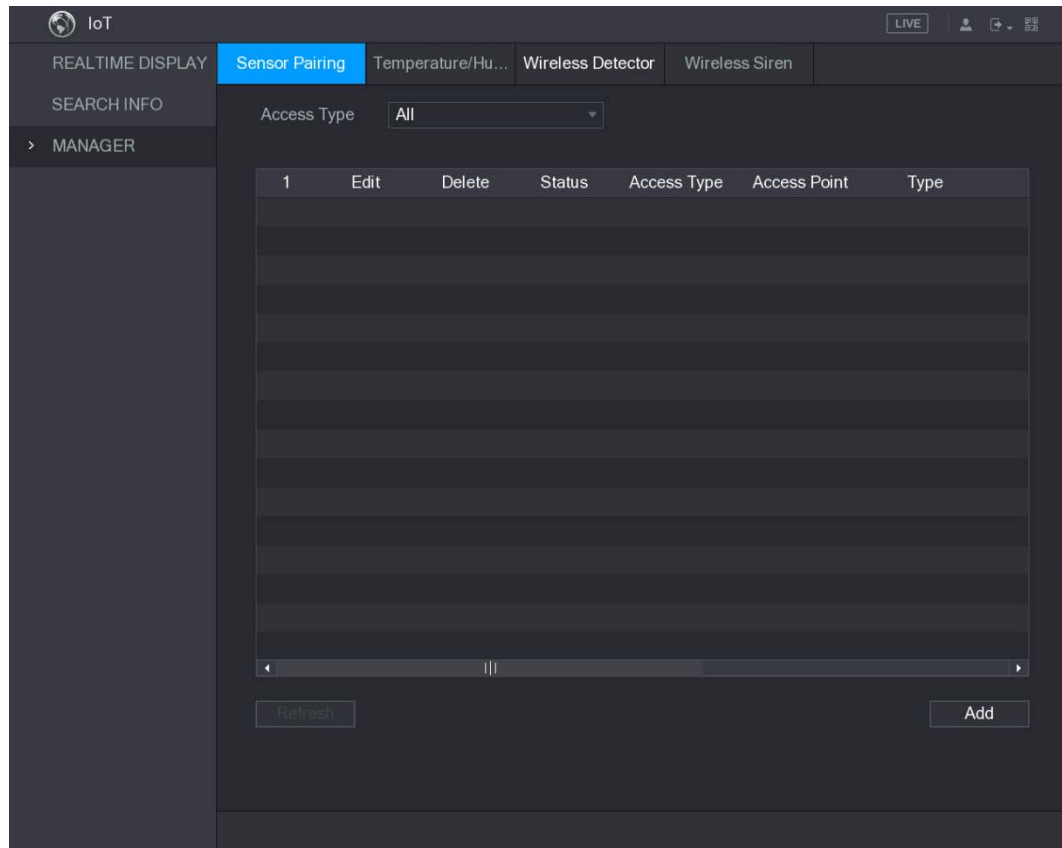
### 5.11.1.2 Connecting Sensor through Camera with Gateway



Only the camera with gateway supports this function.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Sensor Pairing**.

Figure 5-147 Sensor pairing



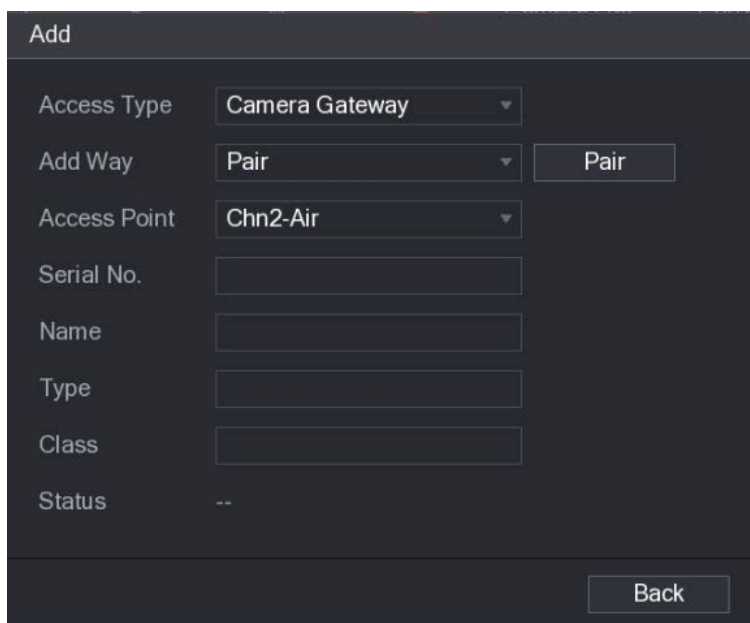
**Step 2** In the **Access Type** list, select **Camera Gateway**.

**Step 3** In the **Channel** list, select the channel that is connected to the camera.

**Step 4** Click **Add**.



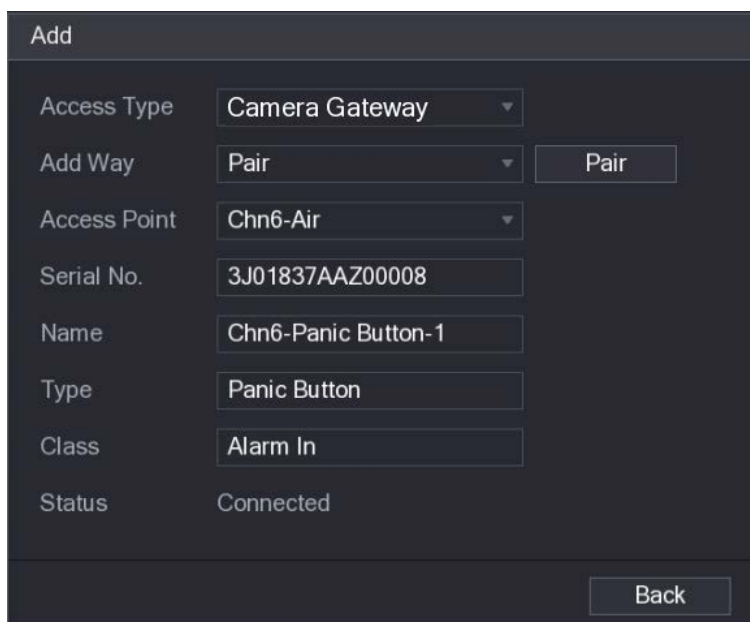
Figure 5-148 Add



**Step 5** Click **Pair**.

The Device starts pairing with the sensor.

Figure 5-149 Pairing completed



**Step 6** Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed.





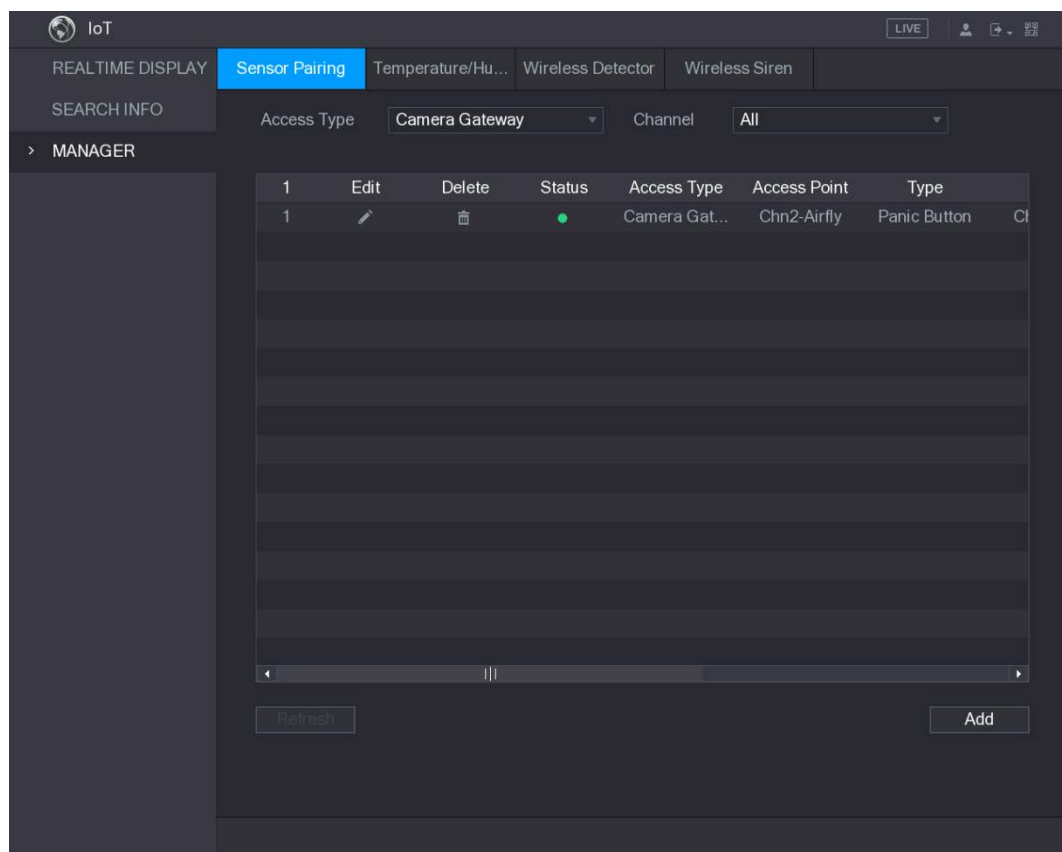
Click  to modify the sensor name; click  to delete sensor information.

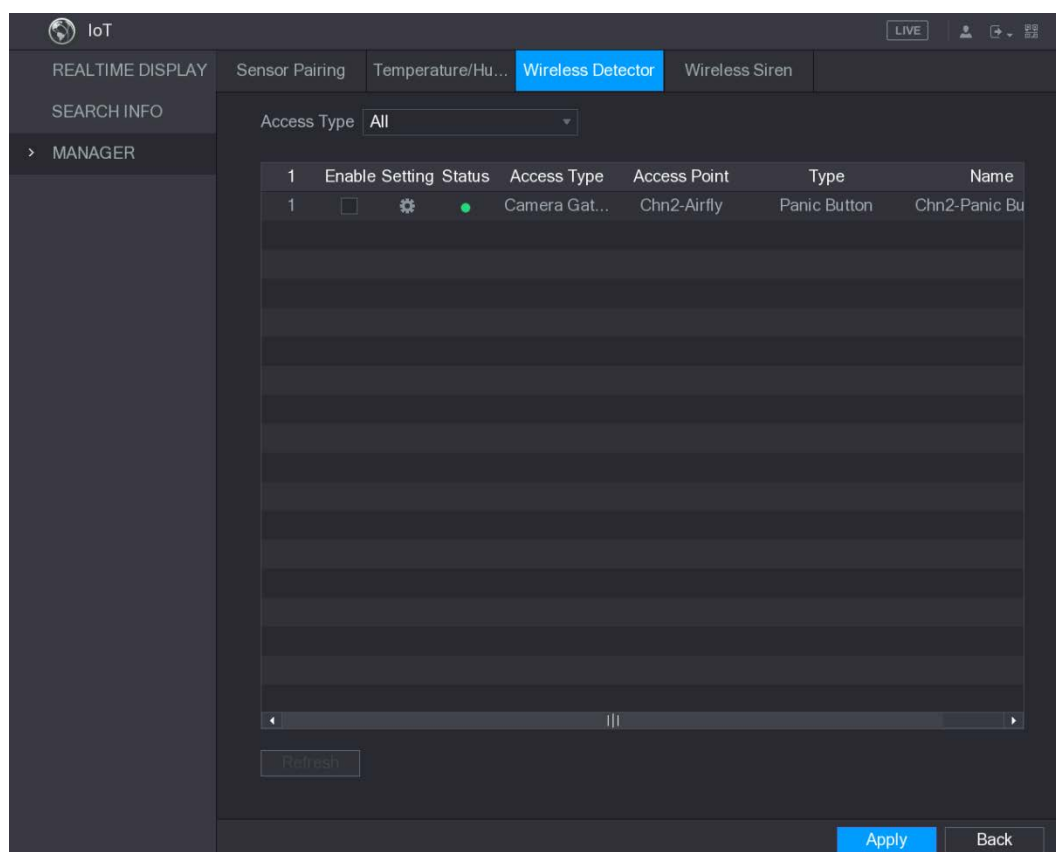
Figure 5-150 Added sensor



### 5.11.1.3 Configuring Alarm Linkage

**Step 1** Select Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Detector.

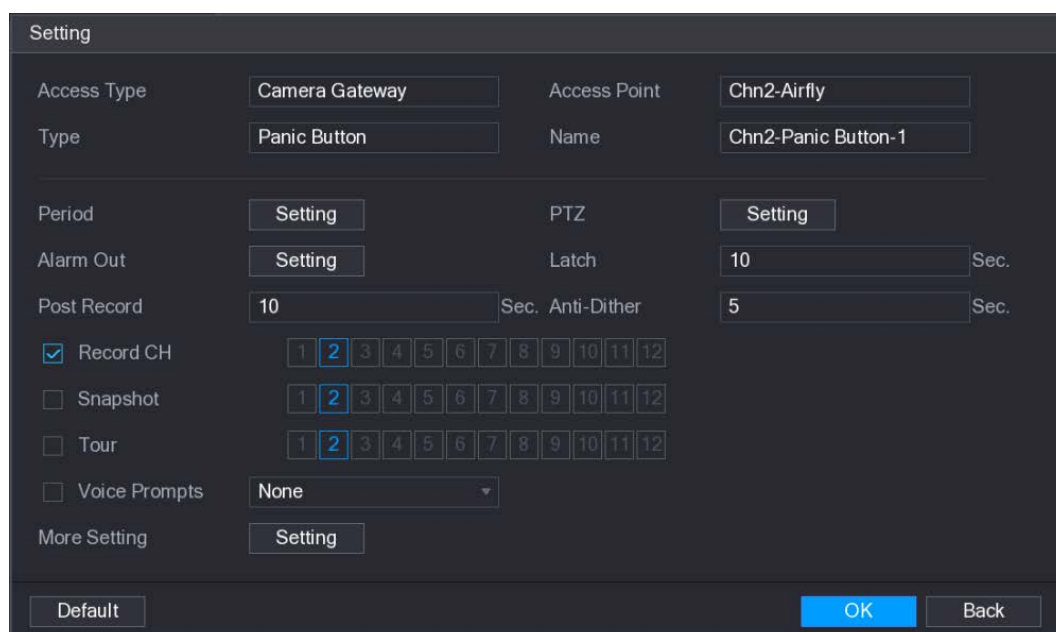
Figure 5-151 Wireless detector



**Step 2** In the **Access Type** list, select **USB**, **Camera**, or **All**.




**Step 3** Click .



Figure 5-152 Setting



**Step 4** Configure the settings for alarm linkage.

Table 5-52 Alarm linkage settings

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized alarm name.
Period	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
PTZ	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ activation function. For each PTZ camera, select the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Alarm Out	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 600 seconds.
Record Channel	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.  The recording for alarm and auto snapshot must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
Snapshot	Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.  To use this function, make sure the following settings are configured: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The snapshot function is enabled for motion detect alarms in <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot</b>.</li> <li>Select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt; Snapshot</b>, in the <b>Mode</b> list, select <b>Event</b>.</li> </ul>
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.  To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR</b> .

Parameter	Description
Voice Prompts	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local alarm event.
More Setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Show Message: Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>● Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>● Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR."                        Not all models support this function.</li> <li>● Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.                        To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL.</b></li> <li>● Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log</li> </ul>

**Step 5** Click **OK** to save the settings.

**Step 6** On the **Wireless Detector** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.11.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera

You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera with such sensors and configure the alarm event settings.

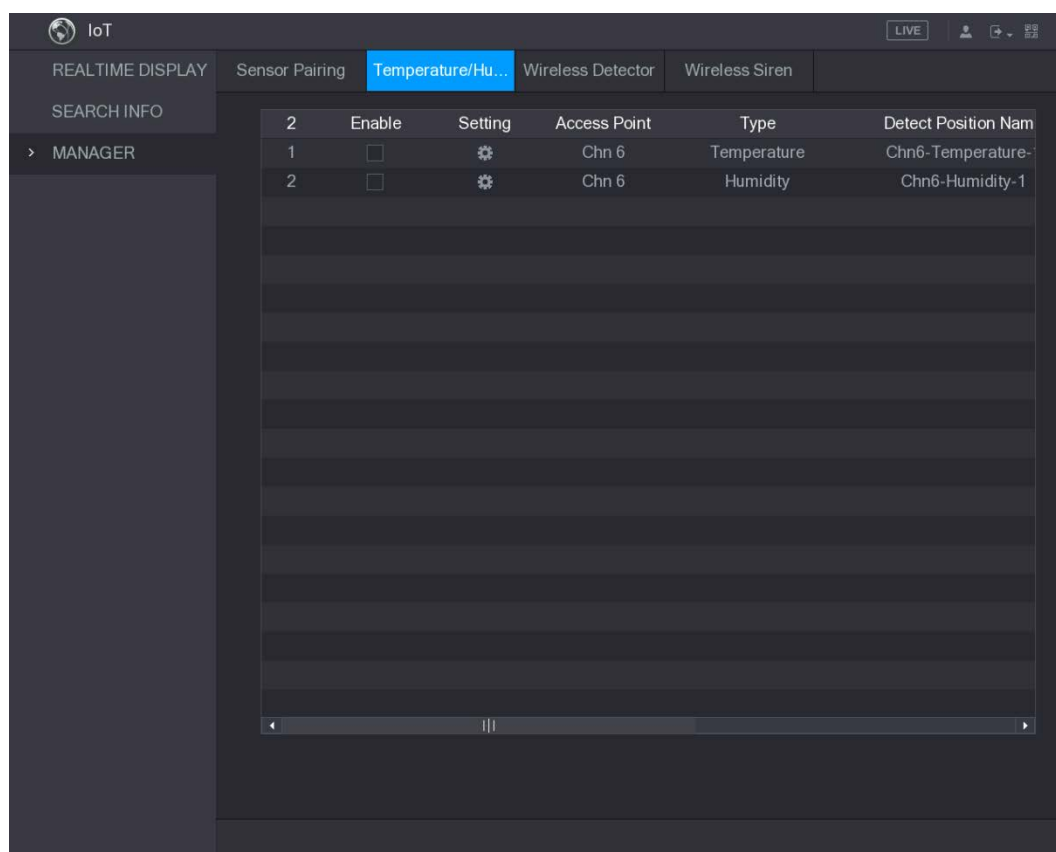
To use this function, please make sure there is at least one camera with temperature and humidity sensor has been connected to the Device.

### 5.11.2.1 Enabling Detecting Function

You should enable the IoT function the first time when you enter this interface.

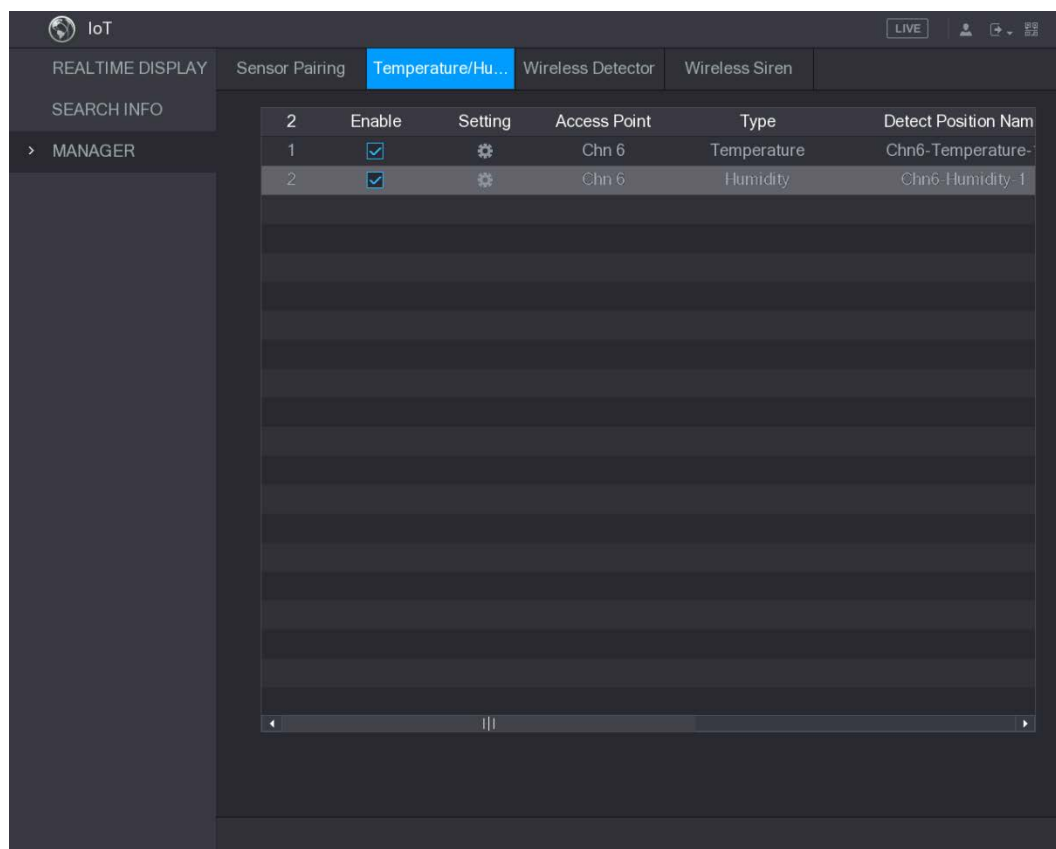
**Step 1** On the main menu, select **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**.

Figure 5-153 Temperature/humidity



**Step 2** Select the **Enable** check boxes to enable IoT function.

Figure 5-154 Enable



The Device starts detecting the temperature and humidity data from the camera and display on the **Realtime Display** interface.

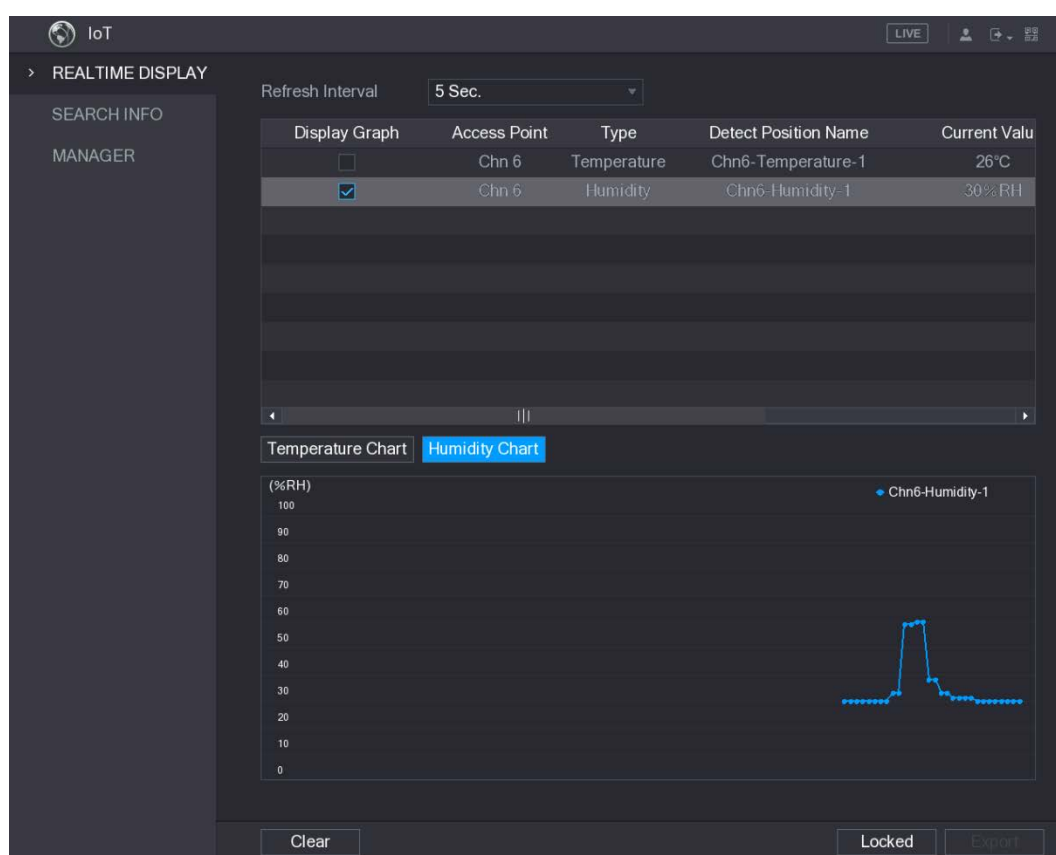
### 5.11.2.2 Viewing Temperature and Humidity Data

You can view the temperature and humidity data on the **Realtime Display** interface after the IoT function is enabled.

In the **Refresh Interval** box, select data refresh interval. For example, you can select **5 Sec.**

You can also display the temperature and humidity data in graphical way by selecting the **Display Graph** check box to.

Figure 5-155 Graph



Click **Clear** to delete the data.

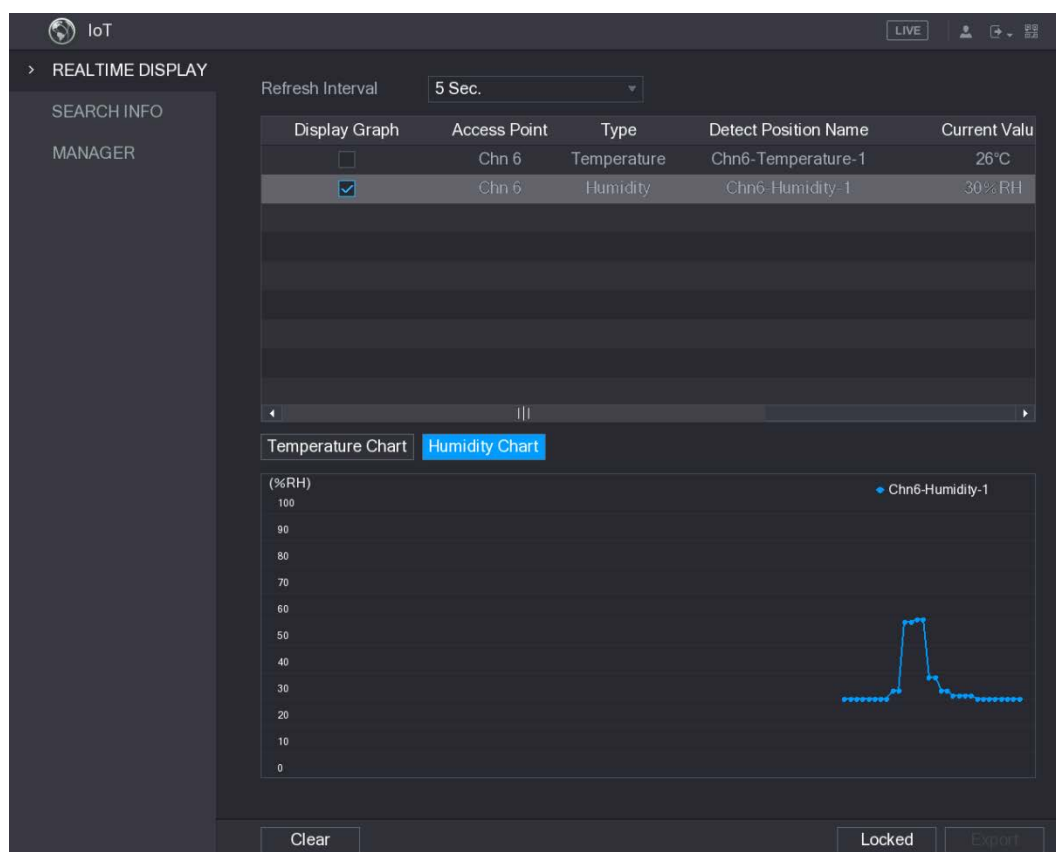
### 5.11.2.3 Exporting Temperature and Humidity Data

You can export the temperature and humidity data in .BMP format. Take exporting humidity data as an example.

**Step 1** Prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device.

**Step 2** On the **Realtime Display** interface, click the **Humidity** tab.

Figure 5-156 Humidity



- Step 3** Click **Locked** to lock the data.  
The export button is enabled.
- Step 4** Click **Export**. The system starts exporting the data.  
After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.
- Step 5** Click **OK**.  
You can find the exported data on your USB device.

## 5.11.2.4 Configuring Alarm Linkage

You can configure alarm linkage settings for temperature and humidity data.

### 5.11.2.4.1 Configuring Alarm Linkage for Temperature Data







- Step 1** On the main interface, click **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity**.
- Step 2** On the temperature information line, click .
- Step 3** Configure the settings for alarm linkage.

Table 5-53 Alarm linkage settings

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.
Type	<b>Temperature</b> by default.
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.



Parameter	Description
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High</b> or <b>Low</b> , and set the upper and low temperature limit respectively. For example, select event type as <b>High</b> and set upper limit as <b>28</b> , the alarm occurs when the temperature reaches 28°C.
Upper Limit	
Enable	Enable the alarm function.
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
Alarm Out	<p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
PTZ	<p>Enable PTZ activation function.</p> <p>Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. For each PTZ camera, select the preset, tour, or pattern that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.</p>
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 300 seconds.
Snapshot	<p>Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.</p>  <p>To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot</b>.</p>
Record CH	<p>Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.</p>  <p>The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."</p>

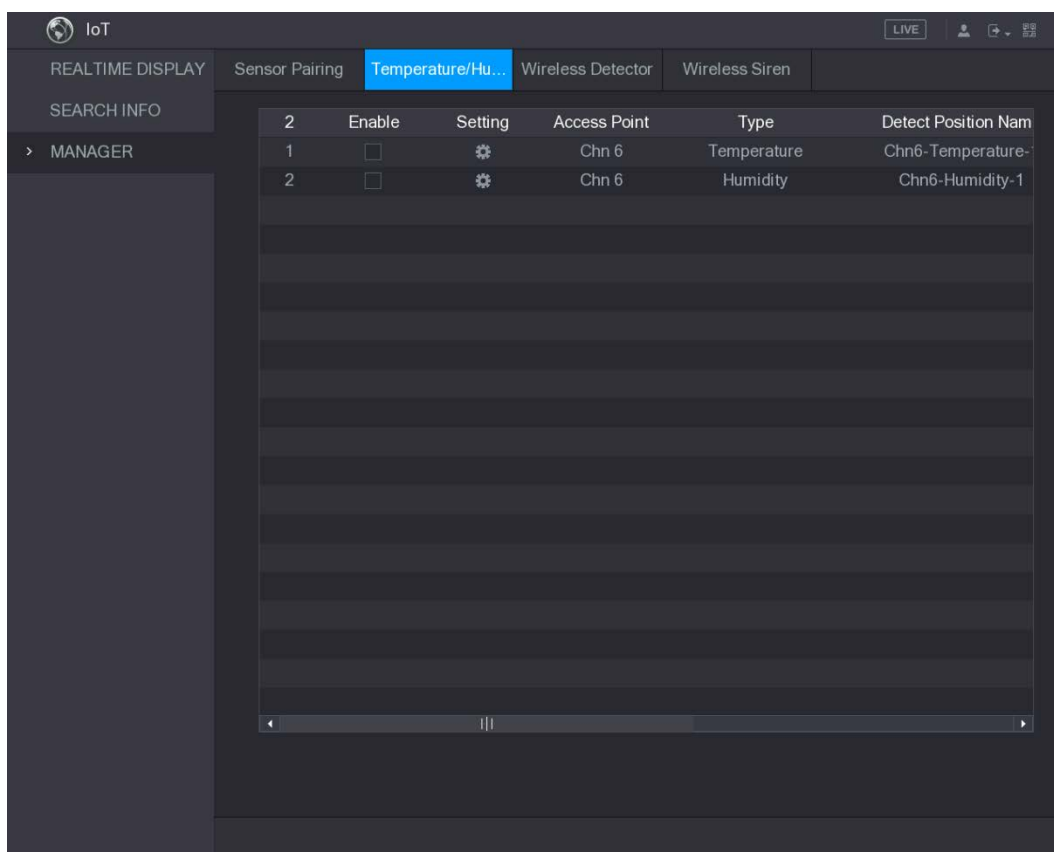
Parameter	Description
Tour	<p>Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.</p>  <p>To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR.</b></p>
Voice Prompts	<p>Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a temperature alarm event.</p>
More Setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Show Message: Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>● Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>● Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "<b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR.</b>"</li> </ul>  <p>Not all models support this function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> </ul>  <p>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log</li> </ul>

**Step 4** Click **Save** to save the settings.

#### 5.11.2.4.2 Configuring Alarm Settings for Humidity Data

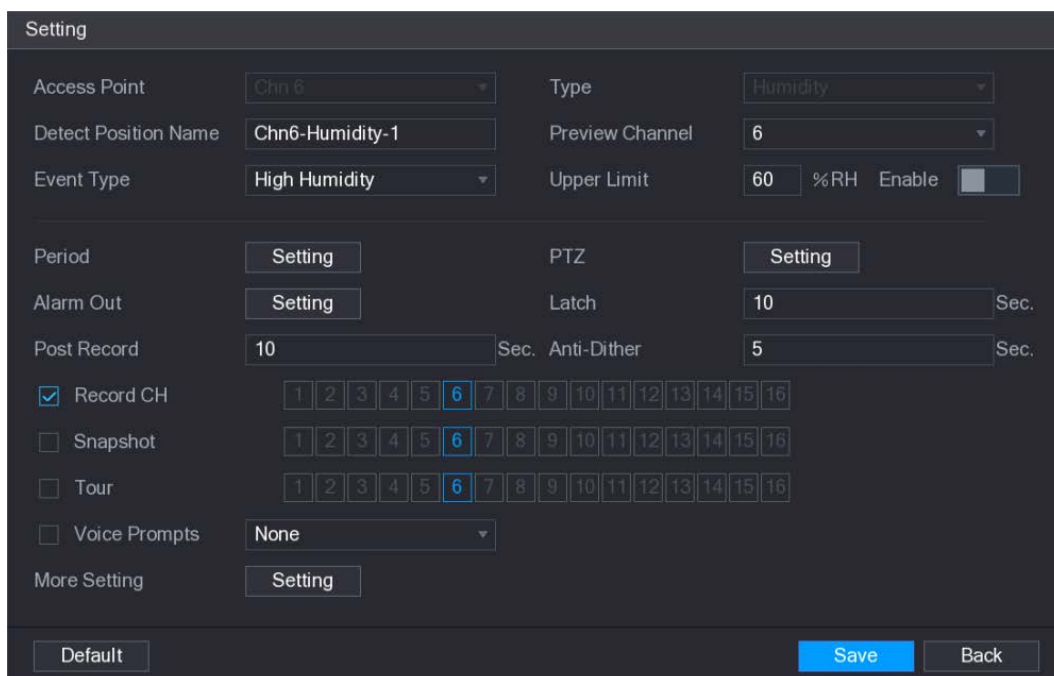
You can configure the alarm event by setting the humidity data.

**Step 1** On the main interface, click **IoT > MANAGER > Temperature/Humidity.**



**Step 2** On the humidity information line, click .

Figure 5-157 Setting




The screenshot shows the Setting interface for humidity detection. The parameters are configured as follows:





- Access Point: Chn 6
- Type: Humidity
- Detect Position Name: Chn6-Humidity-1
- Preview Channel: 6
- Event Type: High Humidity
- Upper Limit: 60 %RH
- Enable: ☐
- Period: Setting
- PTZ: Setting
- Alarm Out: Setting
- Latch: 10 Sec.
- Post Record: 10 Sec.
- Anti-Dither: 5 Sec.
- Record CH: ☒ (Selected: 6)
- Snapshot: ☐ (Selected: 6)
- Tour: ☐ (Selected: 6)
- Voice Prompts: None
- More Setting: Setting

Buttons at the bottom: Default, Save, Back.

**Step 3** Configure the settings for the following parameters.

Table 5-54 Settings description

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.
Type	<b>Humidity</b> by default.
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High Humidity</b> or <b>Low Humidity</b> , and set the upper and low humidity limit respectively. For example, select event type as <b>High Humidity</b> and set upper limit as <b>60</b> , the alarm occurs when the humidity reaches 60%RH.
Upper Limit	
Enable	Enable the alarm function.
Period	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.1.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
Alarm Out	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
PTZ	Enable PTZ activation function. Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. For each PTZ camera, select the preset, tour, or pattern that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Latch	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the event detection lasting time. The system records only one event during this period. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 300 seconds.
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.  To use this function, make sure the snapshot is enabled motion detect alarms in <b>Main Menu &gt; STORAGE &gt; SCHEDULE &gt; Snapshot</b> .

Parameter	Description
Record CH	<p>Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.</p>  <p>The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."</p>
Tour	<p>Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.</p>  <p>To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured in <b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR</b>.</p>
Voice Prompts	<p>Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a temperature alarm event.</p>
More Setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Show Message: Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>● Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>● Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "<b>Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; TOUR</b>."</li> </ul>  <p>Not all models support this function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> </ul>  <p>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; EMAIL</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log</li> </ul>

**Step 4** Click **Save** to save the settings.

### 5.11.2.5 Searching IoT Information

You can search and backup all your IoT data.

To back up the data, you should prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device.

**Step 1** On the main interface, click **IoT > SEARCH INFO**.

Figure 5-158 Search info

**Step 2** Configure the parameters settings.

Table 5-55 Parameters

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.
Display Type	In the <b>Display Type</b> list, select <b>List</b> or <b>Graph</b> .
Type	Select the information type that you want to search. You can select <b>Humidity</b> or <b>Temperature</b> .
Status	Select the information state that you want to search. This option is available when you select <b>List</b> in the <b>Display Type</b> list.
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the information that you want to search.
End Time	

**Step 3** Click **Search**. The system starts search according to your parameters settings.

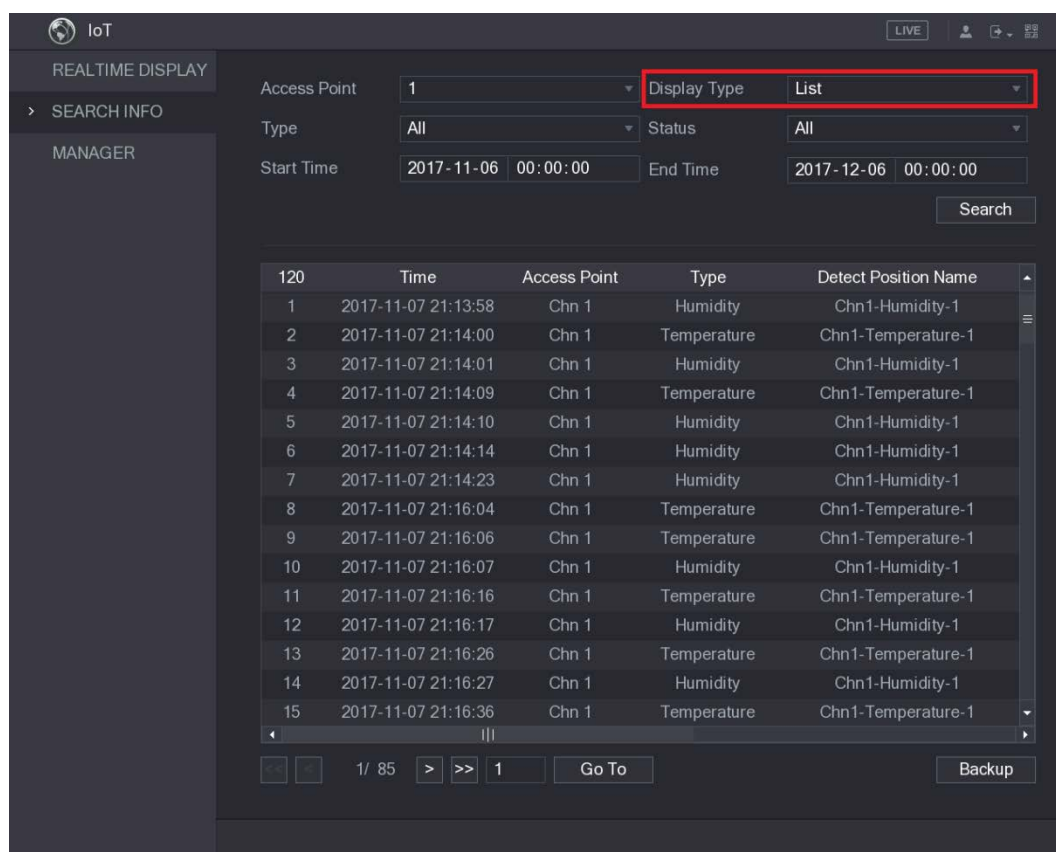
After searching is finished, the result displays.

- For the data displayed in list, see the following figure.



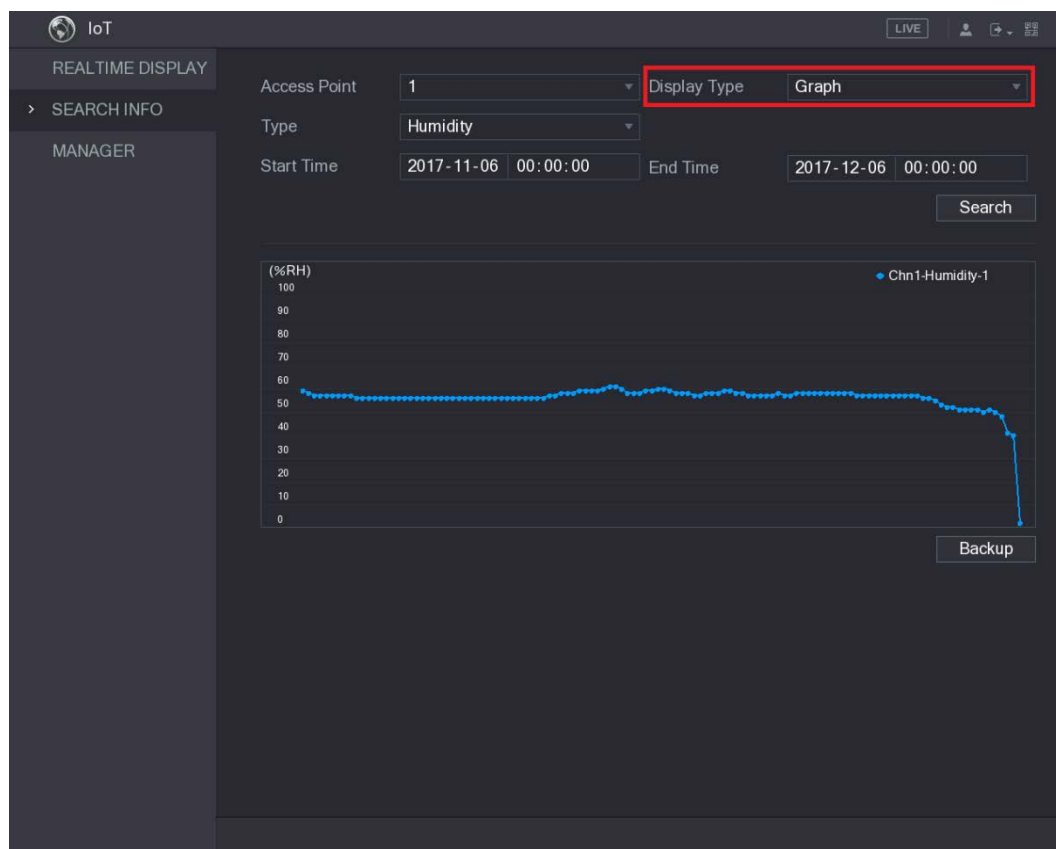
Click **Go To** to switch result pages.

Figure 5-159 List



- For the data displayed in graph, see the following figure.

Figure 5-160 Graph



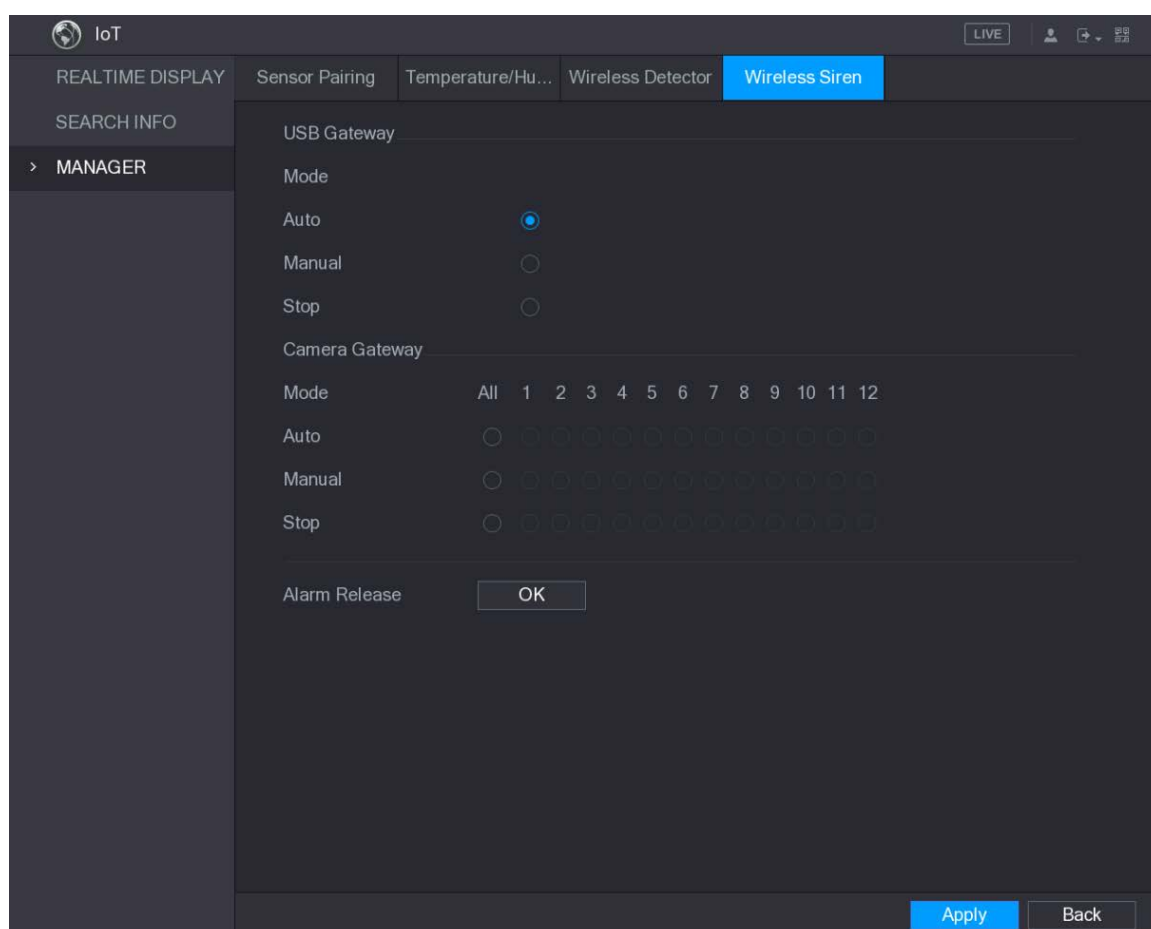
- Step 4** Click **Backup**. The system starts exporting the data.  
After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.
- Step 5** Click **OK**.  
You can find the exported data on your USB device.

### 5.11.3 Configuring Wireless Siren

You can connect the wireless siren to the Device, when there is an alarm event activated on the Device, the wireless siren generates alarms.

- Step 1** Select **Main Menu > IoT > MANAGER > Wireless Siren**.

Figure 5-161 Wireless siren



- Step 2** Configure the settings for the wireless alarm output.

Table 5-56 Wireless siren parameters

Parameter	Description
USB Gateway, Camera Gateway	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Auto</b>: Automatically activate alarm if the alarm output function for wireless siren is enabled for specific events.</li> <li><b>Manual</b>: Activate alarm immediately.</li> <li><b>Stop</b>: Do not activate alarm.</li> </ul>
Alarm Release	Click <b>OK</b> to clear all alarm output status of wireless siren.

- Step 3** Click **Apply** to save the settings.



## 5.12 Configuring POS Settings

You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it. This function applies to the scenarios such as supermarket POS machine. After connection is established, the Device can access the POS information and display the overlaid text in the channel window.

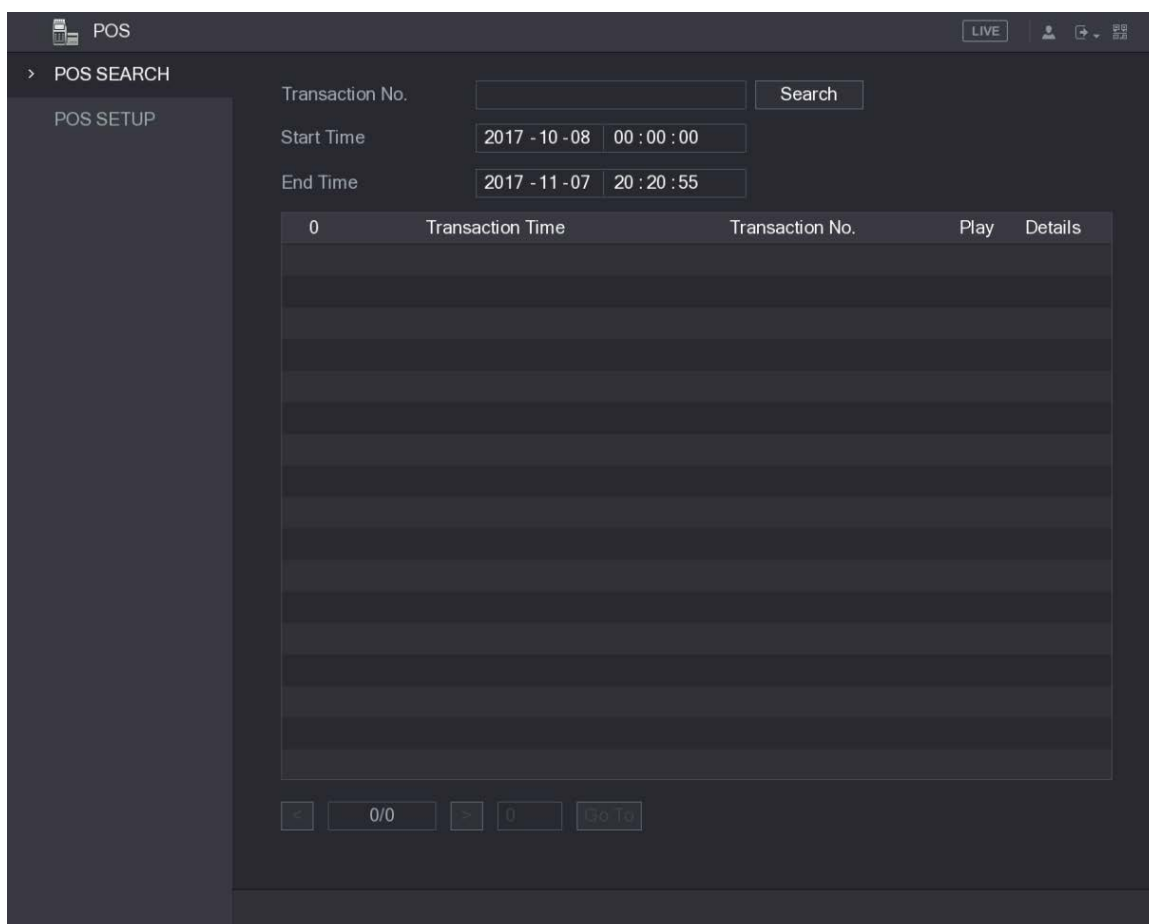


Playing POS information in the local playback and viewing the POS information in the live view screen only support single-channel mode. Displaying monitoring screen and playing back in the web support multi-channel mode.

### 5.12.1 Searching the Transaction Records

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > POS > POS SEARCH**.

Figure 5-162 POS search



**Step 2** In the **Transaction No.** list, enter the transaction number on your receipt printed out by POS machine.

**Step 3** In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period that you want to search the POS transaction information.

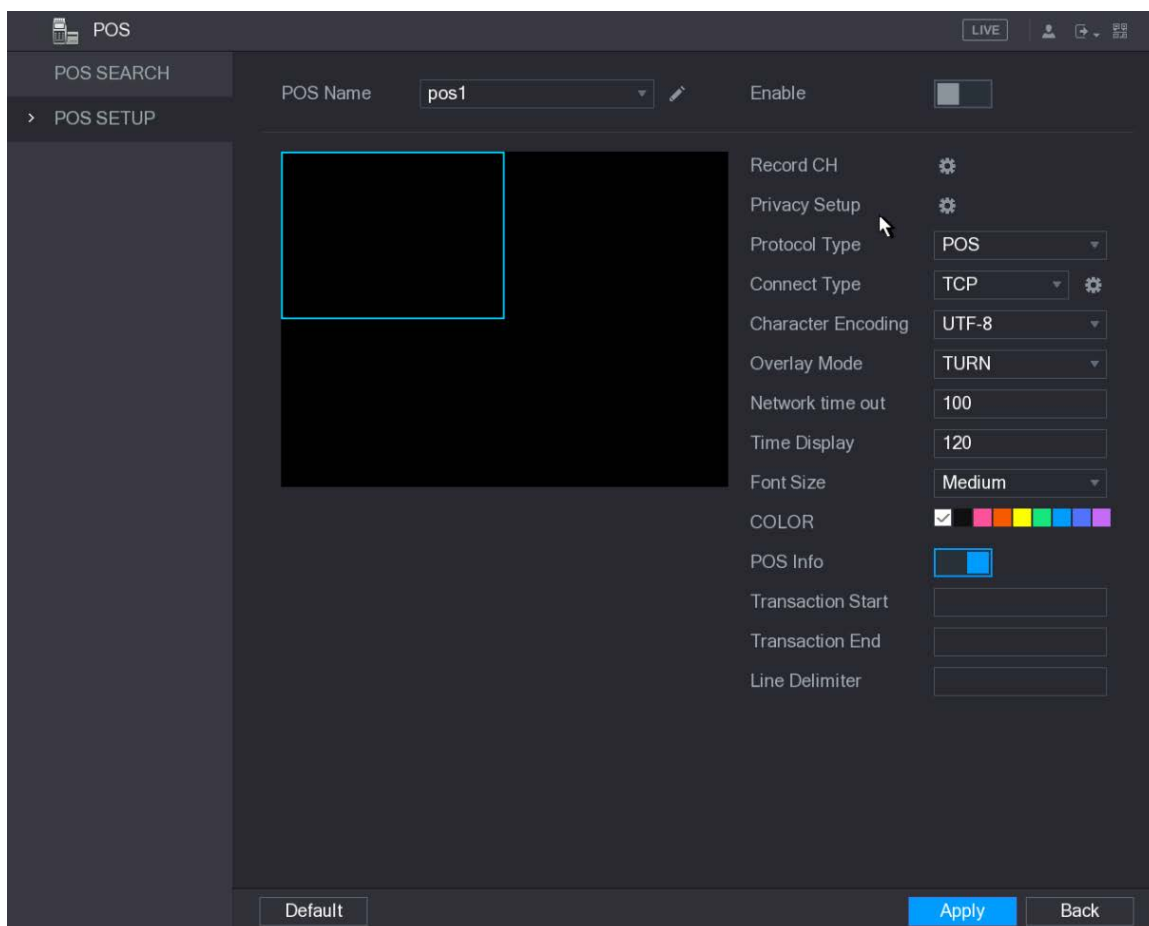
**Step 4** Click **Search**.

The searched transaction results display in the table.

## 5.12.2 Configuring POS Settings



**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > POS > POS SETUP**.



Figure 5-163 POS setup



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the POS parameters.

Table 5-57 POS parameters

Parameter	Description
POS Name	In the <b>POS Name</b> list, select the POS machine that you want to configure settings for. Click  to modify the POS name.  The POS name supports 21 Chinese characters or 63 English characters.
Enable	Enable the POS function.

Parameter	Description
Record CH	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.  The recording for POS alarms and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
Privacy Setup	Enter the privacy content.
Protocol Type	Select <b>POS</b> by default. Different machine corresponds to different protocol.
Connect Type	In the <b>Connect Type</b> list, select the connection protocol type. Click  , the IP Address interface is displayed. In the <b>Source IP</b> box, enter the IP address (the machine that is connected to the Device) that sends messages.
Convert	Select a character encoding mode.
Overlay	In the <b>Overlay</b> list, Select <b>Turn</b> or <b>ROLL</b> .
Network time out	When the network is not working correctly and cannot be recovered after the entered timeout limit, the POS information will not display normally. After the network is recovered, the latest POS information will be displayed.
Time Display	Enter the time that how long you want to keep the POS information displaying. For example, enter 5, the POS information disappear from the screen after 5 seconds.
Font Size	In the Font Size list, select <b>Small</b> , <b>Medium</b> , or <b>Big</b> as the text size of POS information
COLOR	In the color bar, click to select the color for the text size of POS information.
POS Info	Enable the POS Info function, the POS information displays in the live view screen.
Transaction Start	Enter the transaction start character and end character.
Transaction End	
Line Delimiter	Enter the line delimiter that you want to use.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

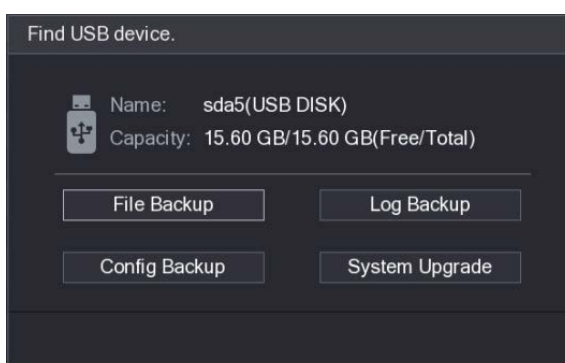
## 5.13 Configuring Backup Settings

### 5.13.1 Finding USB Device

When you inset a USB storage device into the USB port of the Device, the Device detects the USB storage device and pops up "Find USB device" interface, which provides you a shortcut to perform backup and upgrading operations.

For details, see "5.13.2 Backing up Files", "5.19.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings", and "5.18.7 Upgrading the Device."

Figure 5-164 Find USB device

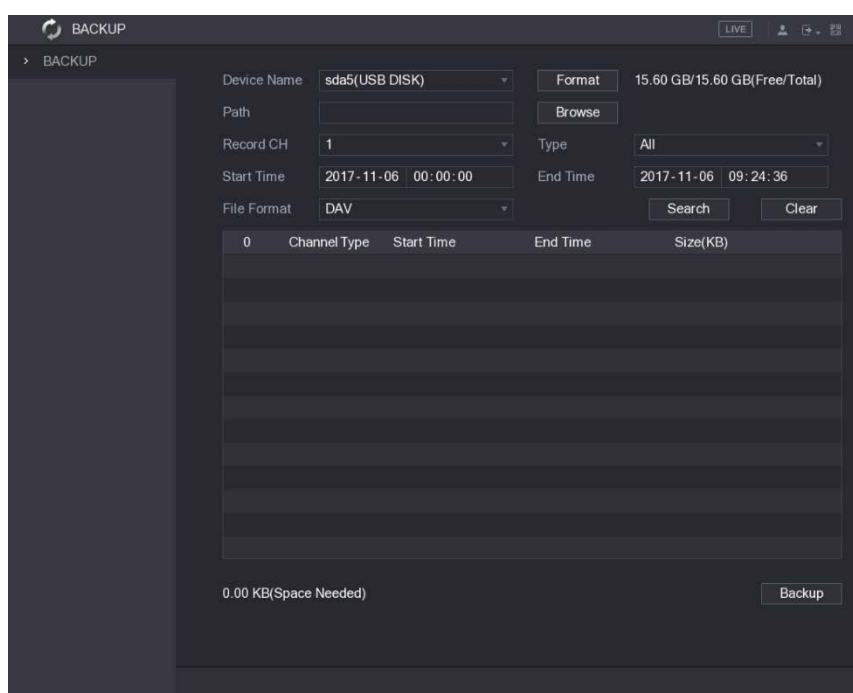


## 5.13.2 Backing up Files

You can back up the recorded videos and snapshots.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > BACKUP**.

Figure 5-165 Backup



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the backup parameters.

Table 5-58 Backup parameters

Parameter	Description
Device Name	In the <b>Device Name</b> list, select the device that you want to back up the files to.
Format	Click <b>Format</b> to format the selected device.
Path	Click <b>Browse</b> , the <b>Browse</b> interface is displayed. Select the route where you want to search for the files.

Parameter	Description
Record CH	In the <b>Record CH</b> list, select the channel where you want to search for the files.
Type	In the <b>Type</b> list, select the file type that you want to search.
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the files that you want to search.
End Time	
File Format	In the <b>File Format</b> list, select the file format that you want to search.

**Step 3** Click **Search** to search the files that meet the configured settings.

The searched results will display in the table.

**Step 4** Select the files that you want to back up.

**Step 5** Click **Backup** to back up the selected files to the configured path.



Click **Clear** to remove all the searched results.

## 5.14 Network Management

### 5.14.1 Configuring Network Settings

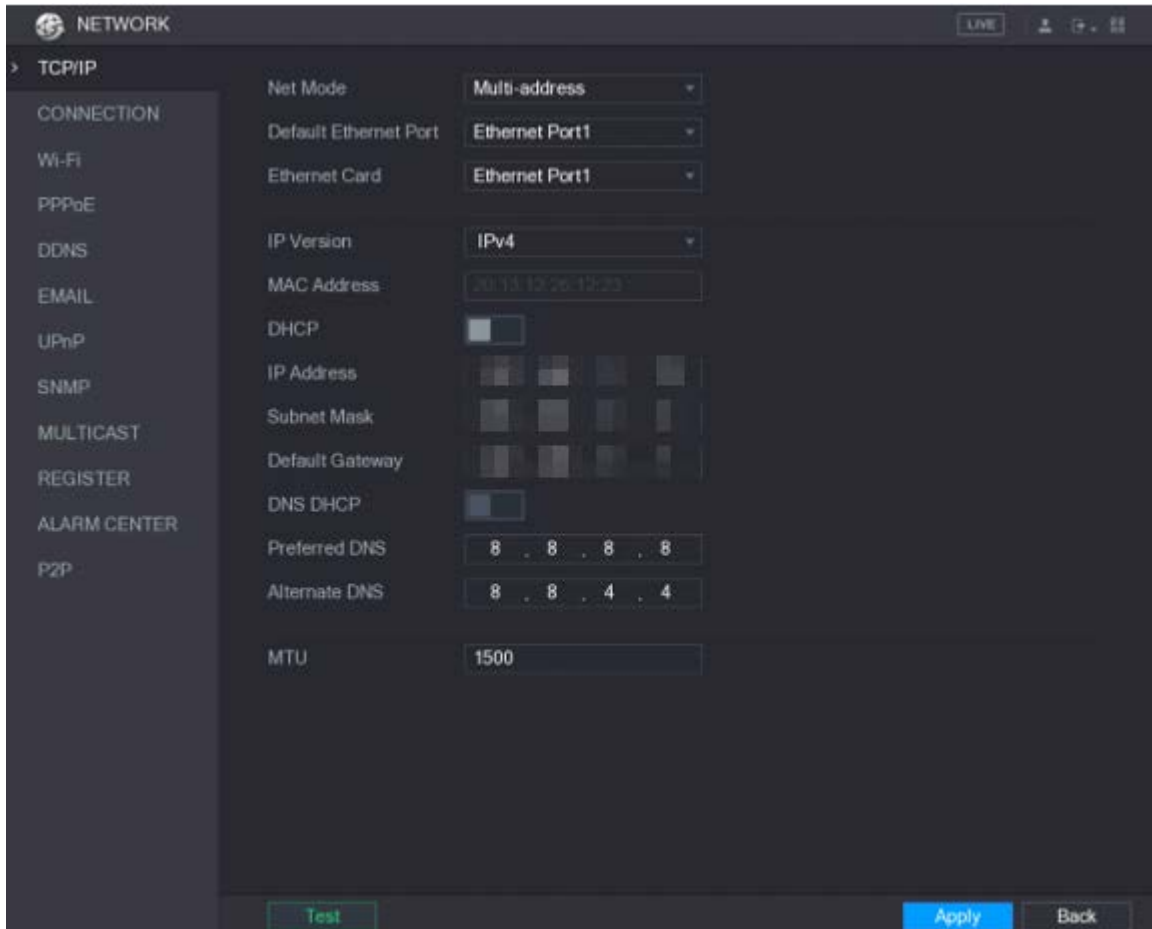
You can ensure the network interworking between the Device and other devices through configuring the network settings.

#### 5.14.1.1 Configuring TCP/IP Settings

You can configure the settings for the Device such as IP address, DNS according to the networking plan.

Select **Main Menu** > **NETWORK** > **TCP/IP**, the **TCP/IP** interface is displayed. For details about parameter settings, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."

Figure 5-166 TCP/IP



The screenshot displays the 'NETWORK' configuration page with the 'TCP/IP' tab selected. The left sidebar lists various network-related options: CONNECTION, Wi-Fi, PPPoE, DDNS, EMAIL, UPnP, SNMP, MULTICAST, REGISTER, ALARM CENTER, and P2P. The main configuration area includes the following settings:

- Net Mode:** Multi-address (dropdown)
- Default Ethernet Port:** Ethernet Port1 (dropdown)
- Ethernet Card:** Ethernet Port1 (dropdown)
- IP Version:** IPv4 (dropdown)
- MAC Address:** 28:13:12:26:12:23 (text field)
- DHCP:** ☐ (checkbox)
- IP Address:** [Grid of 4 input fields]
- Subnet Mask:** [Grid of 4 input fields]
- Default Gateway:** [Grid of 4 input fields]
- DNS DHCP:** ☐ (checkbox)
- Preferred DNS:** 8 . 8 . 8 . 8 (text field)
- Alternate DNS:** 8 . 8 . 4 . 4 (text field)
- MTU:** 1500 (text field)

At the bottom of the interface, there are three buttons: 'Test' (green), 'Apply' (blue), and 'Back' (grey).

### 5.14.1.2 Configuring Port Settings

You can configure the maximum connection accessing the Device from Client such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone and configure each port settings.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > CONNECTION**.

Figure 5-167 Connection



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the connection parameters.



The connection parameters except Max Connection cannot take effects until the Device has been restarted.

Table 5-59 Connection parameters

Parameter	Description
Max Connection	The allowable maximum clients accessing the Device at the same time, such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone. Select a value between 1 and 128. The default value setting is 128.
TCP Port	The default value setting is 37777. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.
UDP Port	The default value setting is 37778. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.
HTTP Port	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according to your actual situation. If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter 70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.
POS Port	Data transmission. The value range is from 1 through 65535. The default value is 38800.
HTTPS Enable	Enable <b>HTTPS</b> .
HTTPS Port	HTTPS communication port. The default value setting is 443. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.14.1.3 Configuring Wi-Fi Connection Settings

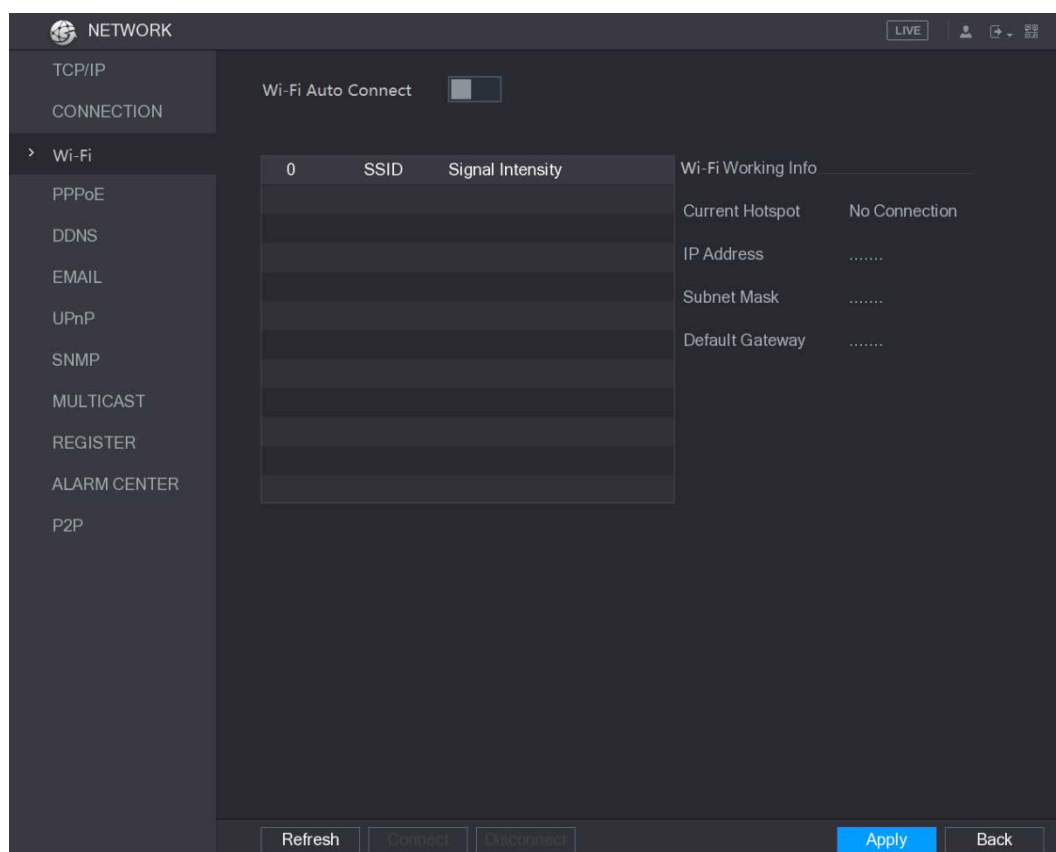
You can make wireless connection between the Device and the other devices in the same network through Wi-Fi settings, facilitating the devices connection and mobility.



Only the Device with Wi-Fi module supports this function.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > Wi-Fi**.

Figure 5-168 Wi-Fi



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the Wi-Fi connection parameters.

Table 5-60 Wi-Fi connection parameters

Parameter	Description
Wi-Fi Auto Connect	Enable Wi-Fi Auto Connect. After the Device is restarted, it will automatically connect to the nearest hotspot that had been connected successfully.
Refresh	Refresh the hotspot list. The self-adaption function such as adding password is supported if such setting was once configured.
Connect	In the <b>hotspots</b> list, select a hotspot, and then click <b>Connect</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To reconnect the same hotspot, disconnect first and then reconnect.</li> <li>To connect to other hotspot, disconnect from the current connected hotspot first, and then connect to the other hotspot.</li> </ul>
Disconnect	To disconnect from a hotspot, click <b>Disconnect</b> .



**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

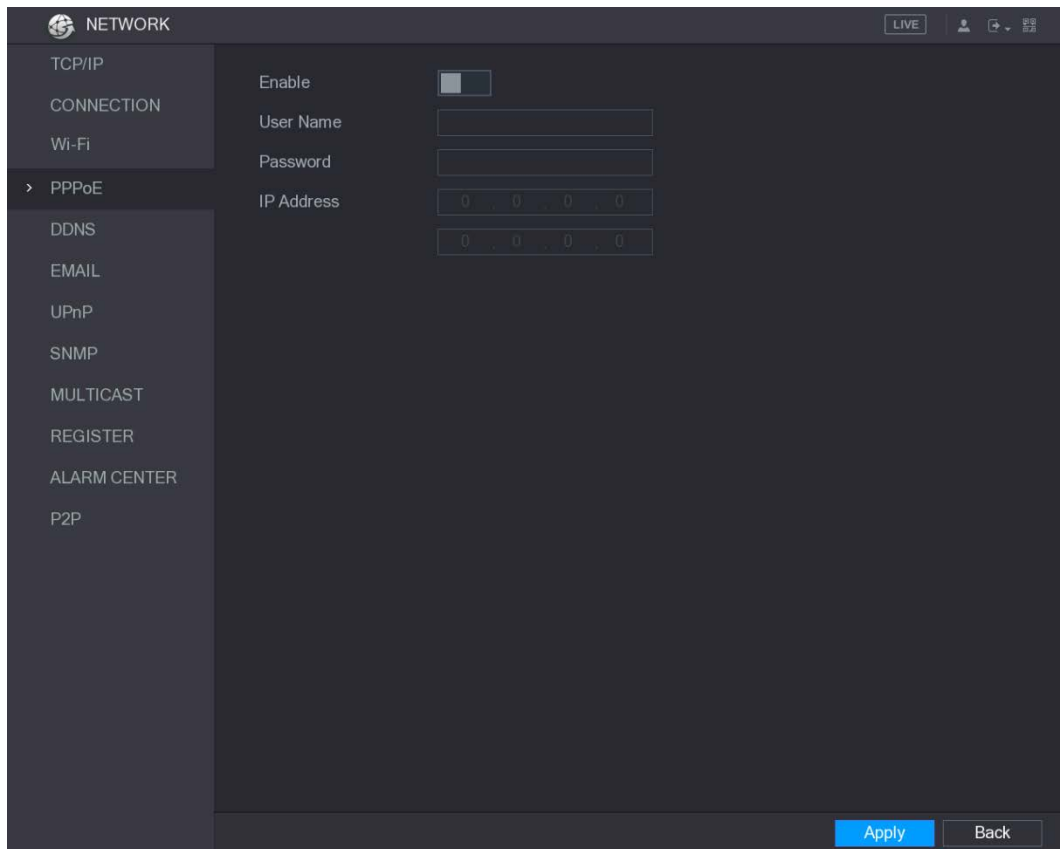
After the Device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, in the **Wi-Fi Working Info** area, the current hotspot, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway are displayed.

#### 5.14.1.4 Configuring PPPoE Settings

PPPoE is another way for the Device to access the network. You can establish network connection by configuring PPPoE settings to give the Device a dynamic IP address in the WAN. To use this function, firstly you need to obtain the user name and password from the Internet Service Provider.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > PPPoE**.

Figure 5-169 PPPoE



**Step 2** Enable the PPPoE function.

**Step 3** In the **User Name** box and **Password** box, enter the user name and password accordingly provided by the Internet Service Provider.

**Step 4** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

The system pops up a message to indicate the successfully saved. The IP address appears on the PPPoE interface. You can use this IP address to access the Device.



When the PPPoE function is enabled, the IP address on the **TCP/IP** interface cannot be modified.

### 5.14.1.5 Configuring DDNS Settings

When the IP address of the Device changes frequently, the DDNS function can dynamically refresh the correspondence between the domain on DNS and the IP address, ensuring you access the Device by using the domain.

#### Preparing for Configuration

Please confirm if the Device supports the DDNS Type and log in the website provided by the DDNS service provider to register the information such as domain from PC located in the WAN.

- If DDNS belongs to Quick DDNS type, domain registration is not needed.
- If DDNS belongs to other type, you need to log in to the DDNS website to register the information such as user name, password, and domain name.

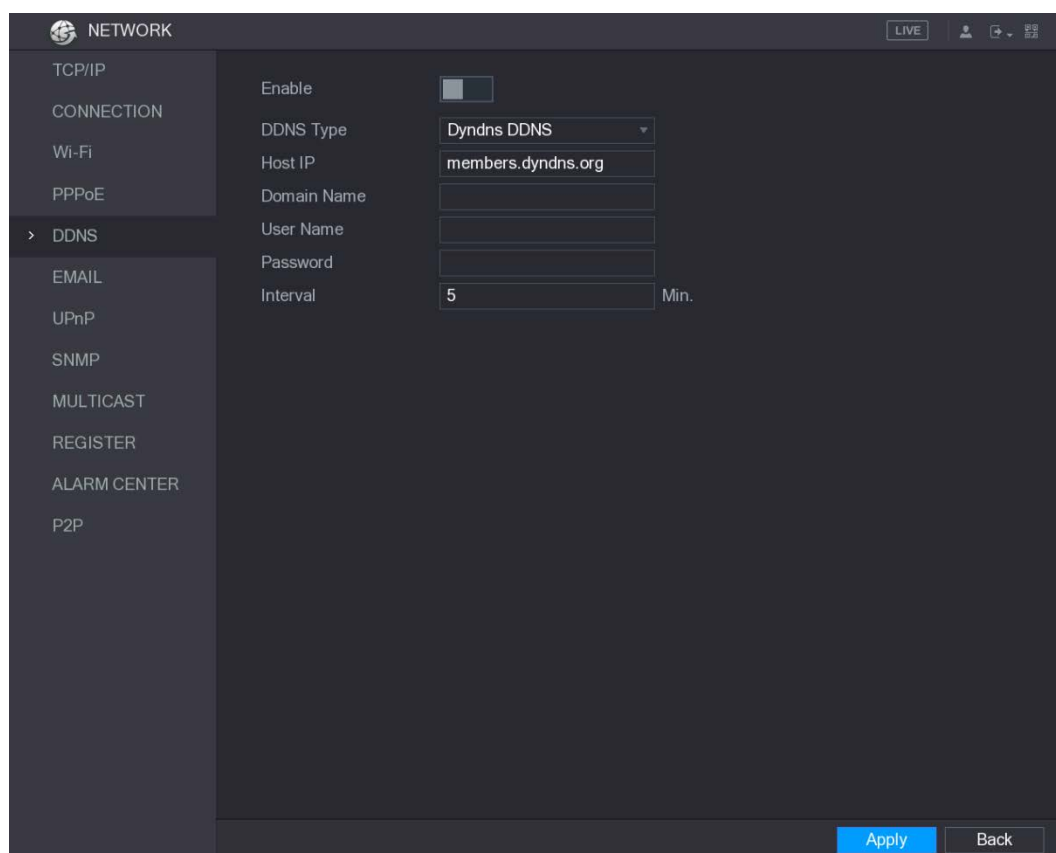


After you have registered and logged in to the DDNS website successfully, you can view the information of all the connected devices under this user name.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > DDNS**.

Figure 5-170 DDNS



The screenshot shows the DDNS configuration page. The left sidebar lists various network settings: TCP/IP, CONNECTION, Wi-Fi, PPPoE, DDNS (selected), EMAIL, UPnP, SNMP, MULTICAST, REGISTER, ALARM CENTER, and P2P. The main area displays the DDNS configuration form with the following fields:

- Enable:** A toggle switch.
- DDNS Type:** A dropdown menu set to "DynDNS DDNS".
- Host IP:** A text field containing "members.dyndns.org".
- Domain Name:** A text field.
- User Name:** A text field.
- Password:** A text field.
- Interval:** A text field containing "5" with a "Min." label.

At the bottom right, there are "Apply" and "Back" buttons.

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the DDNS parameters.

Table 5-61 Non quick DDNS

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the DDNS function.
DDNS Type	Type and address of DDNS service provider.
Host IP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Type: Dyndns DDNS; address: members.dyndns.org</li> <li>Type: NO-IP DDNS; address: dynupdate.no-ip.com</li> <li>Type: CN99 DDNS; address: members.3322.org</li> </ul>
Domain Name	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service provider.
User Name	Enter the user name and password obtained from DDNS service provider. You need to register (including user name and password) on the website of DDNS service provider.
Password	
Interval	Enter the amount of time that you want to update the DDNS.

Table 5-62 Quick DDNS

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the DDNS function.
DDNS Type	Type of DDNS service provider.
Host IP	Address of DDNS service provider. The default is www.quickddns.com which cannot be modified.
Domain Name	<p>The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service provider.</p> <p>Select the domain mode as default domain or customized domain.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The default domain format is "MAC address (without ").quickddns.com"</li> <li>The customized domain format is "name. quickddns.com."</li> </ul>
Email	In the <b>Email</b> box, enter the email address that is used to access the DDNS service provider.
Test	After configuration is completed, click <b>Test</b> to check if the domain name is successfully registered. If yes, go to the next step; if not, please check the network connection status.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Enter the domain name in the browser on your PC, and then press **Enter**.

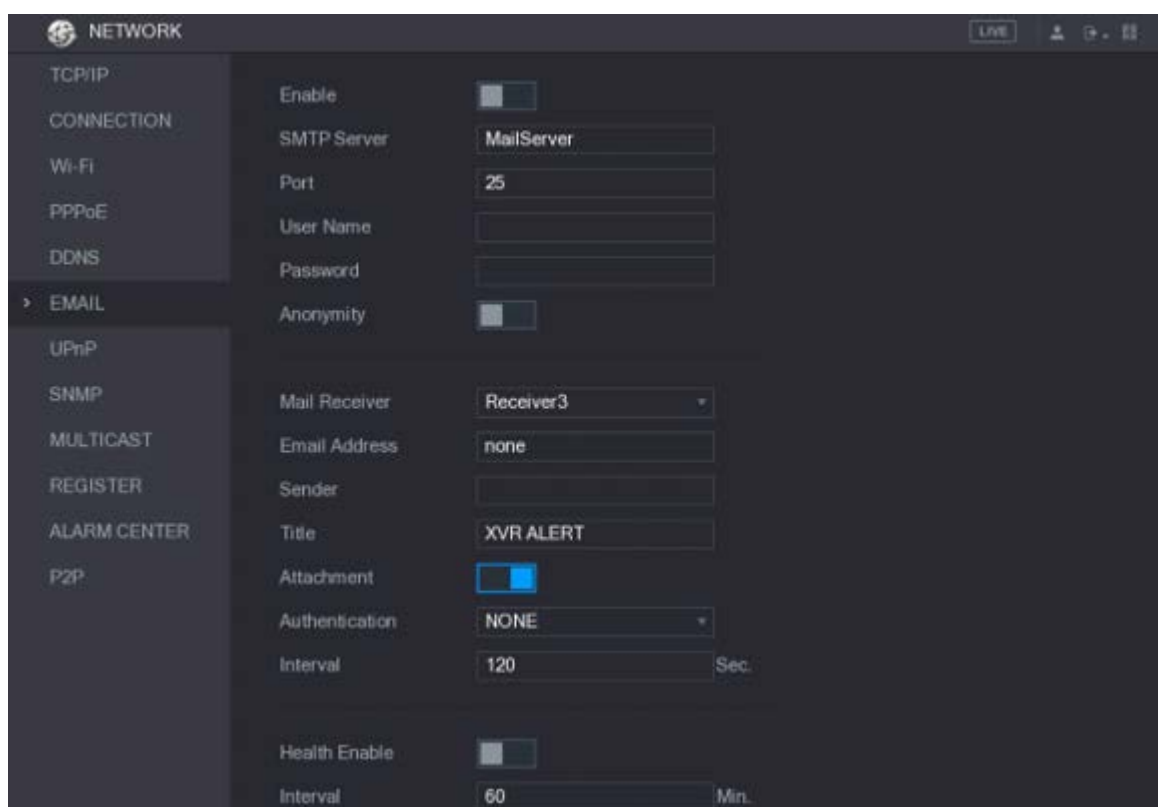
If the web interface of the Device is displayed, the configuration is successful. If not, the configuration is failed.

### 5.14.1.6 Configuring EMAIL Settings

You can configure the email settings to enable the system to send the email as a notification when there is an alarm event occurs.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL**.

Figure 5-171 Email




The screenshot shows the 'EMAIL' configuration page in a network management interface. The left sidebar lists various network protocols: TCP/IP, CONNECTION, Wi-Fi, PPPoE, DDNS, EMAIL (selected), UPnP, SNMP, MULTICAST, REGISTER, ALARM CENTER, and P2P. The main configuration area for EMAIL includes the following fields:

- Enable:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off.
- SMTP Server:** A text field containing 'MailServer'.
- Port:** A text field containing '25'.
- User Name:** An empty text field.
- Password:** An empty text field.
- Anonymity:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off.
- Mail Receiver:** A dropdown menu showing 'Receiver3'.
- Email Address:** A text field containing 'none'.
- Sender:** An empty text field.
- Title:** A text field containing 'XVR ALERT'.
- Attachment:** A toggle switch that is currently turned on.
- Authentication:** A dropdown menu showing 'NONE'.
- Interval:** A text field containing '120' with a unit of 'Sec'.
- Health Enable:** A toggle switch that is currently turned off.
- Interval:** A text field containing '60' with a unit of 'Min'.

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the email parameters.

Table 5-63 Email parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the email function.
SMTP Server	Enter the address of SMTP server of sender's email account.
Port	Enter the port value of SMTP server. The default value setting is 25. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.
User Name	Enter the user name and password of sender's email account.
Password	
Anonymity	If enable the anonymity function, you can login as anonymity.
Mail Receiver	In the <b>Mail Receiver</b> list, select the number of receiver that you want to receive the notification. The Device supports up to three mail receivers.
Email Address	Enter the email address of mail receiver(s).
Sender	Enter the sender's email address. It supports maximum three senders separated by comma.
Title	Enter the email subject. Supports Chinese, English and Arabic numerals. It supports maximum 64 characters.
Attachment	Enable the attachment function. When there is an alarm event, the system can attach snapshots as an attachment to the email.
Authentication	Select the encryption type: <b>NONE</b> , <b>SSL</b> , or <b>TLS</b> .

Parameter	Description
Interval (Sec.)	This is the interval that the system sends an email for the same type of alarm event, which means, the system does not send an email upon any alarm event. This setting helps to avoid the large amount of emails caused by frequent alarm events. The value ranges from 0 to 3600. 0 means that there is no interval.
Health Enable	Enable the health test function. The system can send a test email to check the connection.
Interval (Min.)	This is the interval that the system sends a health test email. The value ranges from 30 to 1440. 0 means that there is no interval.
Test	Click <b>Test</b> to test the email sending function. If the configuration is correct, the receiver's email account will receive the email.  Before testing, click <b>Apply</b> to save the settings.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.14.1.7 Configuring UPnP Settings

You can map the relationship between the LAN and the WAN to access the Device on the LAN through the IP address on the WAN.

#### Preparation

- Log in to the router to set the WAN port to enable the IP address to connect into the WAN.
- Enable the UPnP function at the router.
- Connect the Device with the LAN port on the router to connect into the LAN.
- Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**, configure the IP address into the router IP address range, or enable the DHCP function to obtain an IP address automatically.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > UPnP**.

Figure 5-172 UPnP

NETWORK

TCP/IP

CONNECTION

Wi-Fi

PPPoE

DDNS

EMAIL

> UPnP

SNMP

MULTICAST

REGISTER

ALARM CENTER

P2P

PAT

Status: Offline

LAN IP: 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

WAN IP: 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

PAT Table



7	Service Name	Protocol	Int.Port	Ext.Port	Edit
1	HTTP	TCP	80	80	
2	TCP	TCP	37777	37777	
3	UDP	UDP	37778	37778	
4	RTSP	UDP	554	554	
5	RTSP	TCP	554	554	
6	SNMP	UDP	161	161	
7	HTTPS	TCP	443	443	

Apply Back

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the UPnP parameters.

Table 5-64 UPnP parameters

Parameter	Description
PAT	Enable the UPnP function.
Status	Indicates the status of UPnP function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Offline: Failed.</li> <li>Online: Succeeded.</li> </ul>
LAN IP	Enter IP address of router on the LAN.  After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address automatically without performing any configurations.
WAN IP	Enter IP address of router on the WAN.  After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address automatically without performing any configurations.

Parameter	Description
PAT Table	<p>The settings in PAT table correspond to the UPnP PAT table on the router.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service Name: Name of network server.</li> <li>• Protocol: Type of protocol.</li> <li>• Int. Port: Internal port that is mapped on the Device.</li> <li>• Ext. Port: External port that is mapped on the router.</li> </ul> <p></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To avoid the conflict, when setting the external port, try to use the ports from 1024 through 5000 and avoid popular ports from 1 through 255 and system ports from 256 through 1023.</li> <li>• When there are several devices in the LAN, please reasonably arrange the ports mapping to avoid mapping to the same external port.</li> <li>• When establishing a mapping relationship, please ensure the mapping ports are not occupied or limited.</li> <li>• The internal and external ports of TCP and UDP must be the same and cannot be modified.</li> <li>• Click  to modify the external port.</li> </ul>

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

In the browser, enter http://WAN IP: External IP port. You can visit the LAN Device.

### 5.14.1.8 Configuring SNMP Settings



Not all models support this function.

You can connect the Device with some software such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser to manage and control the Device from the software.

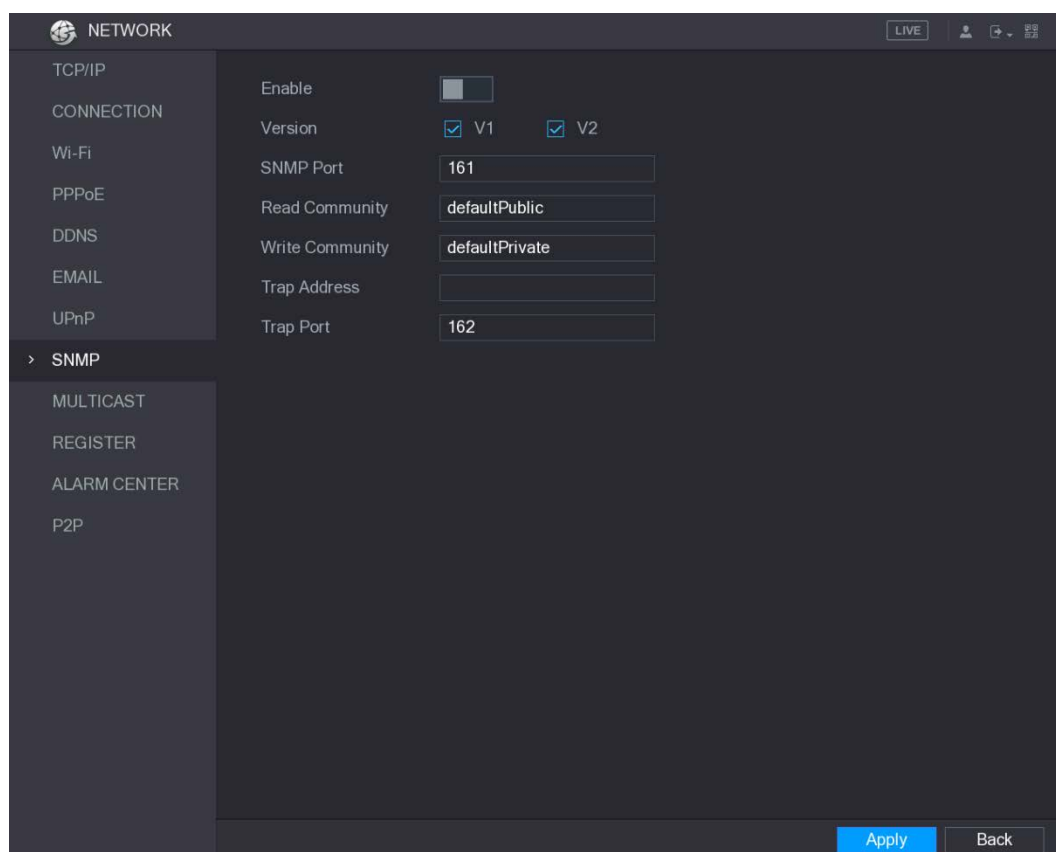
#### Preparation

- Install the software that can manage and control the SNMP, such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser
- Obtain the MIB files that correspond to the current version from the technical support.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > SNMP**.

Figure 5-173 SNMP



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the SNMP parameters.

Table 5-65 SNMP parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the SNMP function.
Version	Select the check box of SNMP version(s) that you are using.
SNMP Port	Indicates the monitoring port on the agent program.
Read Community	Indicates the read/write strings supported by the agent program.
Write Community	
Trap Address	Indicates the destination address for the agent program to send the Trap information.
Trap Port	Indicates the destination port for the agent program to send the Trap information.

**Step 3** Compile the two MIB files by MIB Builder.

**Step 4** Run MG-SOFT MIB Browser to load in the module from compilation.

**Step 5** On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, enter the Device IP that you want to manage, and then select the version number to query.

**Step 6** On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, unfold the tree-structured directory to obtain the configurations of the Device, such as the channels quantity and software version.

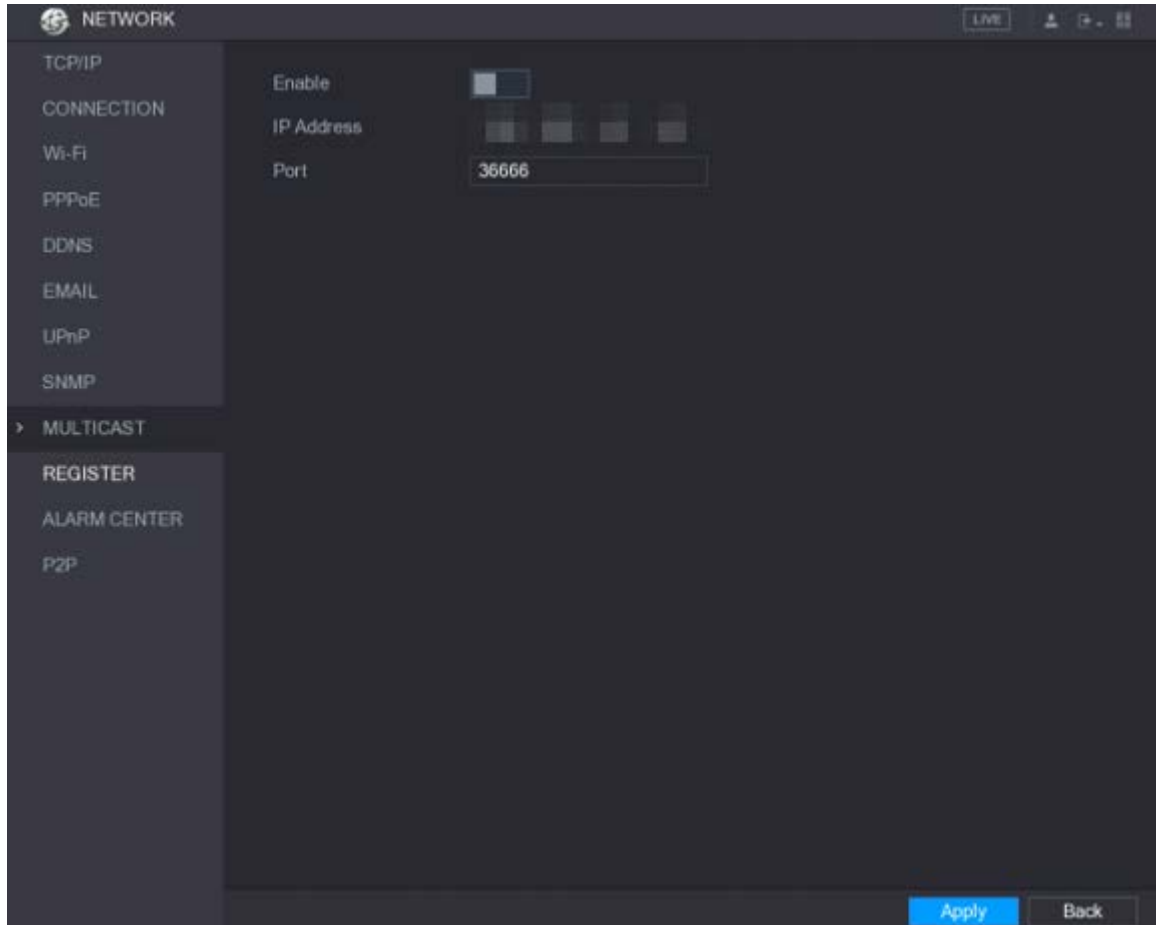


### 5.14.1.9 Configuring Multicast Settings

When you access the Device from the network to view the video, if the access is exceeded, the video will not display. You can use the multicast function to group the IP to solve the problem.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > MULTICAST**.

Figure 5-174 Multicast



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the multicast parameters.

Table 5-66 Multicast parameters

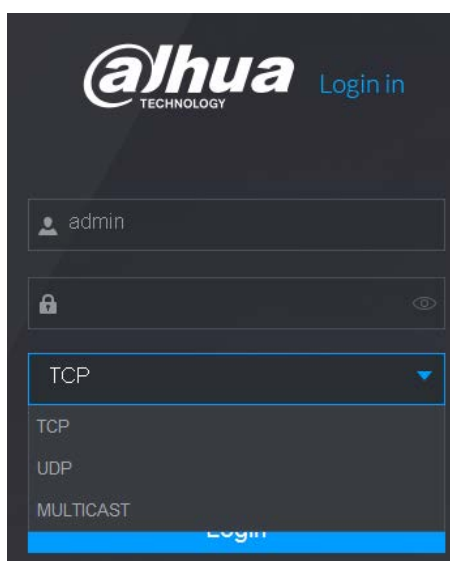
Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the multicast function.
IP Address	Enter the IP address that you want to use as the multicast IP. The IP address ranges from 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255.
Port	Enter the port for the multicast. The port ranges from 1025 through 65000.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

You can use the multicast IP address to log in to the web.

On the web login dialog box, in the **Type** list, select **MULTICAST**. The web will automatically obtain the multicast IP address and join. Then you can view the video through multicast function.

Figure 5-175 Login



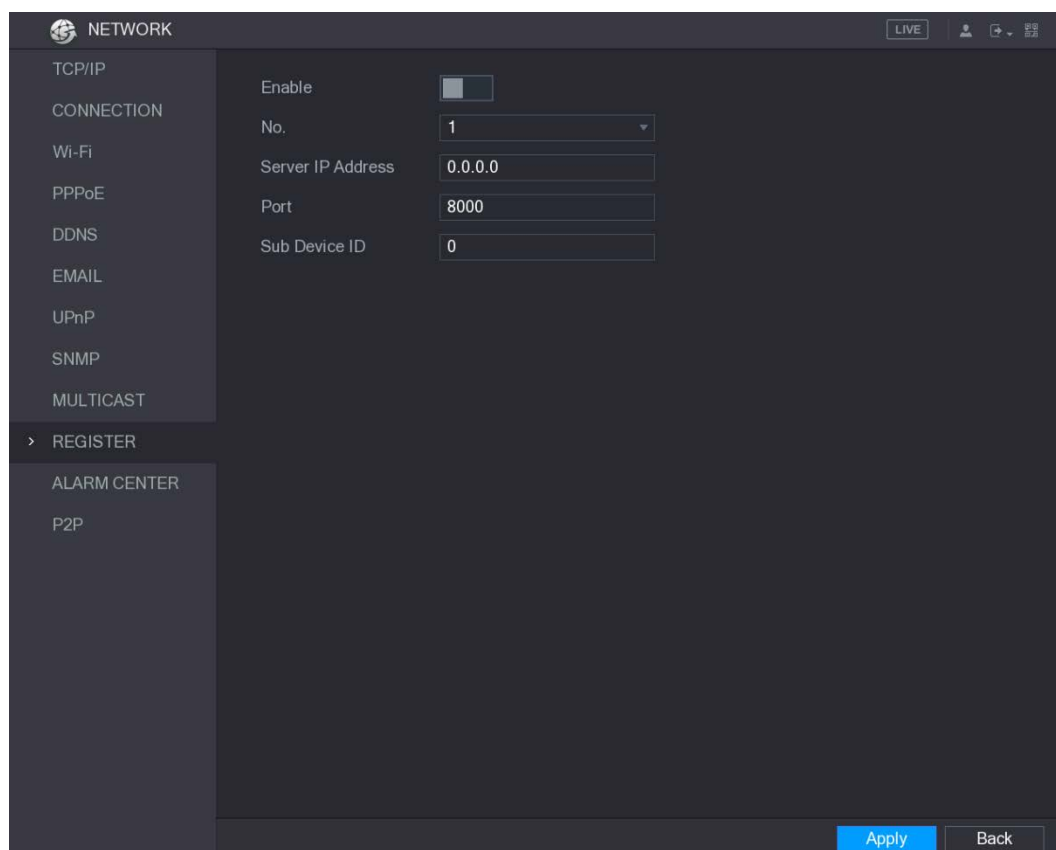
The login interface features the Dahua Technology logo at the top. Below it, there is a username field containing 'admin' and a password field with a lock icon and a toggle for visibility. A protocol dropdown menu is set to 'TCP', with a list showing 'TCP', 'UDP', and 'MULTICAST'. A blue 'Login' button is at the bottom.

### 5.14.1.10 Configuring Register Settings

You can register the Device into the specified proxy server which acts as the transit to make it easier for the client software to access the Device.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > REGISTER**.

Figure 5-176 Register



The 'REGISTER' settings page is shown within the 'NETWORK' menu. The left sidebar lists various network settings, with 'REGISTER' selected. The main area contains the following configuration options:

Parameter	Value
Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>
No.	1
Server IP Address	0.0.0.0
Port	8000
Sub Device ID	0

At the bottom right, there are 'Apply' and 'Back' buttons.

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the register parameters.

Table 5-67 Register parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the register function.
No.	Select a number.
Server IP Address	Enter the server IP address or the server domain that you want to register to.
Port	Enter the port of the server.
Sub Service ID	This ID is allocated by the server and used for the Device.

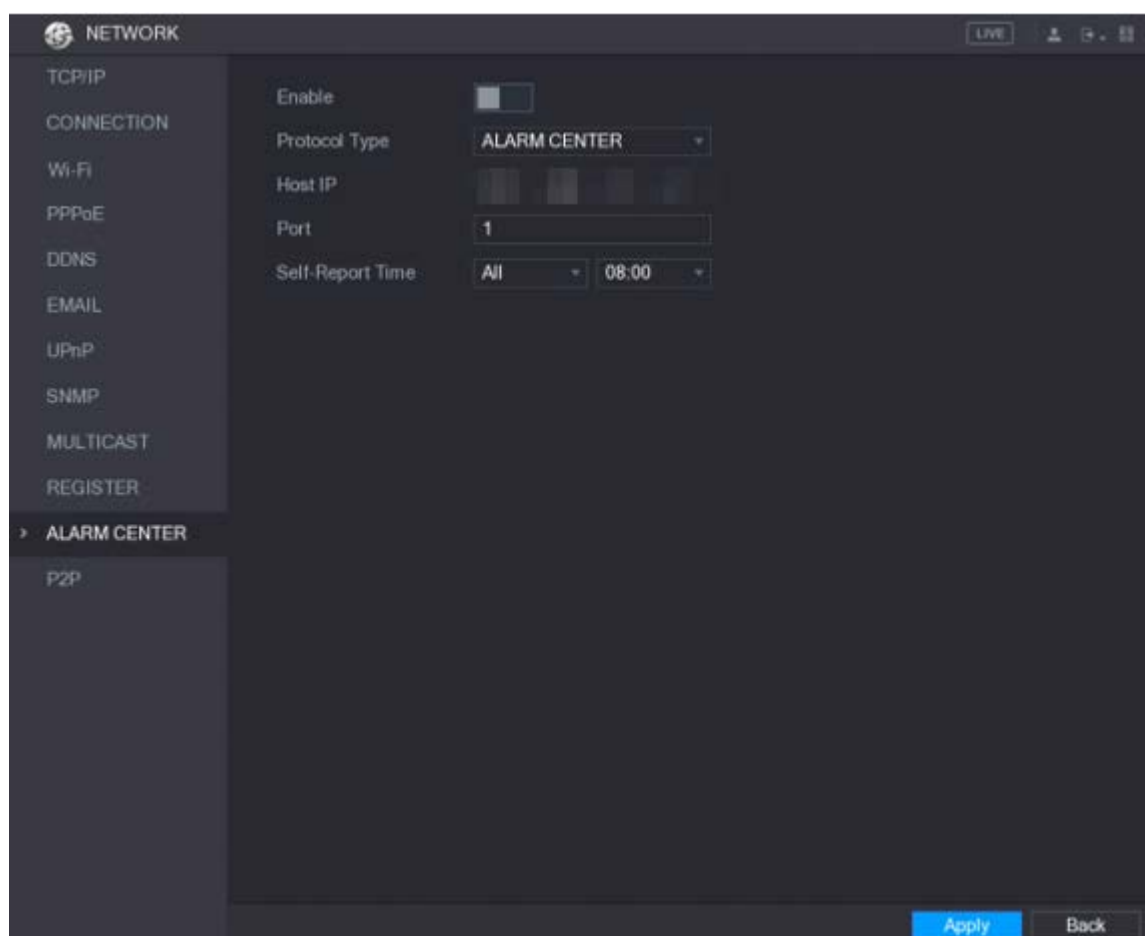
**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.14.1.11 Configuring Alarm Center Settings

You can configure the alarm center server to receive the uploaded alarm information. To use this function, the **Alarm Upload** check box must be selected. For details about alarm event settings, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > NETWORK > ALARM CENTER**.

Figure 5-177 Alarm center



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the alarm center parameters.

Table 5-68 Alarm center parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the alarm center function.
Protocol Type	In the <b>Protocol Type</b> list, select protocol type. The default is <b>ALARM CENTER</b> .
Host IP	The IP address and communication port of the PC installed with alarm client.
Port	
Self-Report Time	In the <b>Self-Report Time</b> list, select time cycle and specific time for uploading alarm.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.14.1.12 Configuring P2P Settings

You can manage the devices by using P2P technology to download the application and register the devices. For details, see "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."

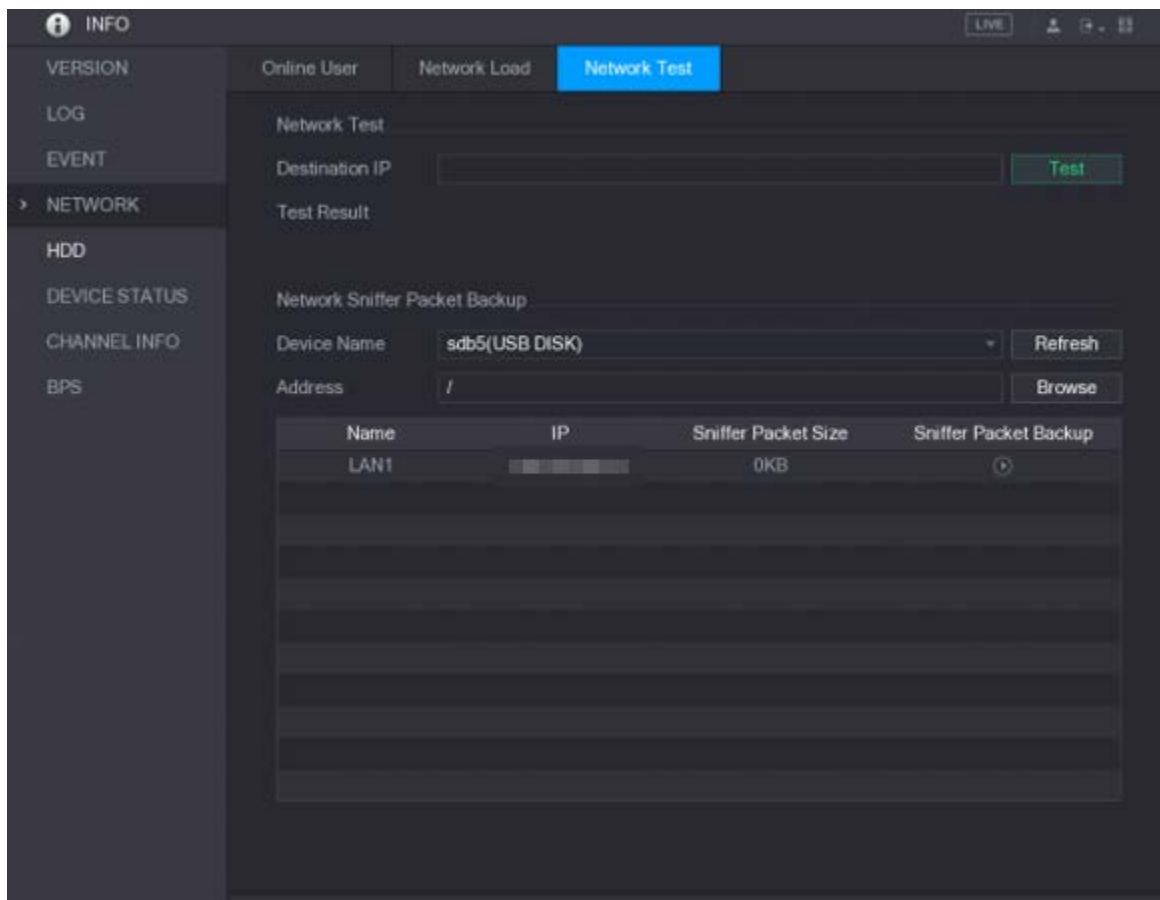
## 5.14.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings

### 5.14.2.1 Testing the Network

You can test the network connection status between the Device and other devices.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Test**.

Figure 5-178 Test



The screenshot displays the 'Network Test' configuration page. On the left is a sidebar menu. The top navigation bar includes 'Online User', 'Network Load', and 'Network Test' (selected). The main content area is divided into sections: 'Network Test' with a 'Destination IP' field and a 'Test' button; 'Test Result'; and 'Network Sniffer Packet Backup' with 'Device Name' (set to 'sdb5(USB DISK)') and 'Address' (set to '/') fields, 'Refresh' and 'Browse' buttons, and a table.

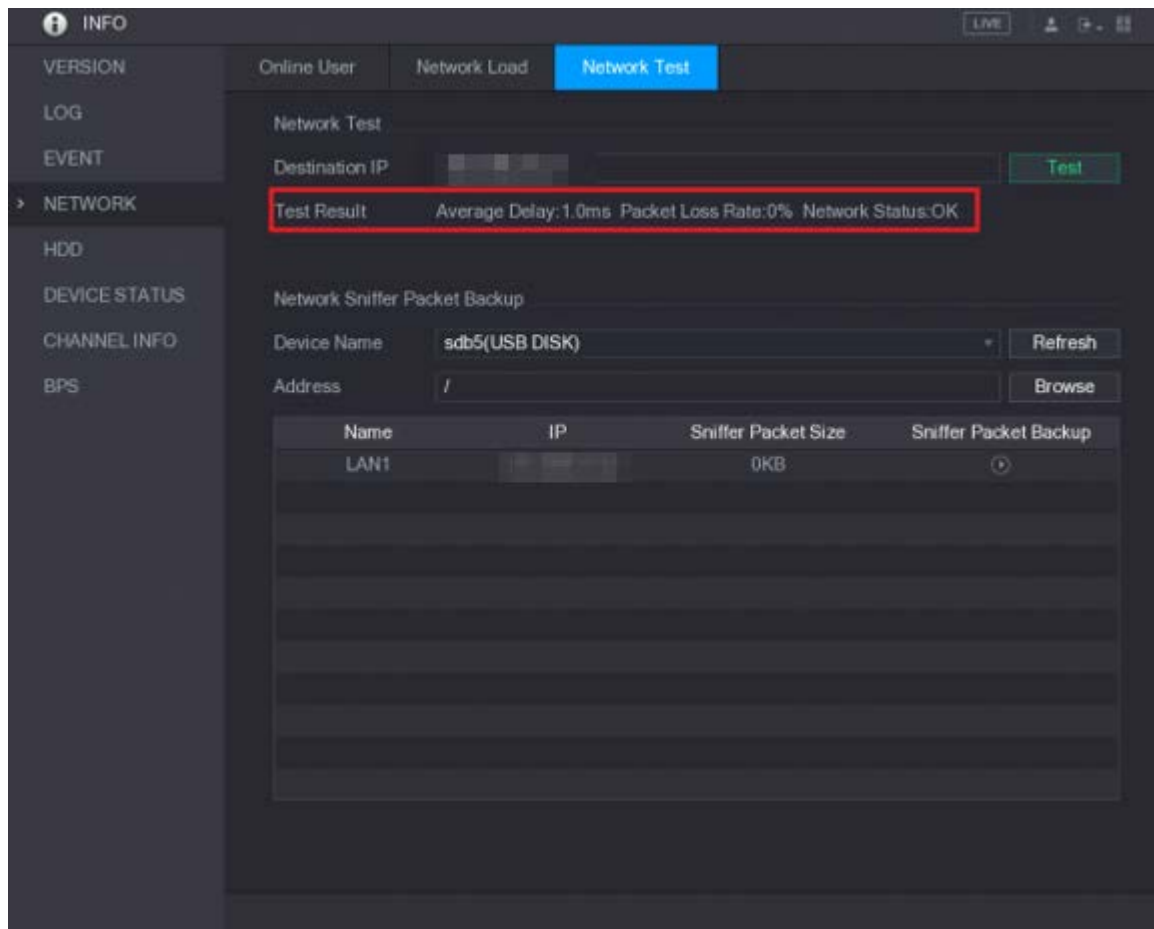
Name	IP	Sniffer Packet Size	Sniffer Packet Backup
LAN1		0KB	

**Step 2** In the **Destination IP** box, enter the IP address.

**Step 3** Click **Test**.

After testing is completed, the test result is displayed. You can check the evaluation for average delay, packet loss, and network status.

Figure 5-179 Test result

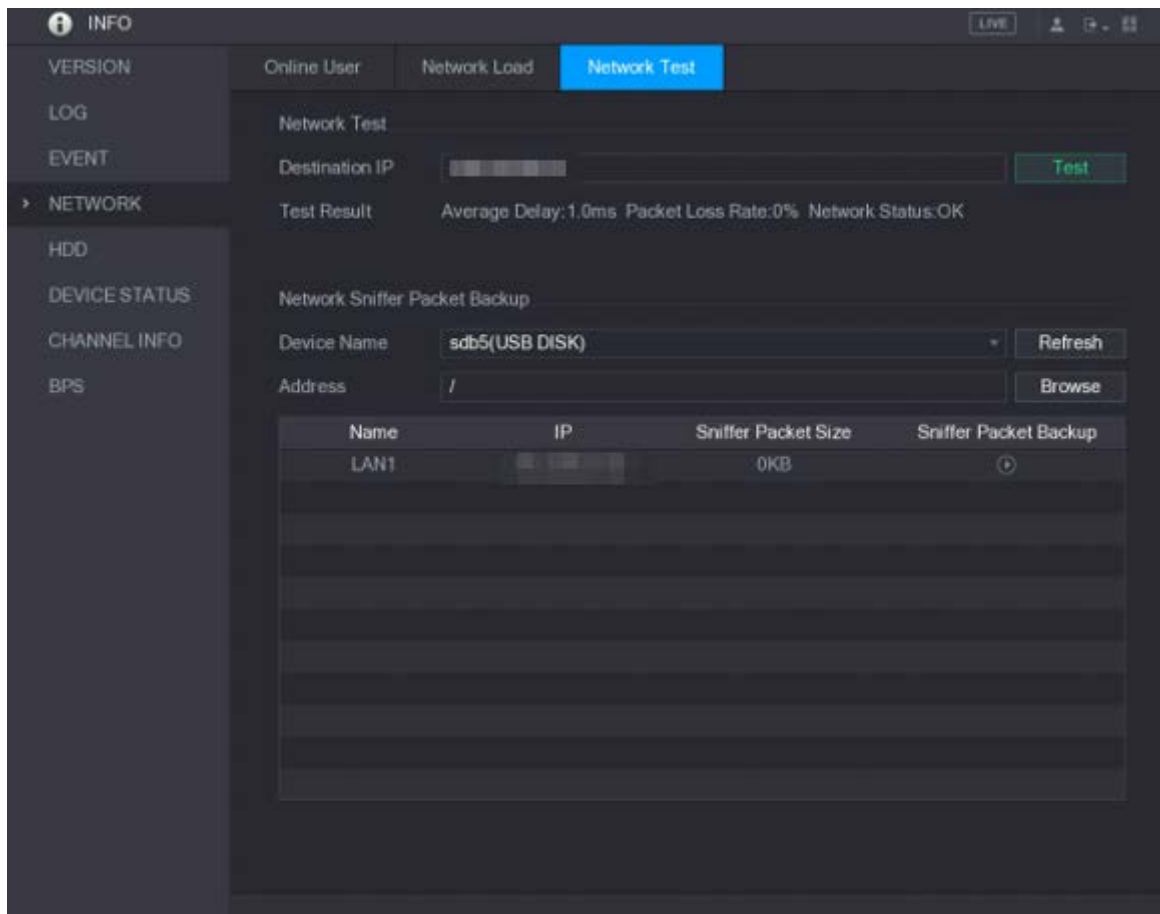


### 5.14.2.2 Capturing Packet and Backing up

Packet capture means the operations such as capturing, resending, and editing data that are sent and received during network transmission. When there is network abnormality, you can perform packet capturing and back up into the USB storage device. This data can be provided to the technical support for analyzing the network condition.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test**.

Figure 5-180 Network test



**Step 2** Connect a USB storage device to the Device.

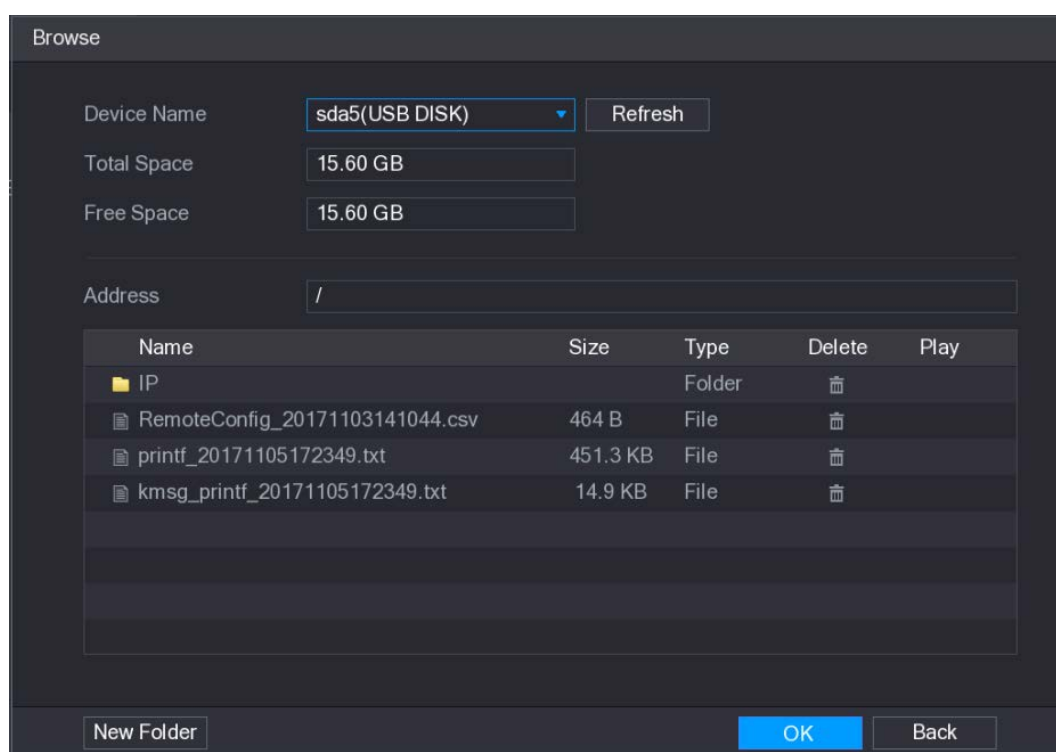
**Step 3** Click **Refresh**.

The Device starts detecting the USB storage device and displays its name in the **Device Name** box.

**Step 4** Select the route of the data that you want to capture and back up.


1) In the Network Sniffer Packet Backup, click **Browse**.

Figure 5-181 Browse



2) Select the route.



- If there are several USB storage devices are connected to the Device, you can select from the **Device Name** list.
- Click **Refresh** to total space, free space and the file list in the selected USB storage device.
- In the case of insufficient capacity, click  to delete the needless files.
- Click **New Folder** to create a new folder in the USB storage device.

3) Click **Apply** to save the route selection settings.

The **Test** interface is displayed again.

**Step 5** Click  to start packet capturing and backing up.



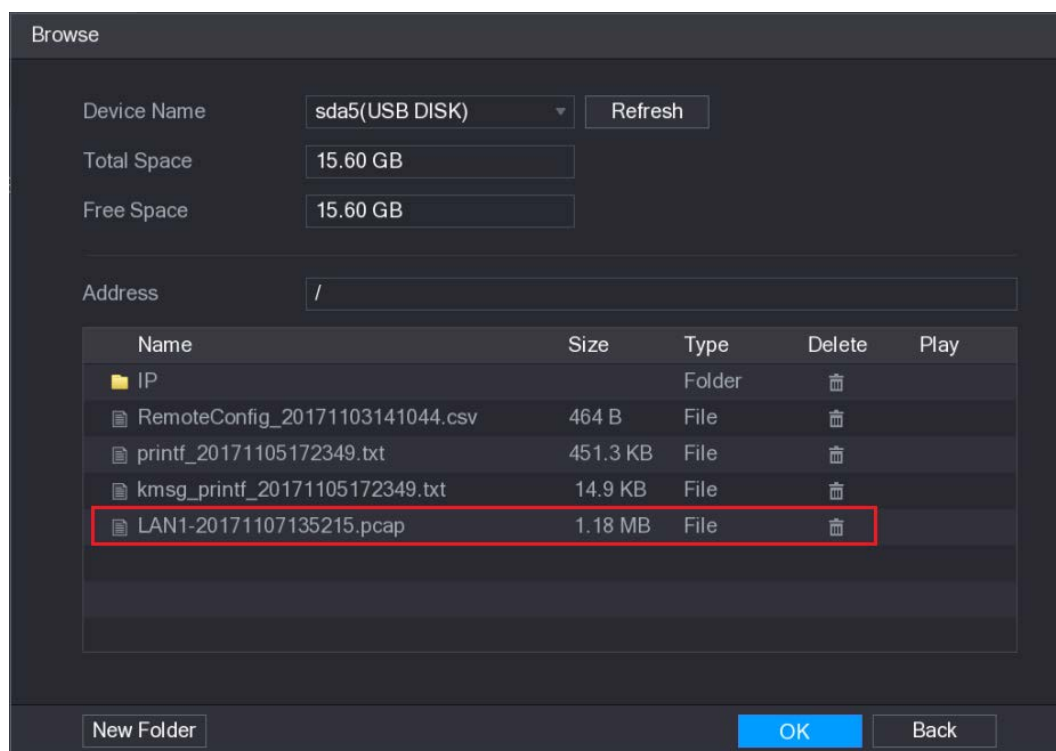
- Only the data packet of one LAN can be captured at one time.
- After capturing starts, you can exit the **Test** interface to perform other operations such as web login and monitoring.

**Step 6** Click  to stop capturing.

The backup data is saved in the selected route under the naming style "LAN name-time.pcap." You can open it by using Wireshark software.



Figure 5-182 Backup data



## 5.15 Configuring Account Settings

You can add, modify and delete user accounts, groups, and ONVIF users, and set security questions for admin account.



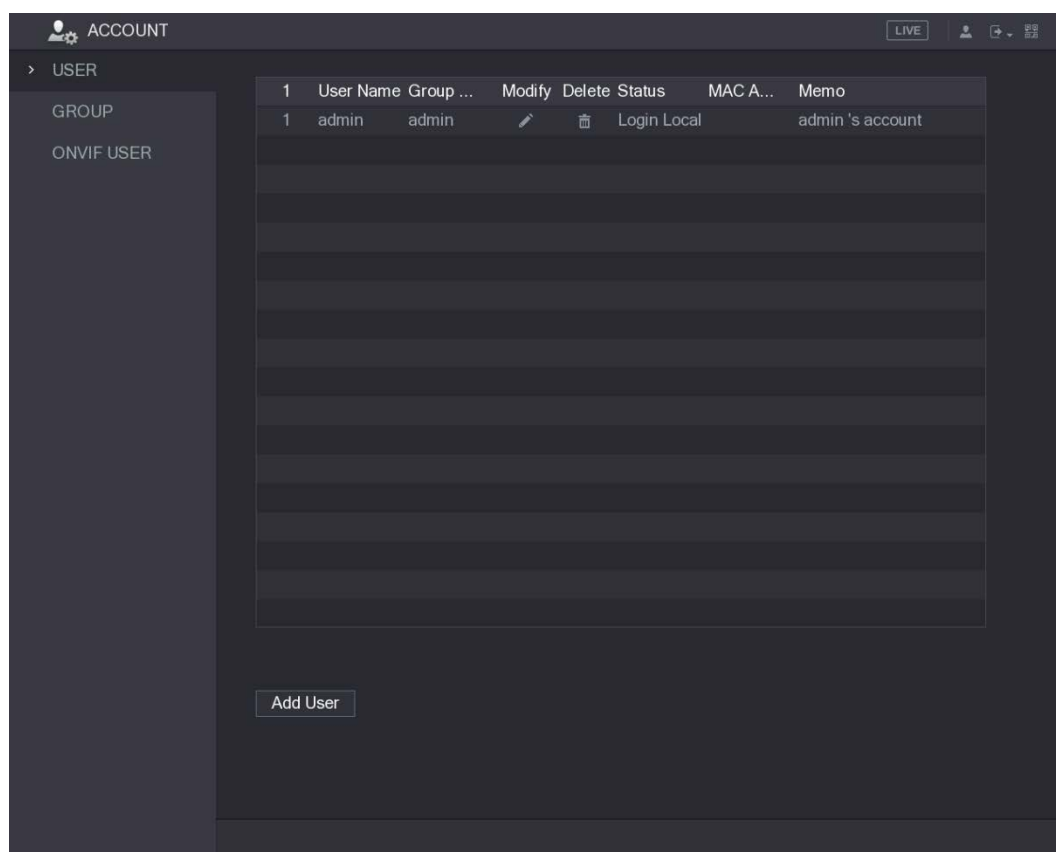
- The user name supports 31 characters and group name supports 15 characters. The user name can be consisted of letter, number, "\_", "@", ".".
- You can set maximum 64 users and 20 groups. The group name by "User" and "Admin" cannot be deleted. You can set other groups and define the relevant permissions. However, the admin account cannot be set randomly.
- You can manage the account by user and group and the name cannot be repeated. Every user must belong to a group, and one user only belongs to one group.

### 5.15.1 Configuring User Account

#### 5.15.1.1 Adding a User Account

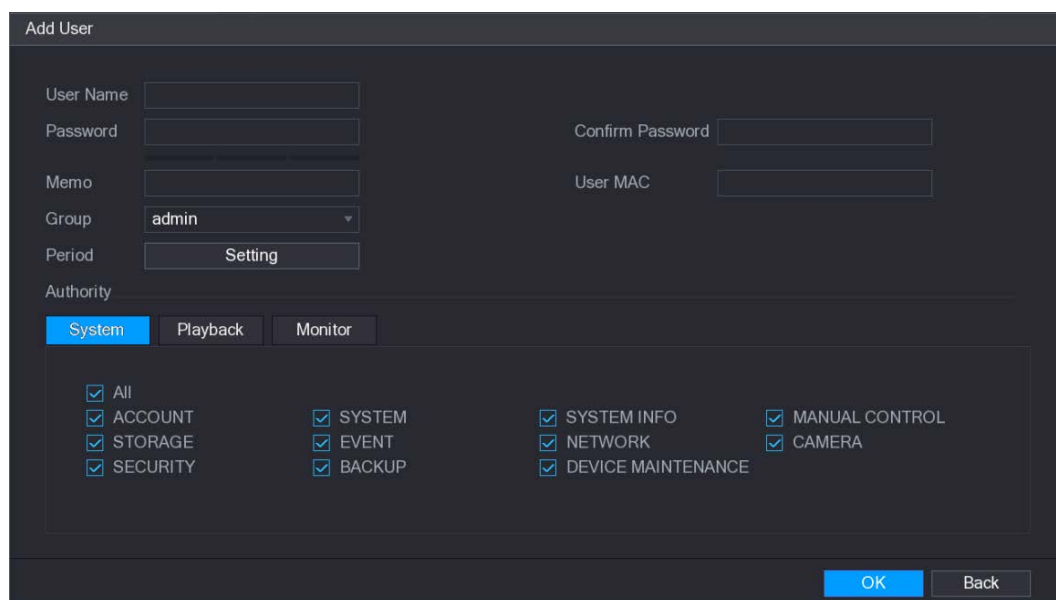
**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER**.

Figure 5-183 User





**Step 2** Click **Add User**.

Figure 5-184 Add user



**Step 3** Configure the settings for the parameters of adding a user account.

Table 5-69 Parameters

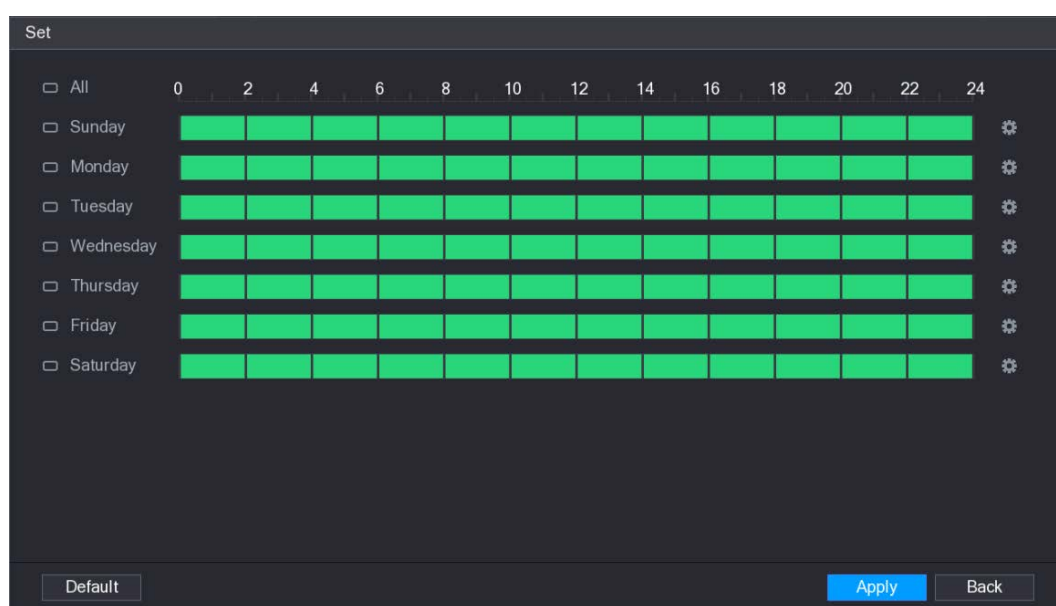
Parameter	Description
User Name	Enter a user name and password for the account.
Password	
Confirm Password	Re-enter the password.
Memo	Optional. Enter a description of the account.
User MAC	Enter user MAC address
Group	Select a group for the account.  The user rights must be within the group permission.
Period	Click <b>Set</b> to display <b>Set</b> interface. Define a period during which the new account can log in to the device. The new account cannot log in to the device during the time beyond the set period.
Authority	In the <b>Authority</b> area, select the check boxes in the <b>System</b> tab, <b>Playback</b> tab, and <b>Monitor</b> tab.  To manage the user account easily, when defining the user account authority, it is recommended not to give the authority to the common user account higher than the advanced user account.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to complete the settings.

## Setting Permitted Period

**Step 1** Next to **Period**, click **Setting**.

Figure 5-185 Setting



**Step 2** Define the permitted period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.







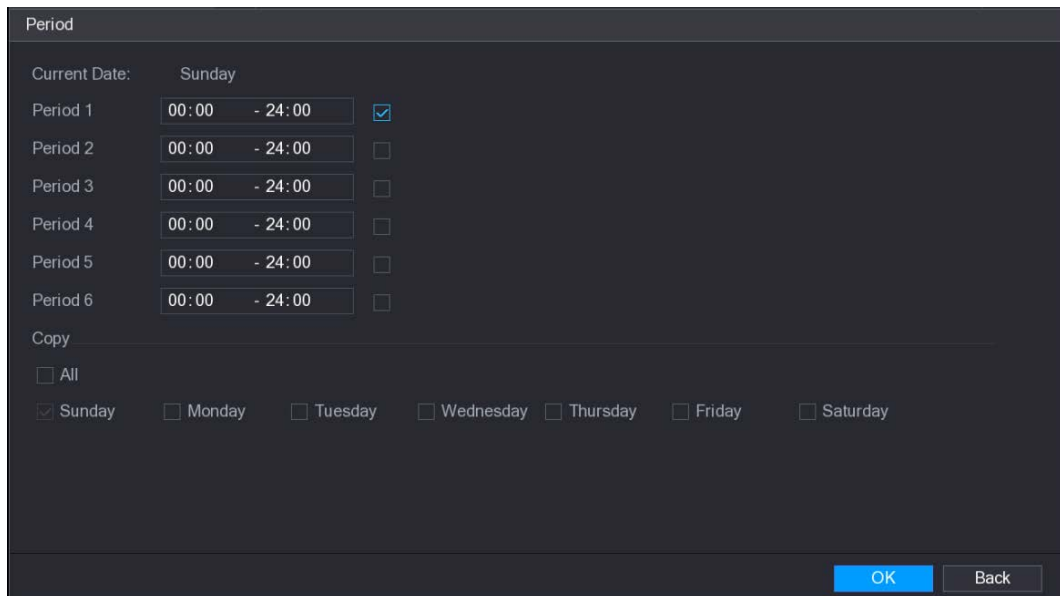
- ◇ Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.
- ◇ Define for several days of a week: Click  before each day, the icon switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days with  will take the same settings.
- ◇ Define for all days of a week: Click **All**, all the  switches to . On the timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.
- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
  - 1) Click .

Figure 5-186 Period



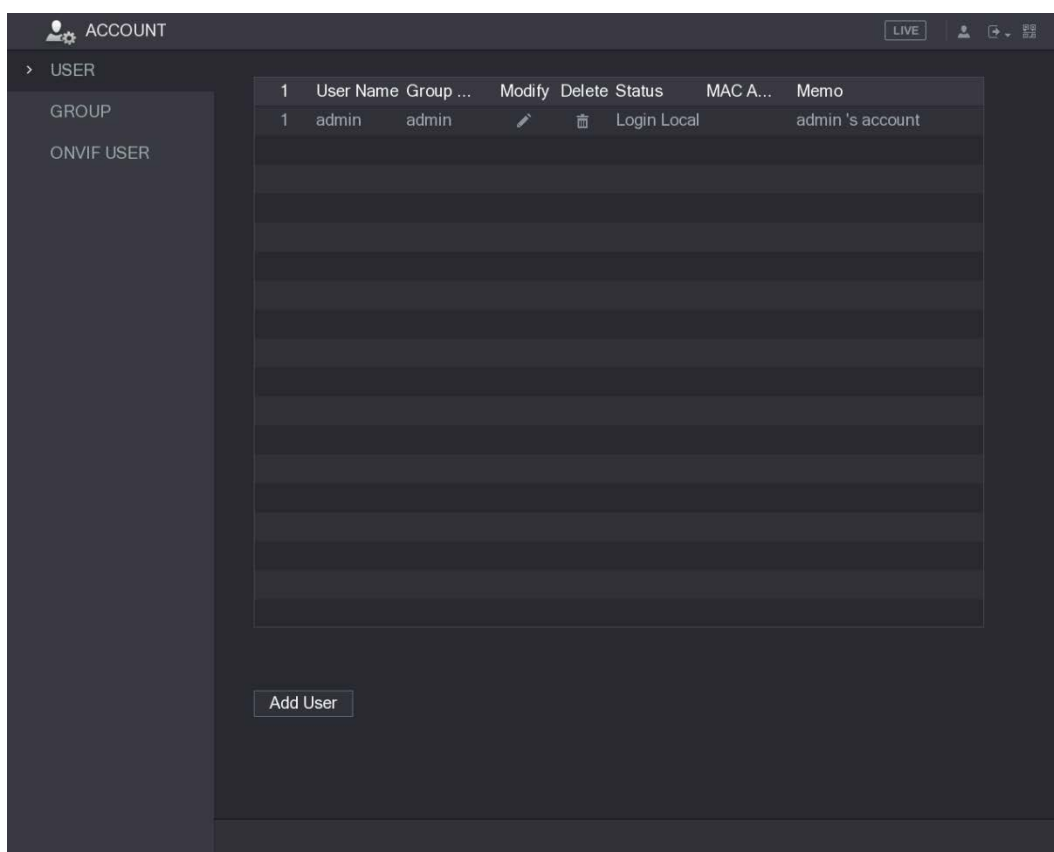
- 2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the check box to enable the settings.
  - ◇ There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ◇ Under **Copy**, select **All** to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

**Step 3** Click **OK**.

## 5.15.1.2 Modify a User Account

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER**.

Figure 5-187 User




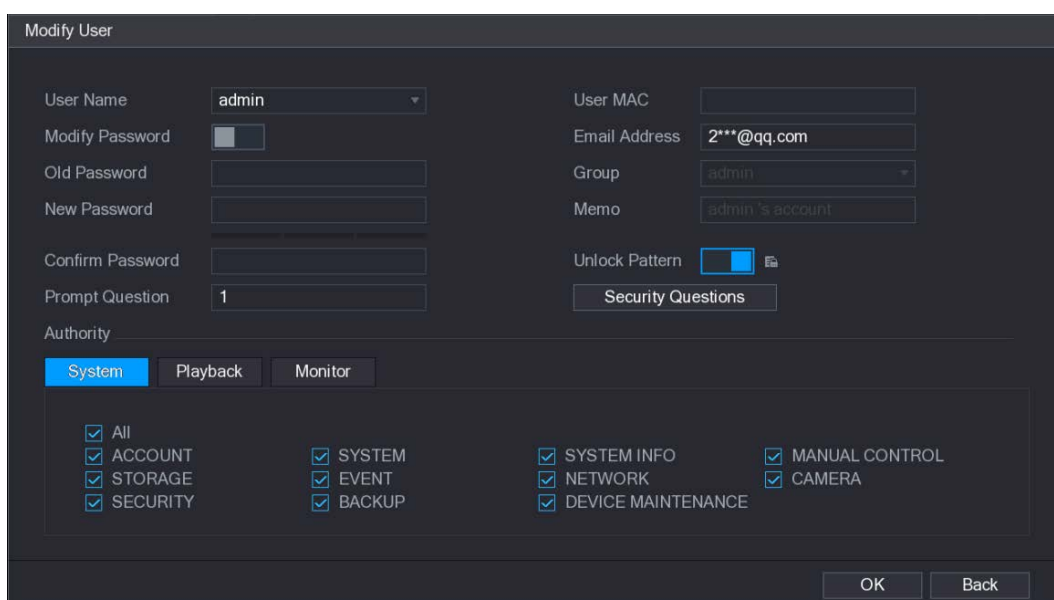
**Step 2** Click  for the user account that you want to modify.

Figure 5-188 Modify user



**Step 3** Change the settings for password, user name, user group, user MAC, memo, period, and authority.



The new password can be set from 8 digits through 32 digits and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding "", "", ",", ":" and "&").

For the admin account, you can enter or modify email address, enable/disable the unlock pattern, modify the security questions.


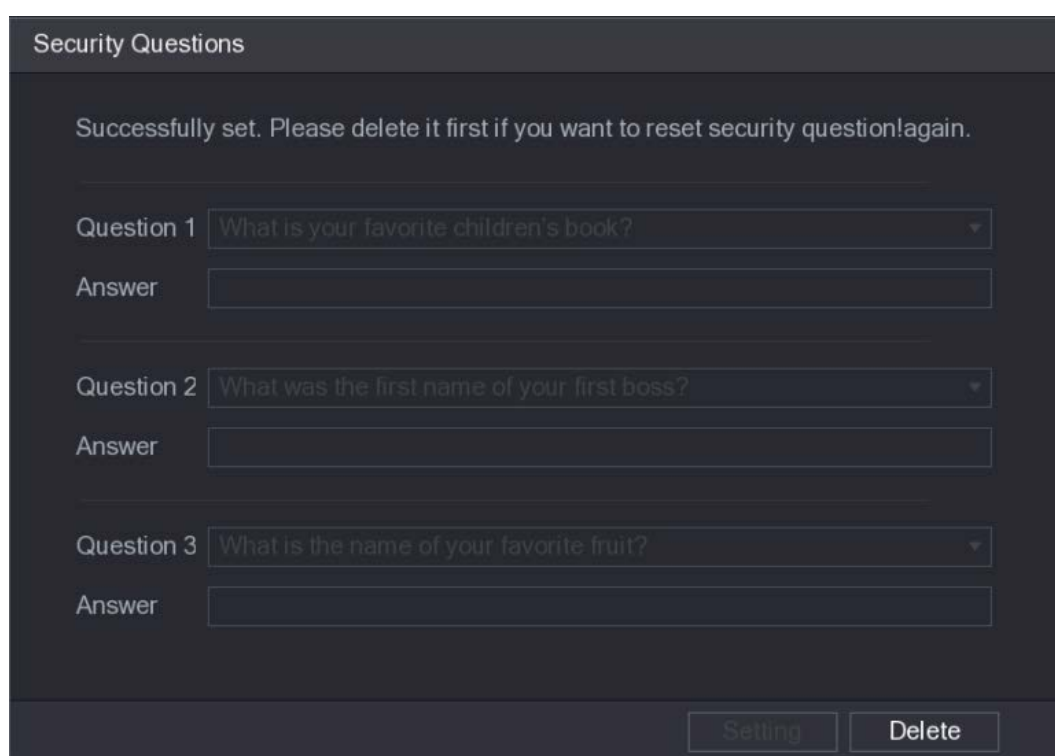
- In the **Email Address** box, enter the email address, and the click **Save** to save the setting.
  - To use the unlock pattern, enable **Unlock Pattern**, click , draw a pattern in the **Unlock Pattern** interface, and then click **Save** to save the setting.
  - Configuring security questions.
- 1) Click Security Questions.

Figure 5-189 Security questions



- 2) In the **Question** list, select questions and enter the answers in the Answer box.
- 3) Click **Setting** to save the settings.
- You can use the security questions and answers to reset the password for admin account.



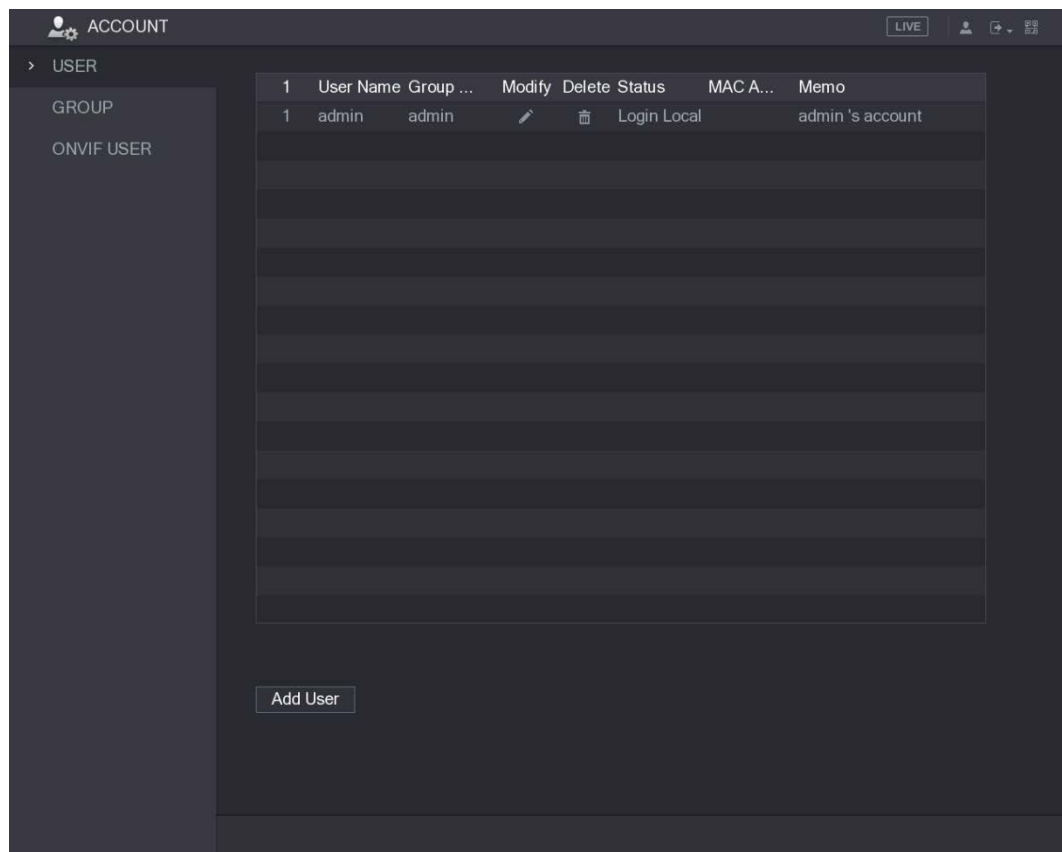
To reset the security questions, on the **Security Questions**, enter the correct answers for each question, and then click **Delete**.


**Step 4** Click **OK** to complete the settings.

### 5.15.1.3 Deleting a User Account

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER**.

Figure 5-190 User



**Step 2** Click  for the user account that you want to delete.

A **Message** is displayed.

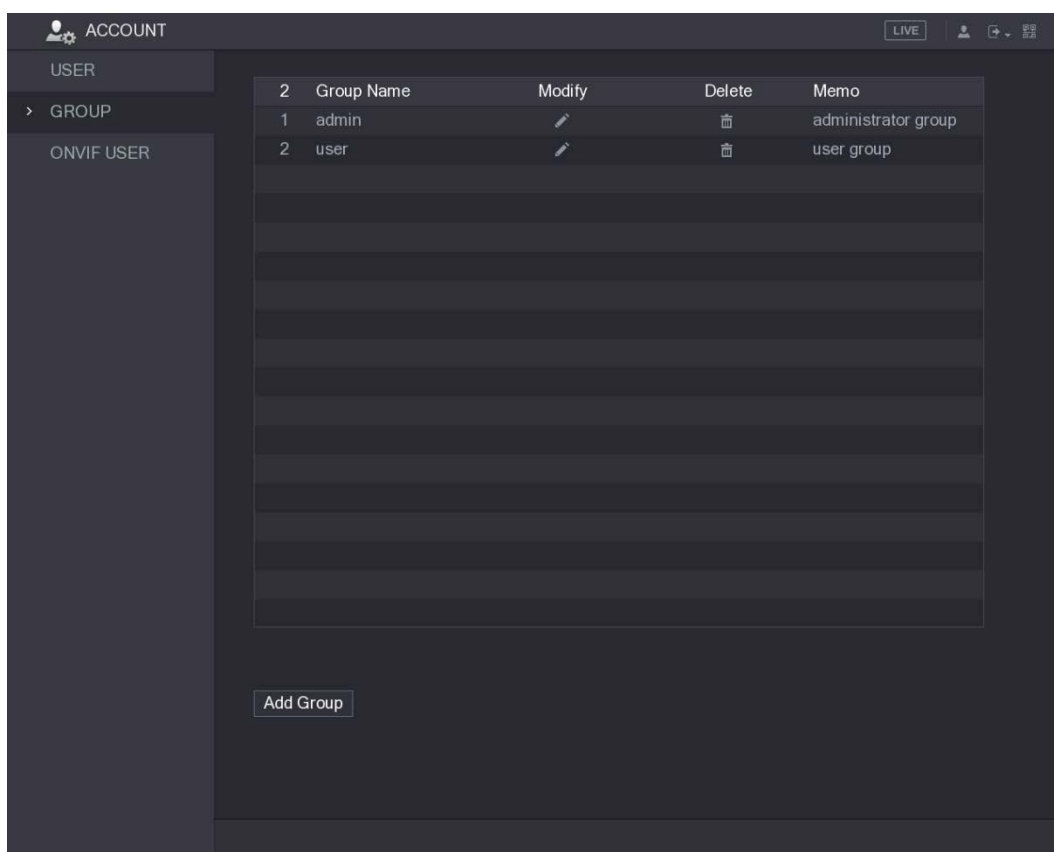
**Step 3** Click **OK** to delete a user account.

## 5.15.2 Configuring Group Account

### 5.15.2.1 Adding a Group

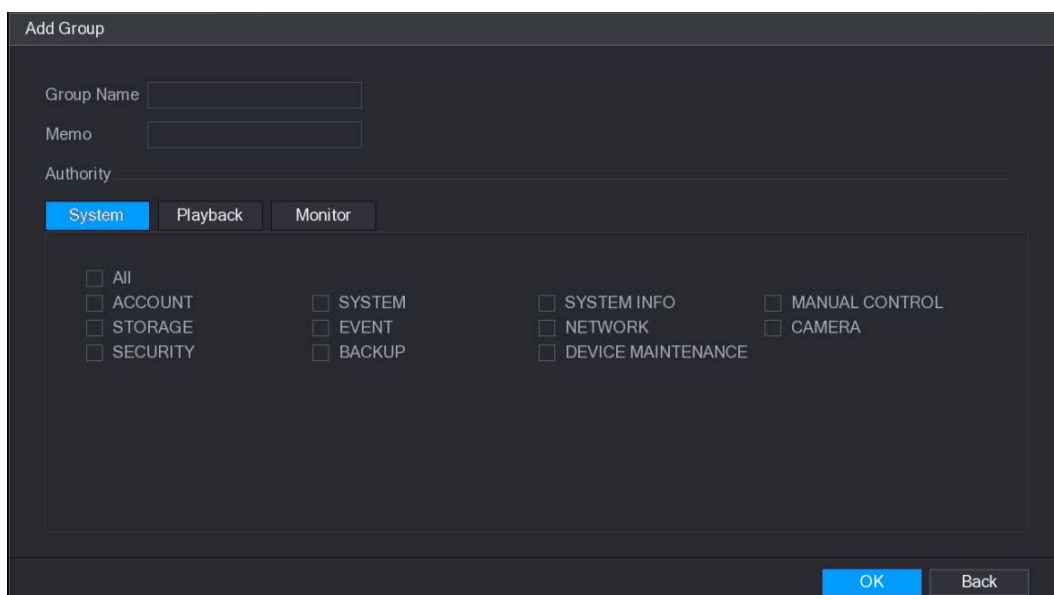
**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP**.

Figure 5-191 Group



**Step 2** Click **Add Group**.

Figure 5-192 Add group



**Step 3** Configure the settings for the parameters of adding a group.

Table 5-70 Parameters

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Enter a name for the group.



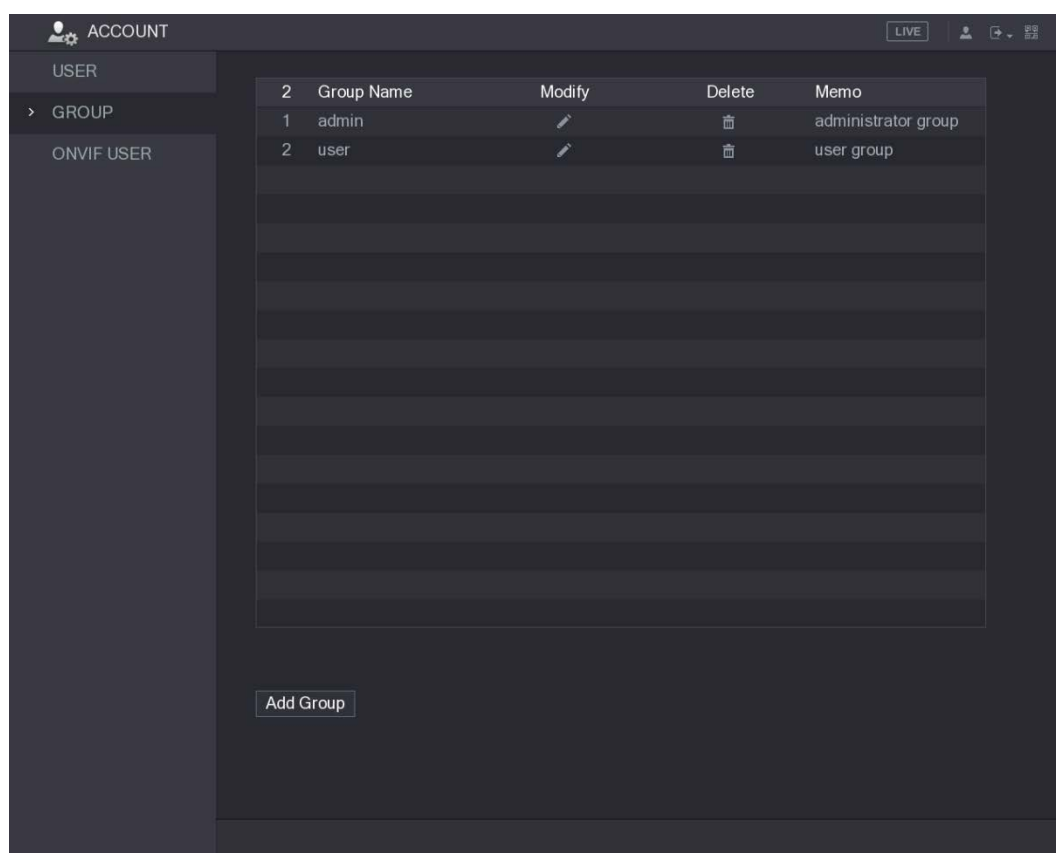
Parameter	Description
Memo	Optional. Enter a description of the account.
Authority	In the <b>Authority</b> area, select the check boxes in the <b>System</b> tab, <b>Playback</b> tab, and <b>Monitor</b> tab.


**Step 4** Click **OK** to complete the settings.

## 5.15.2.2 Modifying a Group


**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > GROUP**.

Figure 5-193 Group



**Step 2** Click  for the group account that you want to modify.



**Step 2** Click  for the user account that you want to delete.

A **Message** is displayed.

**Step 3** Click **OK** to delete a group.

## 5.15.3 Configuring ONVIF Users

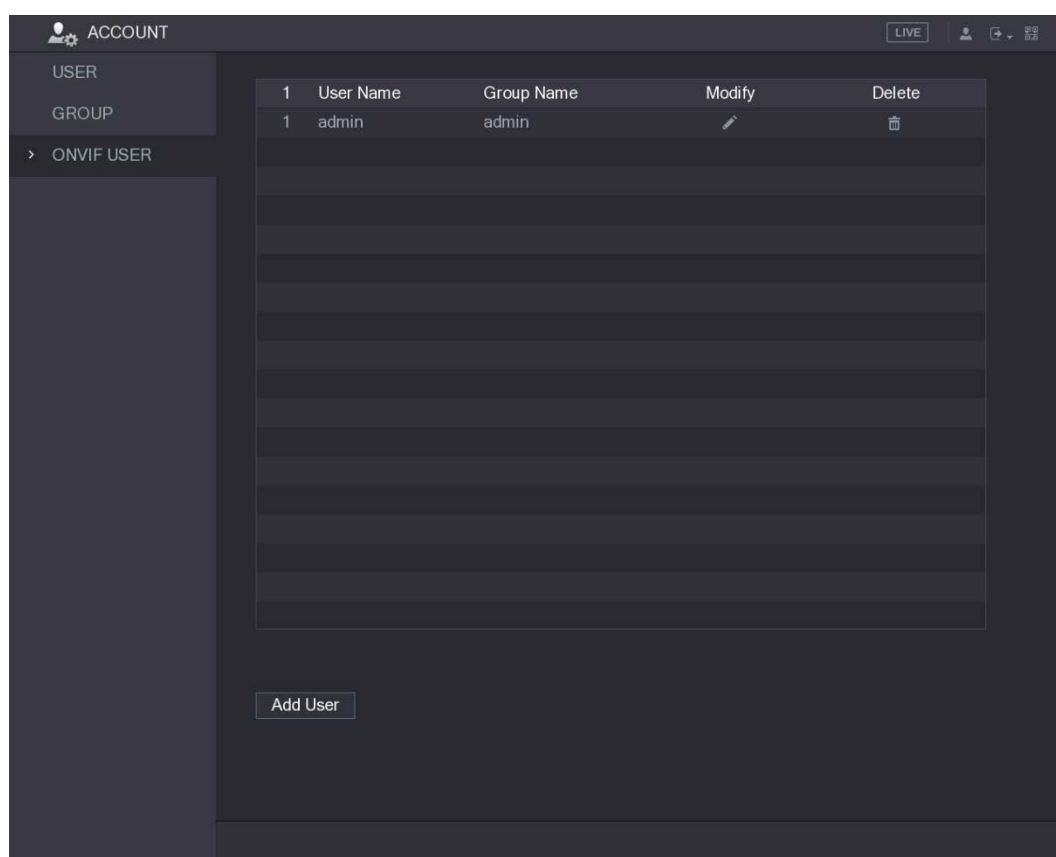
The device manufactured by other company can connect to the Device through ONVIF protocol by an authorized ONVIF account.



The admin account is created for ONVIF users right after the Device has been initialized

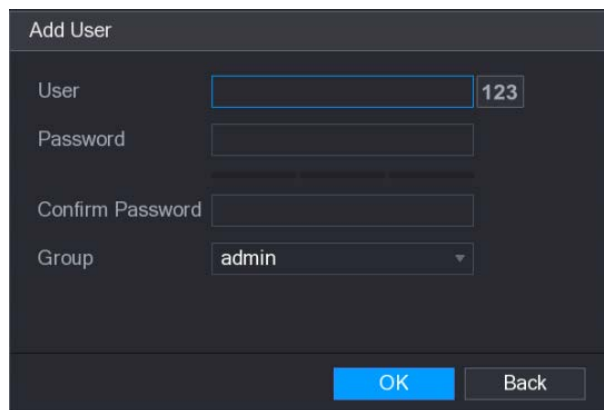
**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > ONVIF USER**.

Figure 5-196 ONVIF user



**Step 2** Click **Add User**.



Figure 5-197 Add user



**Step 3** Enter user name, password, and select the group that you want this account to belong to.

**Step 4** Click **OK** to save the settings.



Click  to modify the account; Click  to delete the account.

## 5.16 Audio Management

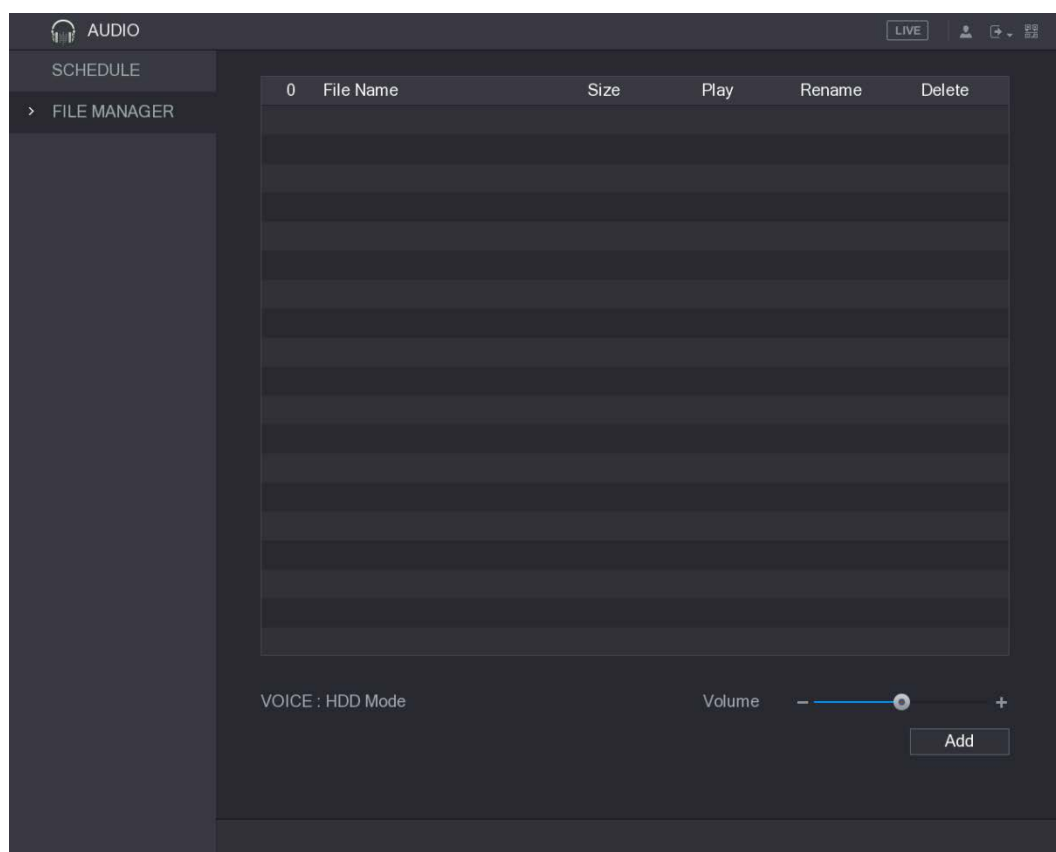
Audio management function manages audio files and configures the playing schedule. When there is an alarm event, the audio file can be activated.

### 5.16.1 Configuring Audio Files

You can add audio files, listen to audio files, rename and delete audio files, and configure the audio volume.

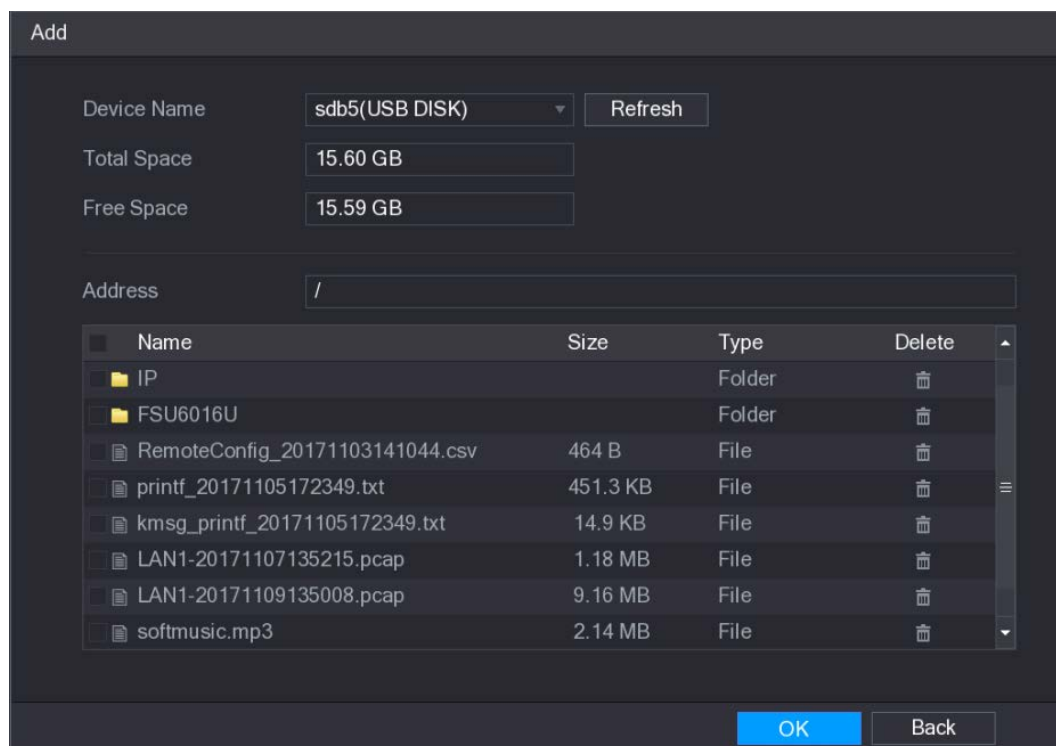
**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > AUDIO > FILE MANAGER**.

Figure 5-198 File manager



**Step 2** Click **Add**.

Figure 5-199 Add

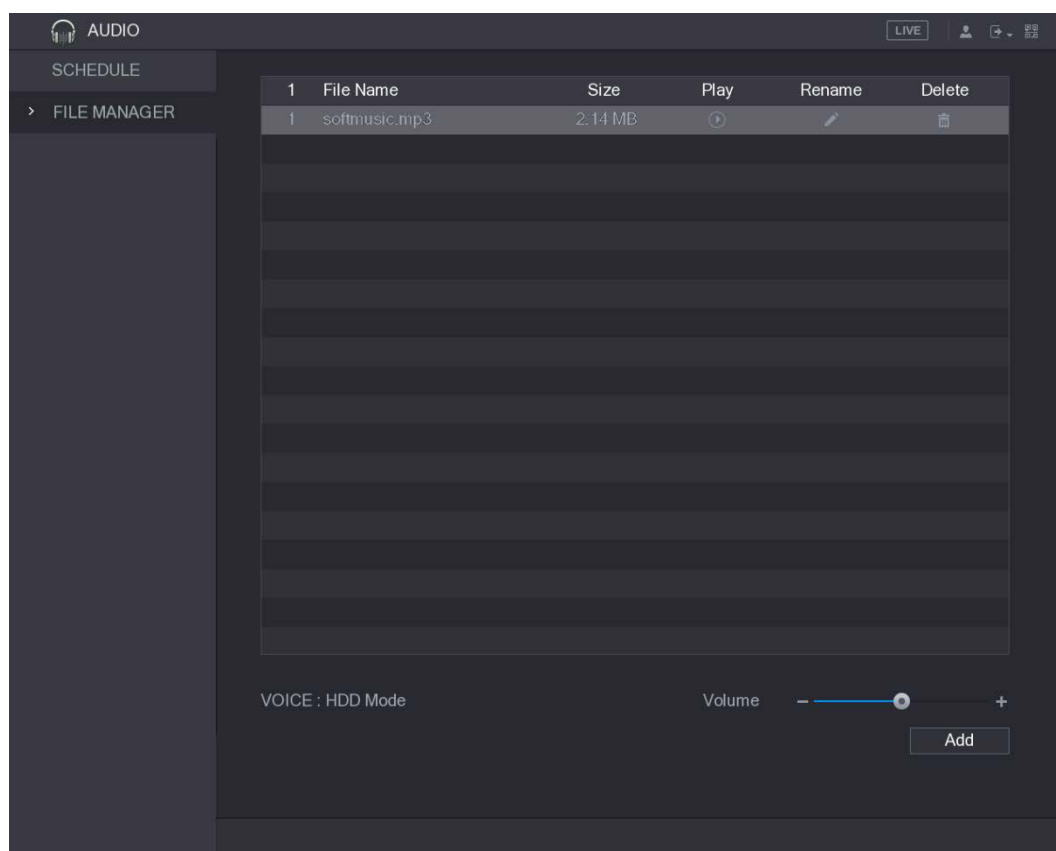


**Step 3** Select the audio files that you want to import.




**Step 4** Click **OK** to start importing audio files from the USB storage device.

If the importing is successful, the audio files will display in the **FILE MANAGER** interface.

Figure 5-200 File manager



The imported audio files are automatically saved into the HDD, so you do not need to connect to the USB storage device to get the file next time.

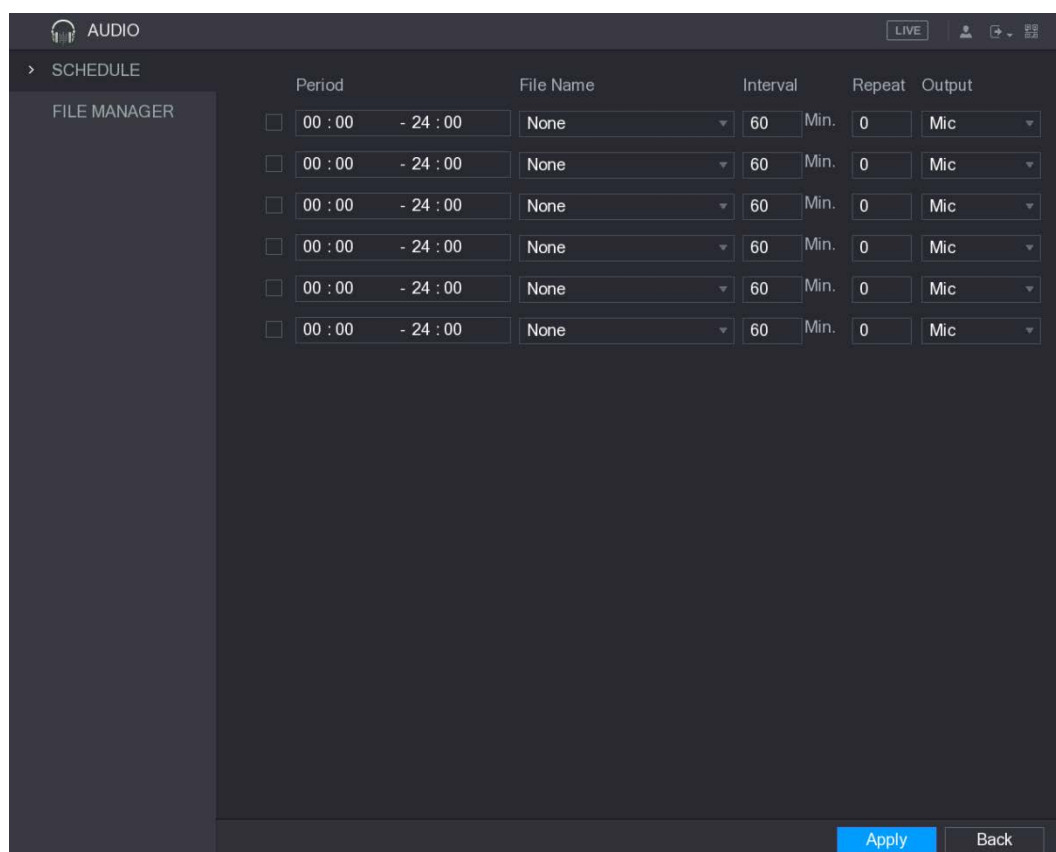
- Click  to play the audio file.
- Click  to rename the audio file.
- Click  to delete the audio file.
- To decrease or increase the playing volume, move the slider to the left or to the right.

## 5.16.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files

You can configure the settings to play the audio files during the defined time period.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > AUDIO > SCHEDULE**.

Figure 5-201 Schedule



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the schedule parameters.

Figure 5-202 Schedule parameters

Parameter	Description
Period	In the <b>Period</b> box, enter the time. Select the check box to enable the settings. You can configure up to six periods.
File Name	In the <b>File Name</b> list, select the audio file that you want to play for this configured period.
Interval	In the <b>Interval</b> box, enter the time in minutes for how often you want to repeat the playing.
Repeat	Configure how many times you want to repeat the playing in the defined period.
Output	Includes two options: MIC and Audio. It is MIC by default. The MIC function shares the same port with talkback function and the latter has the priority.



- The finish time for audio playing is decided by audio file size and the configured interval.
- Playing priority: Alarm event > Talkback > Trial listening > Audio file.

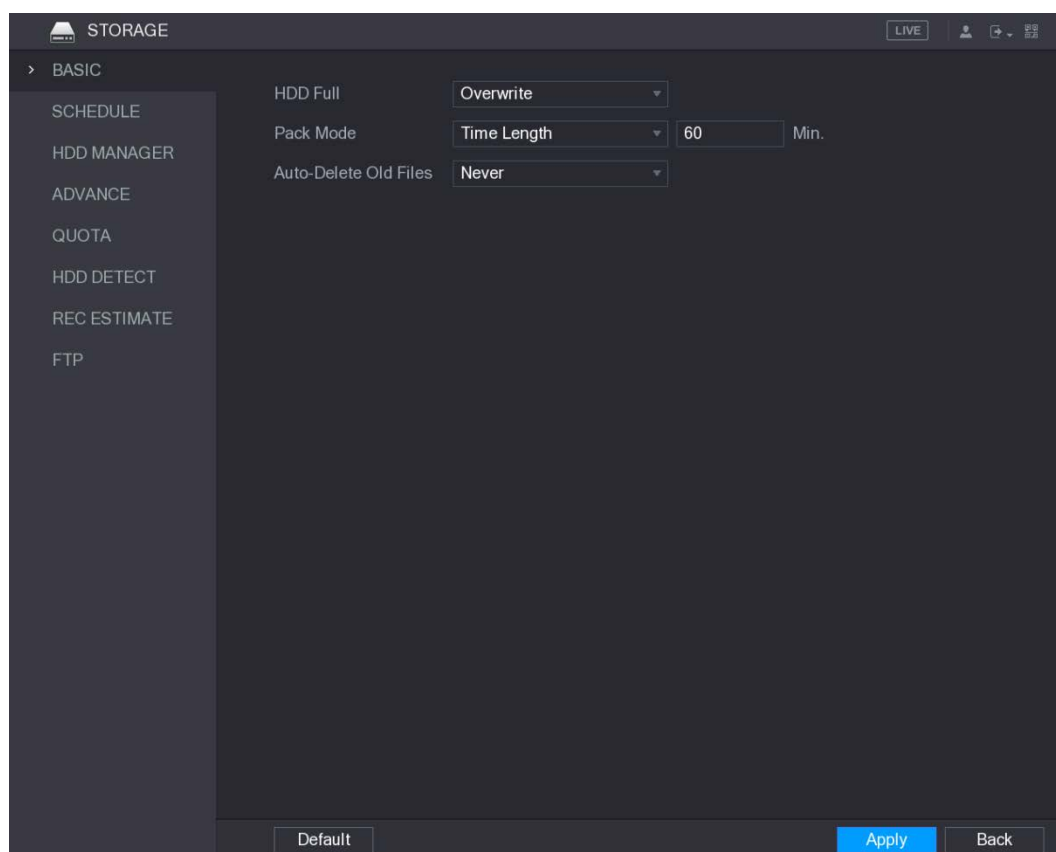
## 5.17 Storage Management

Storage management function manages the stored resources such as recorded video files and storage space. The function aims at providing easier operation and improving the storage efficiency.

### 5.17.1 Configuring Basic Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > BASIC**.

Figure 5-203 Basic settings



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the basic settings parameters.

Table 5-71 Basic settings parameters

Parameter	Description
HDD Full	Configure the settings for the situation all the read/write discs are full, and there is no more free disc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>Stop Record</b> to stop recording</li> <li>Select <b>Overwrite</b> to overwrite the recorded video files always from the earliest time.</li> </ul>
Pack Mode	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.
Auto-Delete Old Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, configure the N days.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.



## 5.17.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule

The system starts recording and taking snapshot according to the configured schedule. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule"

## 5.17.3 Configuring HDD Manager

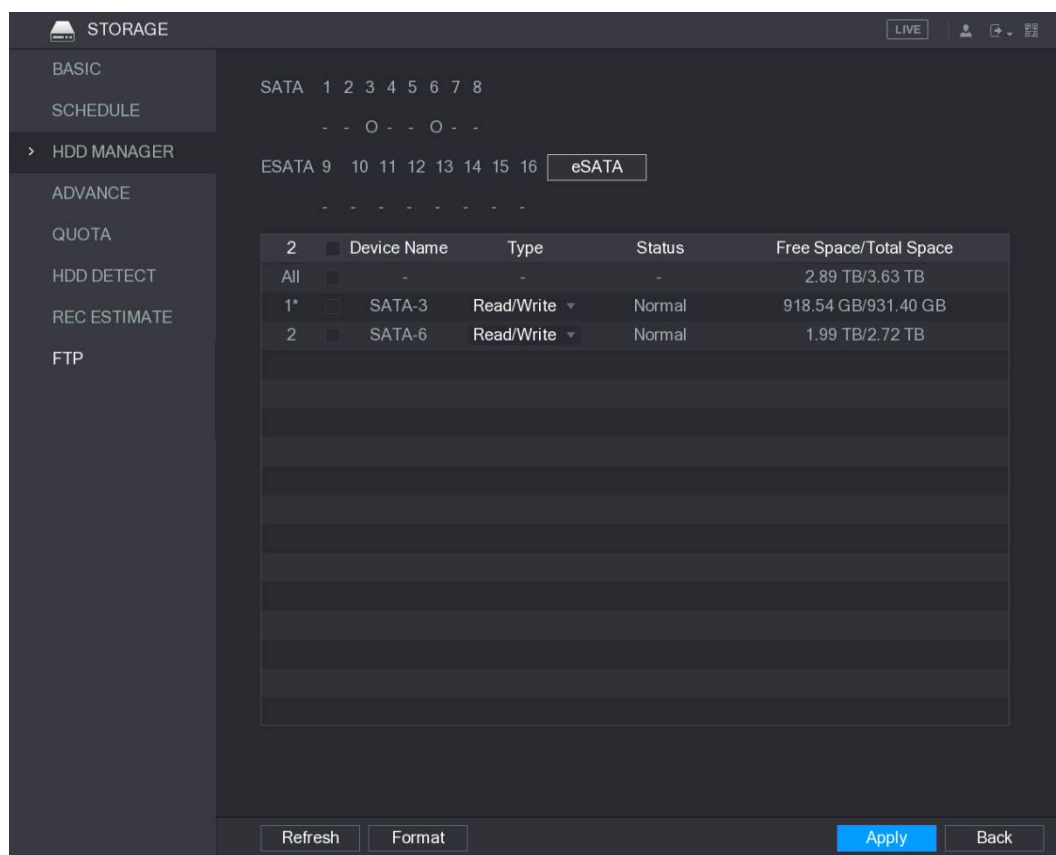
You can view the HDD information, format HDD, and configure the HDD type through HDD manager.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD MANAGER**.

The **HDD MANAGER** interface is displayed.

In the table, you can view the information of current HDD, such as device name, HDD type, status, total space and free space, and serial number of the HDD port.

Figure 5-204 HDD manager



**Step 2** Configuring the settings for the HDD manager.

- HDD type setting: In the **Type** list, select **Read/Write**, **Read-Only** or **Redundant**, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.
- HDD format: Select the HDD that you want to format, click **Format**, in the pop-up message, click **OK** to start formatting, and then following the onscreen message to complete formatting.

## 5.17.4 Configuring HDD Group

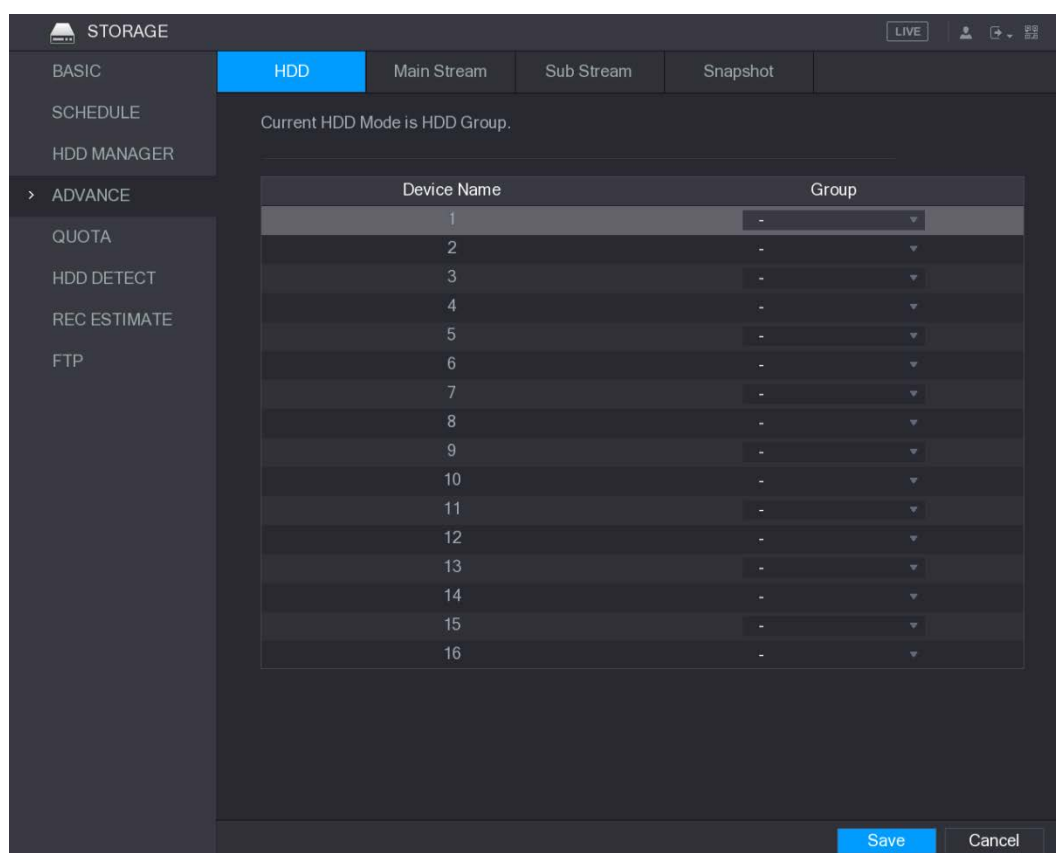
You can configure the HDD group to save the specified main stream, sub stream and snapshots to the designated HDD group.



- If "Current HDD Mode is Quota Mode" is shown on the interface, you need to switch to HDD mode.
- You can enable either HDD Mode or Quota Mode at one time. The system reboots to activate the settings.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > ADVANCE**.

Figure 5-205 Advance



**Step 2** Select the group for each HDD group, and then click **Save** to save the settings.

**Step 3** After configuring HDD group, under the **Main Stream** tab, **Sub Stream** tab and **Snapshot** tab, configure settings to save the main stream, sub stream and snapshot to different HDD group as selected by you.

Figure 5-206 Main stream

STORAGE

BASIC

SCHEDULE

HDD MANAGER

ADVANCE

QUOTA

HDD DETECT

REC ESTIMATE

FTP

HDD

Main Stream

Sub Stream

Snapshot

LIVE

Current HDD Mode is HDD Group.

Set All Channels 

1

All

Channel	Group	Channel	Group	Channel	Group	Channel	Group
1	<div>1</div>	2	<div>1</div>	3	<div>1</div>	4	<div>1</div>
5	<div>1</div>	6	<div>1</div>	7	<div>1</div>	8	<div>1</div>
9	<div>1</div>	10	<div>1</div>	11	<div>1</div>	12	<div>1</div>
13	<div>1</div>	14	<div>1</div>	15	<div>1</div>	16	<div>1</div>

Apply

Cancel

Figure 5-207 Sub stream

STORAGE

BASIC

SCHEDULE

HDD MANAGER

ADVANCE

QUOTA

HDD DETECT

REC ESTIMATE

FTP

HDD

Main Stream

Sub Stream

Snapshot

LIVE

Current HDD Mode is HDD Group.

Set All Channels 

1

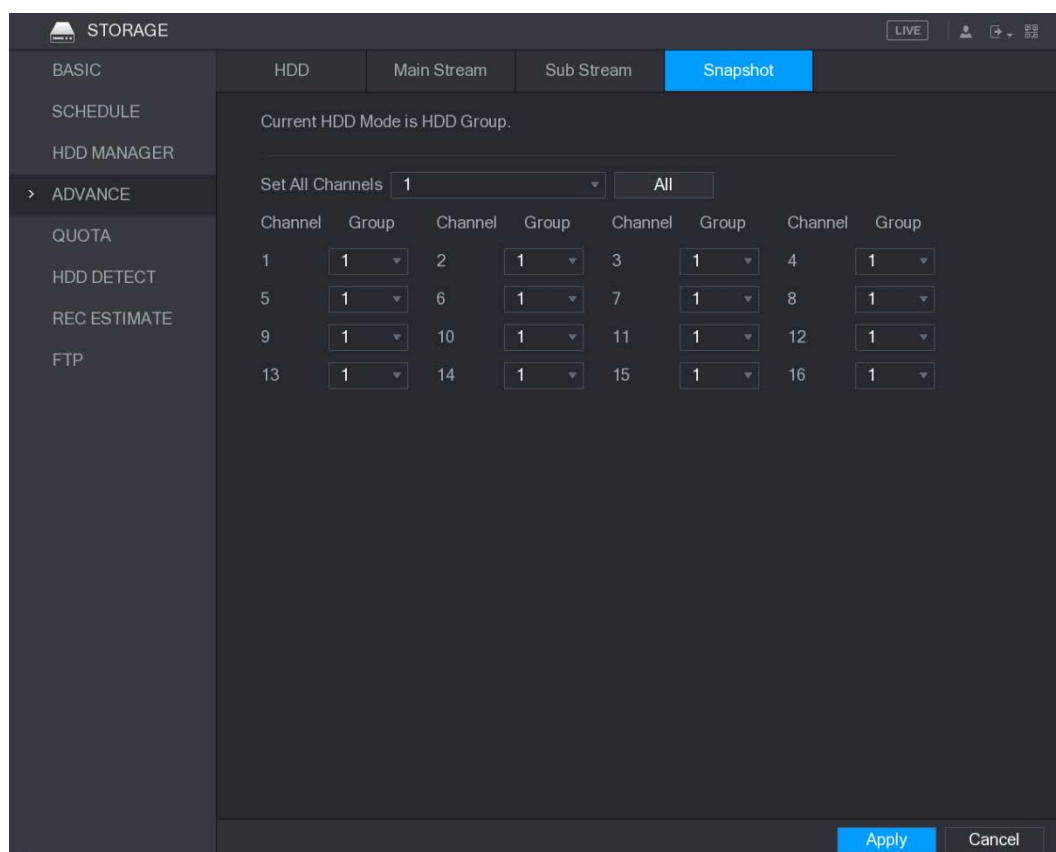
All

Channel	Group	Channel	Group	Channel	Group	Channel	Group
1	<div>1</div>	2	<div>1</div>	3	<div>1</div>	4	<div>1</div>
5	<div>1</div>	6	<div>1</div>	7	<div>1</div>	8	<div>1</div>
9	<div>1</div>	10	<div>1</div>	11	<div>1</div>	12	<div>1</div>
13	<div>1</div>	14	<div>1</div>	15	<div>1</div>	16	<div>1</div>

Apply

Cancel

Figure 5-208 Snapshot



**Step 4** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.17.5 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings



Not all models support this function.

HDD detecting function detects the current status of HDD to let you know the HDD performance and replace the defective HDD.

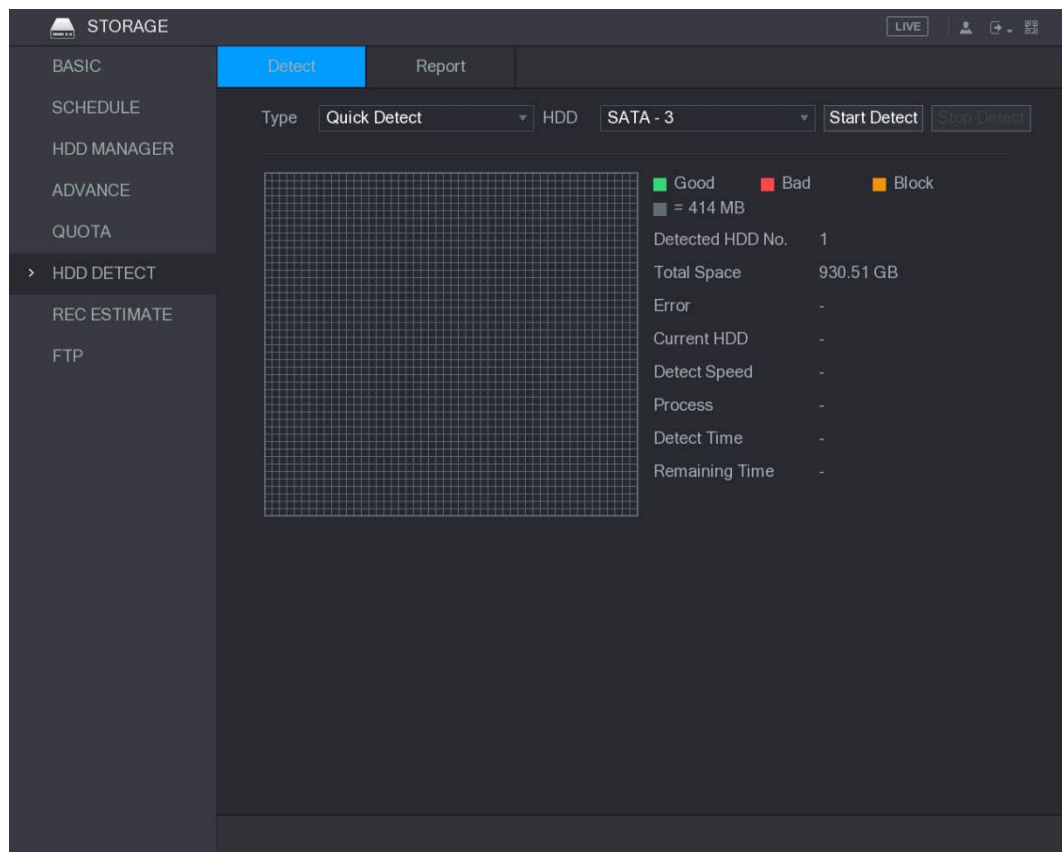
### 5.17.5.1 Detecting HDD

You can detect HDD by quick detect and global detect.

- Quick detect: Detect the files saved in HDD. The detected bad track can be repaired by formatting. If there are no files in HDD, the system cannot detect the bad track.
- Global detect: Detect the whole HDD through Windows, which takes time and might affect the HDD that is recording the video.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Detect**.

Figure 5-209 Detect



**Step 2** In the **Type** list, select **Quick Detect** or **Global Detect**; and in the **HDD** list, select the HDD that you want to detect.

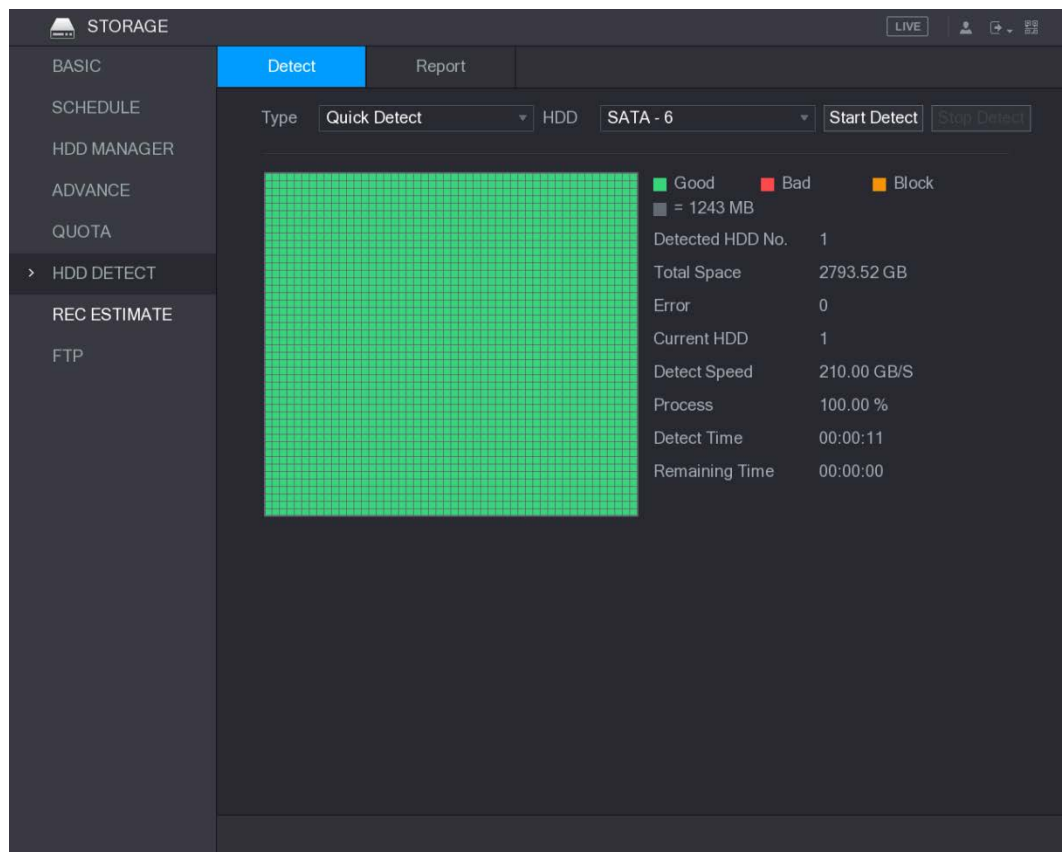
**Step 3** Click **Start Detect**.

The system starts detecting the HDD.



During detecting, click **Pause** to pause detecting, click **Continue** to restart detecting, and click **Stop Detect** to stop detecting.

Figure 5-210 Detection result

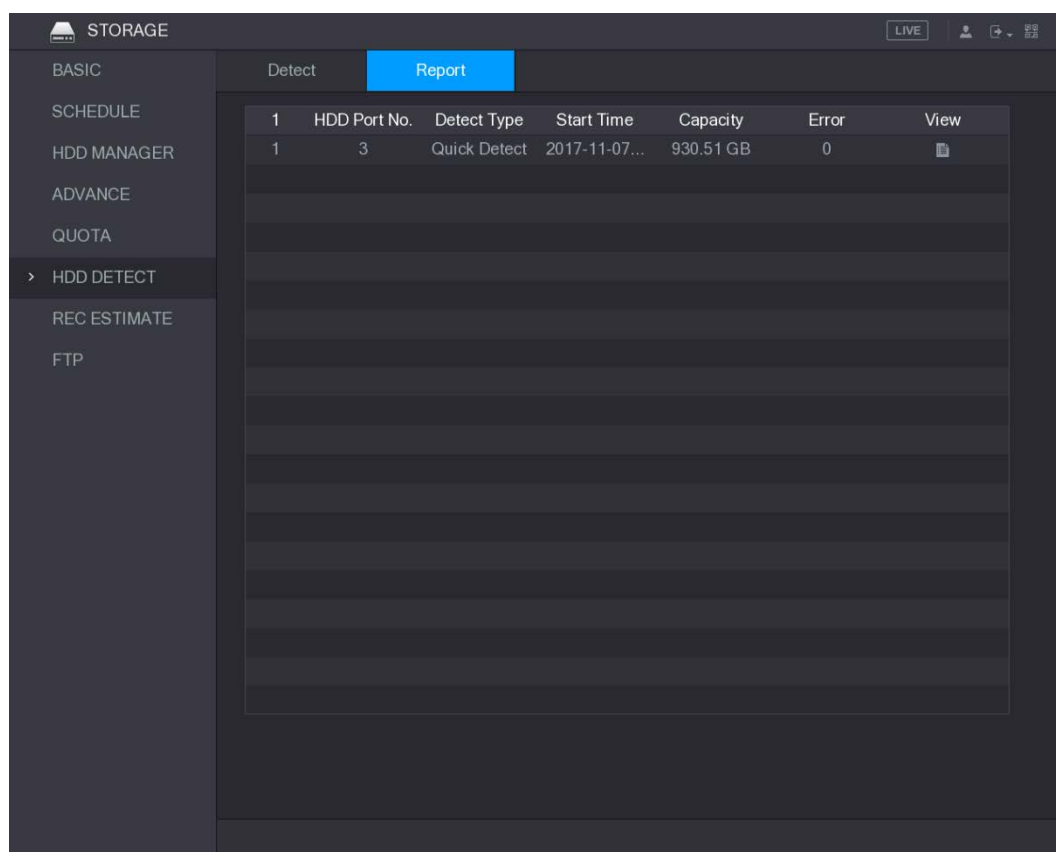


### 5.17.5.2 View Detecting Results

After the detecting is completed, you can view the detecting reports to find out the problem and replace the defective HDD to avoid data loss.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > HDD DETECT > Report**.

Figure 5-211 Report



**Step 2** Click .

The **Details** interface is displayed. You can view detecting results and S.M.A.R.T reports.

Figure 5-212 Details

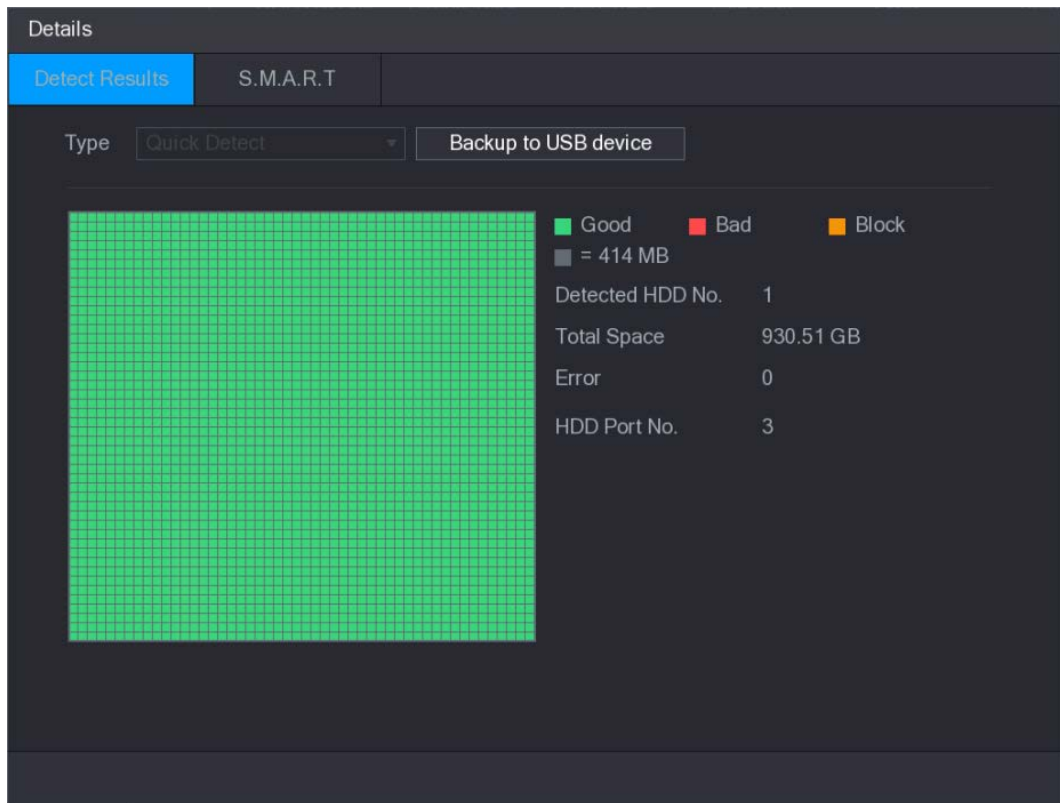
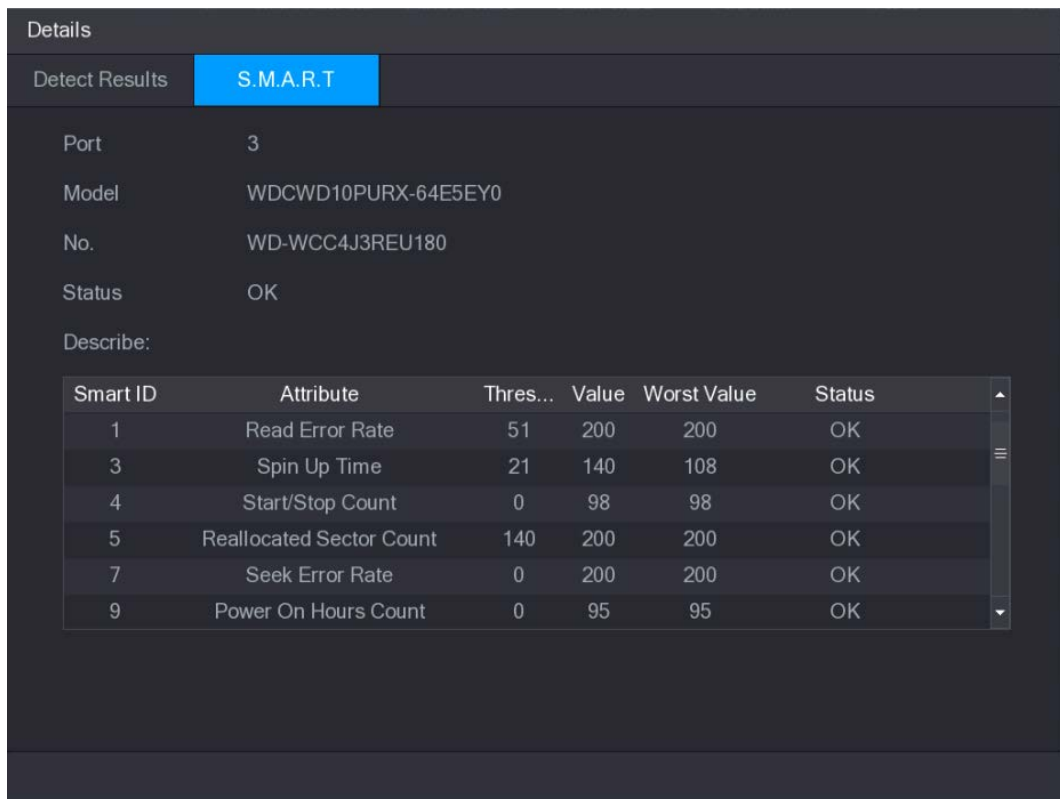


Figure 5-213 S.M.A.R.T





## 5.17.6 Configuring Quota Settings

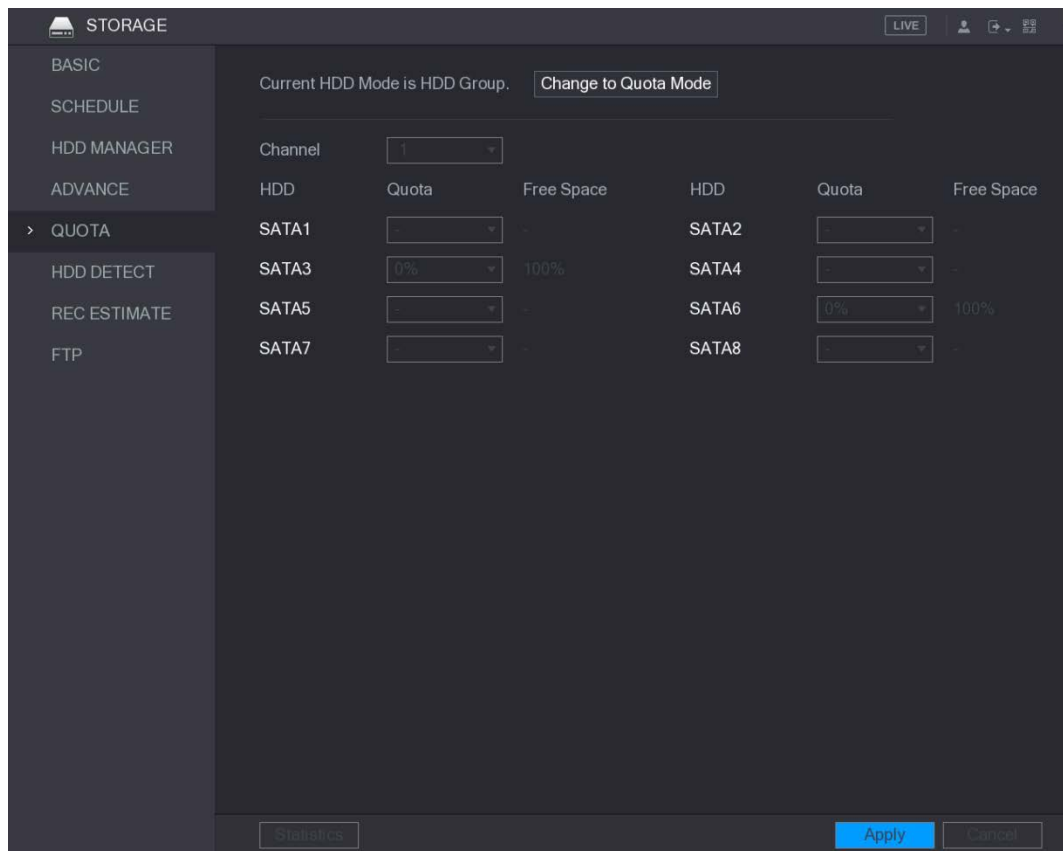
You can configure the quote for each channel to be saved into each HDD.



- If "Current HDD Mode is HDD Mode" is shown on the interface, you need to switch to Quota mode.
- You can enable either HDD Mode or Quota Mode at one time. The system reboots to activate the settings.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > QUOTA**.

Figure 5-214 Quota



Channel	HDD	Quota	Free Space
SATA1	-	-	-
SATA3	-	0%	100%
SATA5	-	-	-
SATA7	-	-	-

Buttons at the bottom: Statistics, Apply, Cancel.

**Step 2** In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure.

**Step 3** In the **SATA** list, select the quota for the selected channel.

**Step 4** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click **Statistics** to view the quota of each channel.

### Figure 5-215 Statistics

	Channel	Quota
1	Channel 1	232.86 GB
2	Channel 2	465.68 GB
3	Other Channels	2.95 TB

### 5.17.7 Configuring Record Estimate

Record estimate function can calculate how long you can record video according to the HDD capacity, and calculate the required HDD capacity according to the record period.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu** > **STORAGE** > **REC ESTIMATE**.

Figure 5-216 REC ESTIMATE

STORAGE

LIVE

BASIC

SCHEDULE

HDD MANAGER

ADVANCE

QUOTA

HDD DETECT

REC ESTIMATE

FTP

✓	Channel	Edit	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	Record Time	Resolution	Frame Rate
✓	1		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	2		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	3		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	4		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	5		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	6		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	7		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	8		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	9		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	10		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	11		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	12		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	13		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	14		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	15		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15
✓	16		4096	24	2560*1440(2...	15

Known Space

Known Time

Capacity

0

TB =

0

GB

Select

Time

0

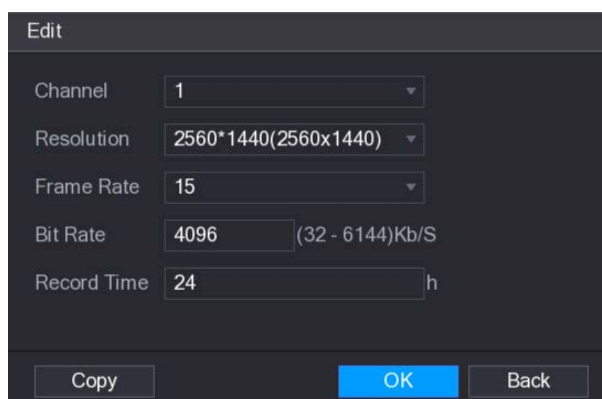
Days

Note: The record estimation data here is for reference only. Please be cautious when you are calculating record period.

**Step 2** Click .

You can configure the resolution, frame rate, bit rate and record time for the selected channel.

Figure 5-217 Edit



The 'Edit' dialog box contains the following fields and buttons:

- Channel:** A dropdown menu showing '1'.
- Resolution:** A dropdown menu showing '2560\*1440(2560x1440)'.
- Frame Rate:** A dropdown menu showing '15'.
- Bit Rate:** A text input field showing '4096' with a range '(32 - 6144)Kb/S' to its right.
- Record Time:** A text input field showing '24' with a unit 'h' to its right.
- Buttons:** 'Copy', 'OK' (highlighted in blue), and 'Back'.

**Step 3** Click **OK** to save the settings.

Then the system will calculate the time period that can be used for storage according to the channels settings and HDD capacity.

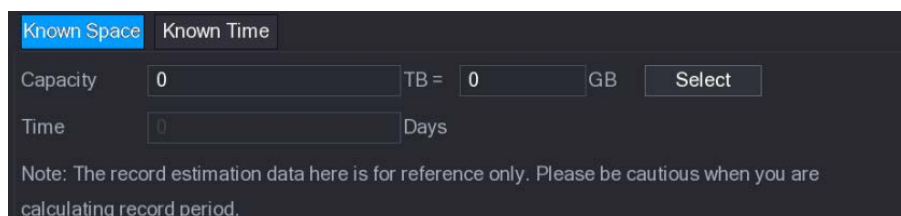


Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

## Calculating Recording Time

**Step 1** On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Space** tab.

Figure 5-218 Known space



The 'Known Space' tab interface includes:

- Tabs:** 'Known Space' (active) and 'Known Time'.
- Capacity:** A text input field with '0', followed by 'TB =', another text input field with '0', and 'GB'.
- Time:** A text input field with '0', followed by 'Days'.
- Buttons:** 'Select'.
- Note:** 'Note: The record estimation data here is for reference only. Please be cautious when you are calculating record period.'

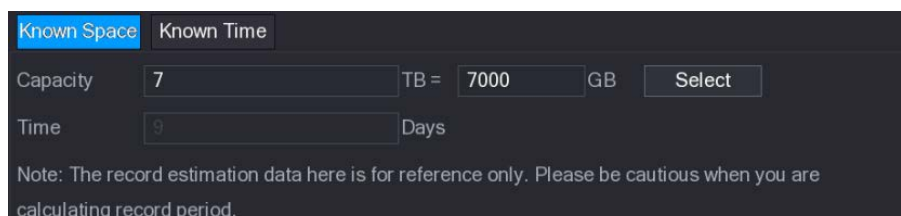
**Step 2** Click **Select**.

The **Select HDD(s)** interface is displayed.

**Step 3** Select the check box of the HDD that you want to calculate.

In the **Known Space** tab, in the **Time** box, the recording time is displayed.

Figure 5-219 Time



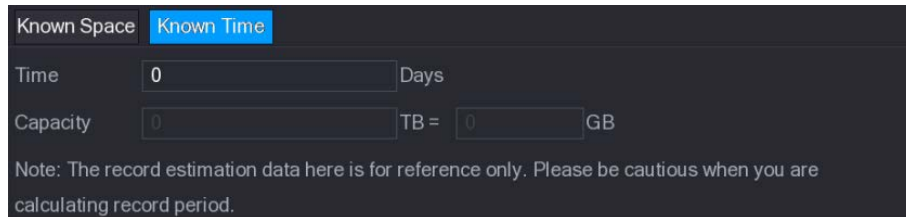
The 'Known Space' tab interface after calculation shows:

- Tabs:** 'Known Space' (active) and 'Known Time'.
- Capacity:** A text input field with '7', followed by 'TB =', another text input field with '7000', and 'GB'.
- Time:** A text input field with '9', followed by 'Days'.
- Buttons:** 'Select'.
- Note:** 'Note: The record estimation data here is for reference only. Please be cautious when you are calculating record period.'

## Calculating HDD Capacity for Storage

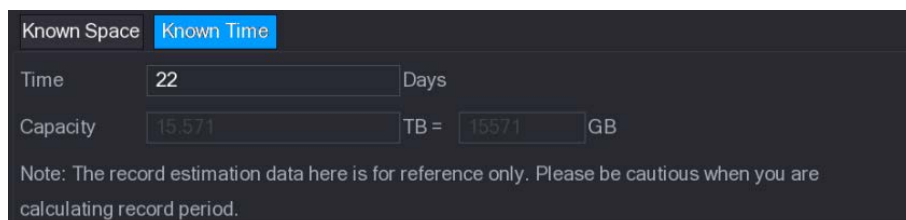
**Step 1** On the **REC ESTIMATE** interface, click the **Known Time** tab.

Figure 5-220 Known time



**Step 2** In the **Time** box, enter the time period that you want to record.  
In the **Capacity** box, the required HDD capacity is displayed.

Figure 5-221 Capacity



## 5.17.8 Configuring FTP Storage Settings

You can store and view the recorded videos and snapshots on the FTP server.

### Preparation

Purchase or download a FTP server and install it on your PC.

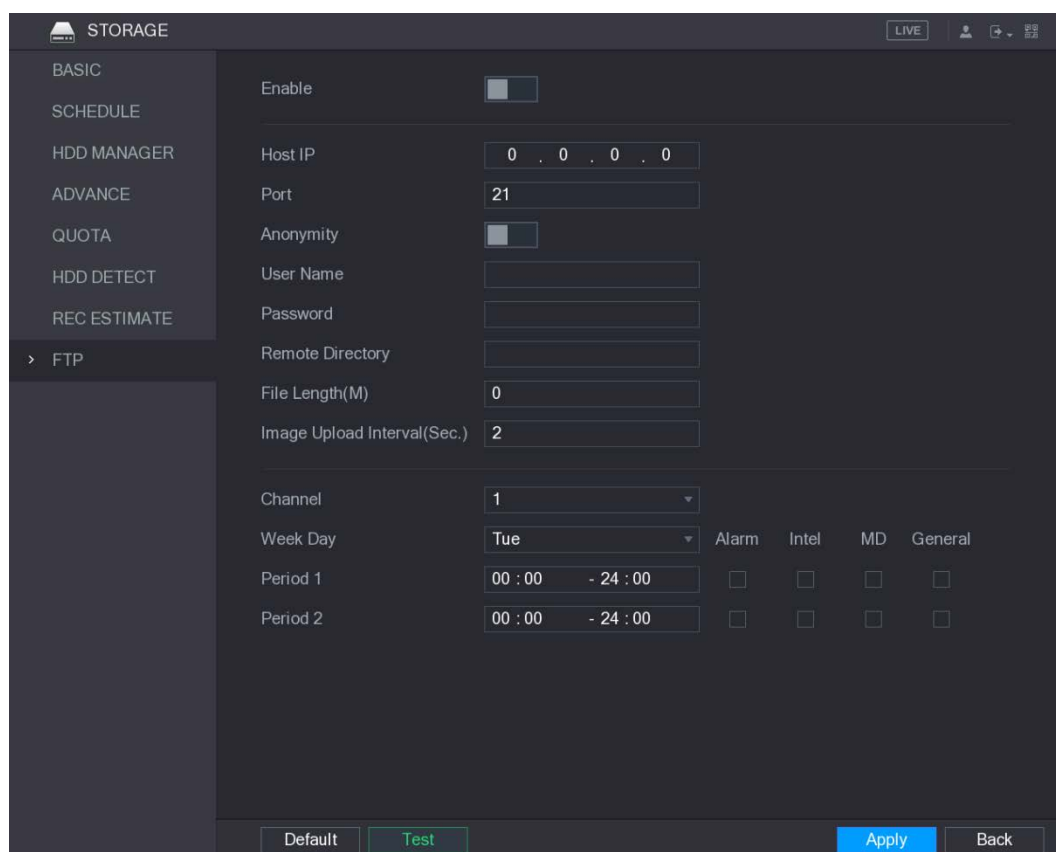


For the created FTP user, you need to set the write permission; otherwise the upload of recorded videos and snapshots will be failed.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP**.

Figure 5-222 FTP



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the FTP settings parameters.

Table 5-72 FTP parameters

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the FTP upload function.
Host IP	IP address of the PC that is installed with FTP server.
Port	The default is 21.
Anonymity	Enter the user name and password to log in to the FTP server. Enable the anonymity function, and then you can login anonymously without entering the user name and password.
User Name	
Password	
Remote Directory	Create folder on FTP server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you do not enter the name of remote directory, system automatically creates the folders according to the IP and time.</li> <li>If you enter the name of remote directory, the system creates the folder with the entered name under the FTP root directory first, and then automatically creates the folders according to the IP and time.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
File Length(M)	<p>Enter the length of the uploaded recorded video.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If the entered length is less than the recorded video length, only a section of the recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>● If the entered length is more than the recorded video length, the whole recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>● If the entered length is 0, the whole recorded video will be uploaded.</li> </ul>
Image Upload Interval (Sec.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If this interval is longer than snapshot interval, the system takes the recent snapshot to upload. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 2 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the recent snapshot every 5 seconds.</li> <li>● If this interval is shorter than snapshot interval, the system uploads the snapshot per the snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 10 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the snapshot every 10 seconds.</li> <li>● To configure the snapshot interval, select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; ENCODE &gt; Snapshot</b>.</li> </ul>
Channel	Select the channel that you want to apply the FTP settings.
Week Day	Select the week day and set the time period that you want to upload the recorded files. You can set two periods for each week day.
Period 1, Period 2	
Record type	Select the record type (Alarm, Intel, MD, and General) that you want to upload. The selected record type will be uploaded during the configured time period.

**Step 3** Click **Test**.

The system pops up a message to indicate success or failure. If failed, please check the network connection or configurations.

**Step 4** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.18 Configuring System Settings

### 5.18.1 Configuring General System Settings

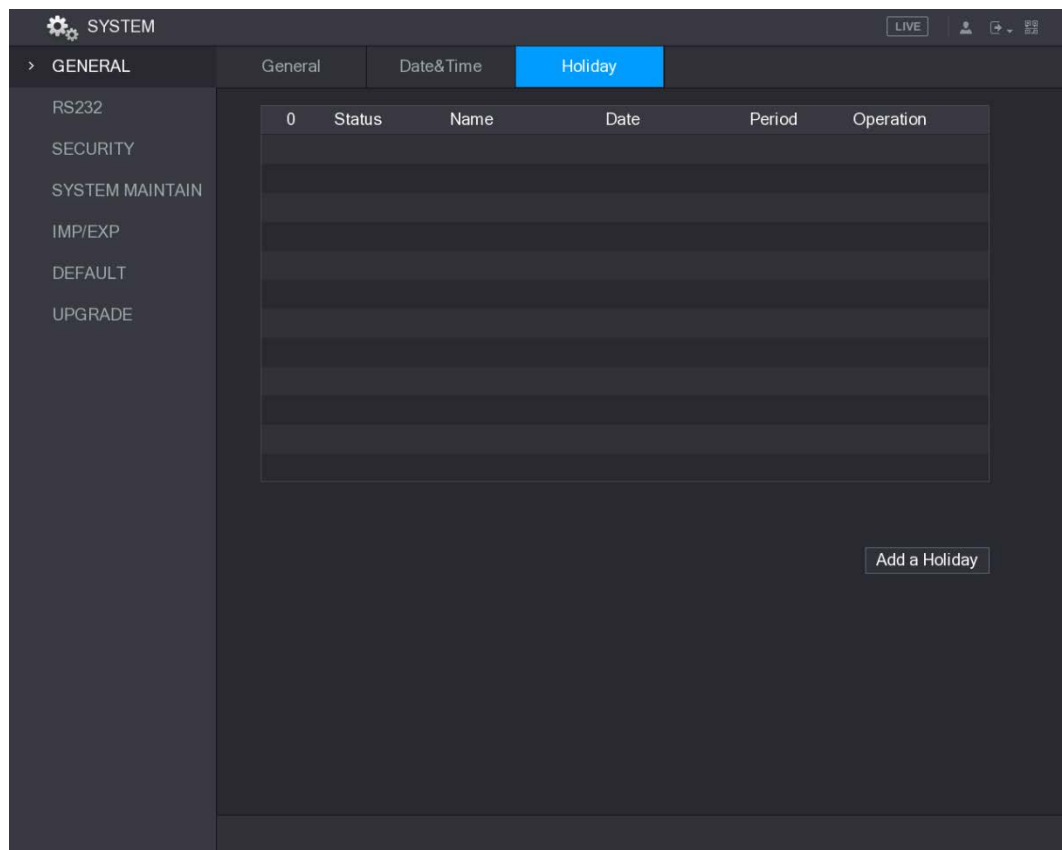
You can configure the device basic settings, time settings, and holiday settings.

For details about basic and time settings, see "5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings" and "5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings."

To configure the holiday settings, do the following:

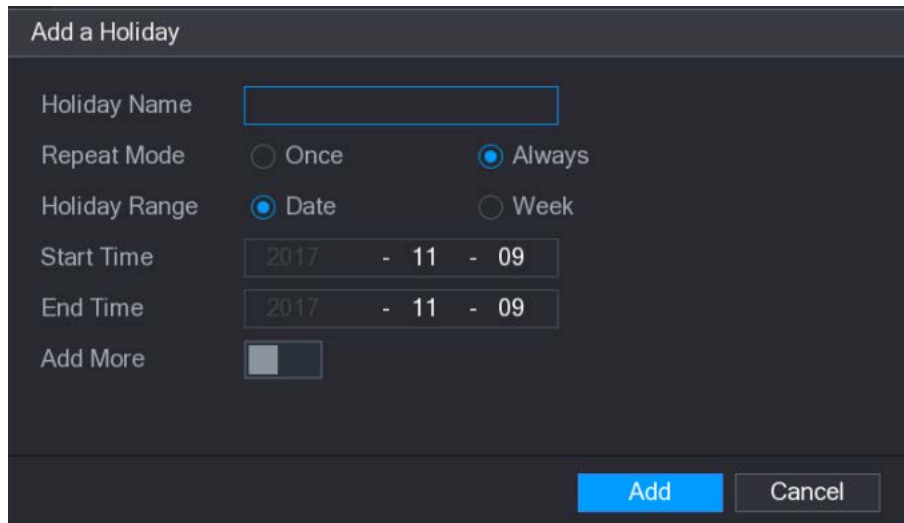
**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > GENERAL > Holiday**.

Figure 5-223 Holiday



**Step 2** Click **Add a Holiday**.

Figure 5-224 Add a holiday



The screenshot shows the "Add a Holiday" dialog box. It contains the following fields and options:

- Holiday Name:** A text input field.
- Repeat Mode:** Two radio buttons: ☐ Once and ☒ Always.
- Holiday Range:** Two radio buttons: ☒ Date and ☐ Week.
- Start Time:** A date picker showing 2017 - 11 - 09.
- End Time:** A date picker showing 2017 - 11 - 09.
- Add More:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Buttons:** "Add" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

**Step 3** Configure the holiday name, repeat mode, time range according to your actual situation.

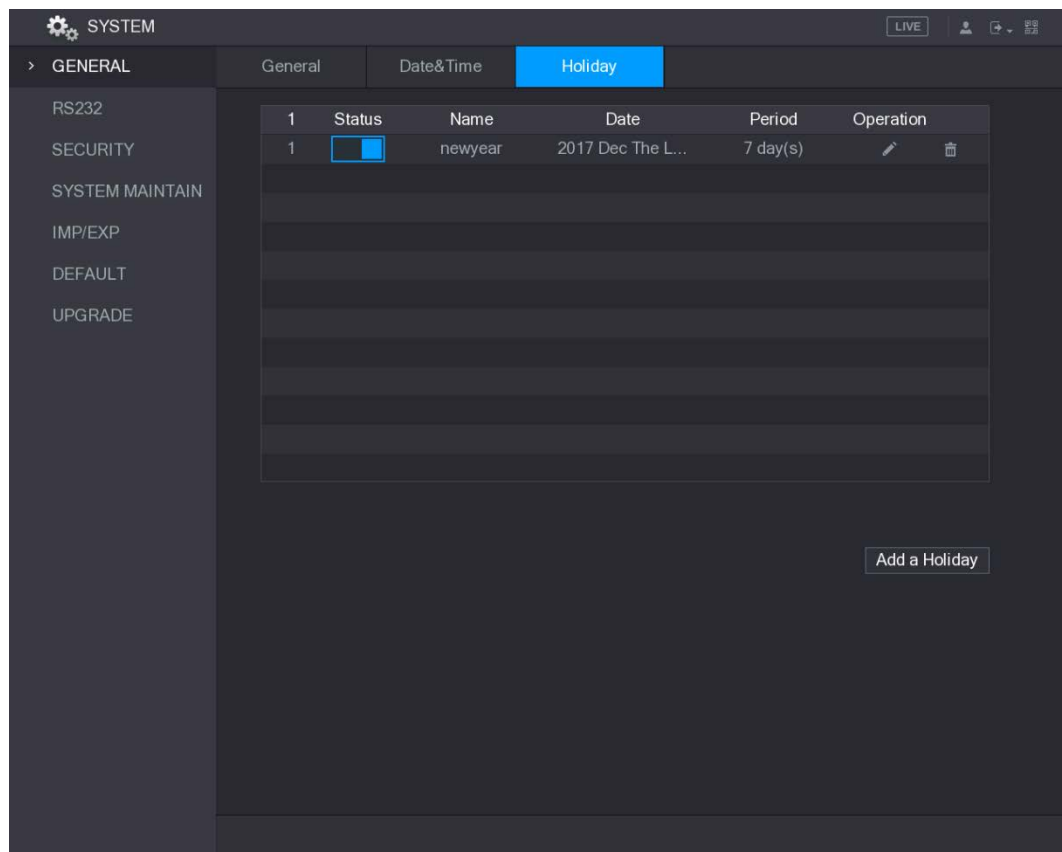
**Step 4** Click **Add**.

The added holiday information is displayed.



Enable the **Add More** function, so you can continue adding holiday information.

Figure 5-225 Add more

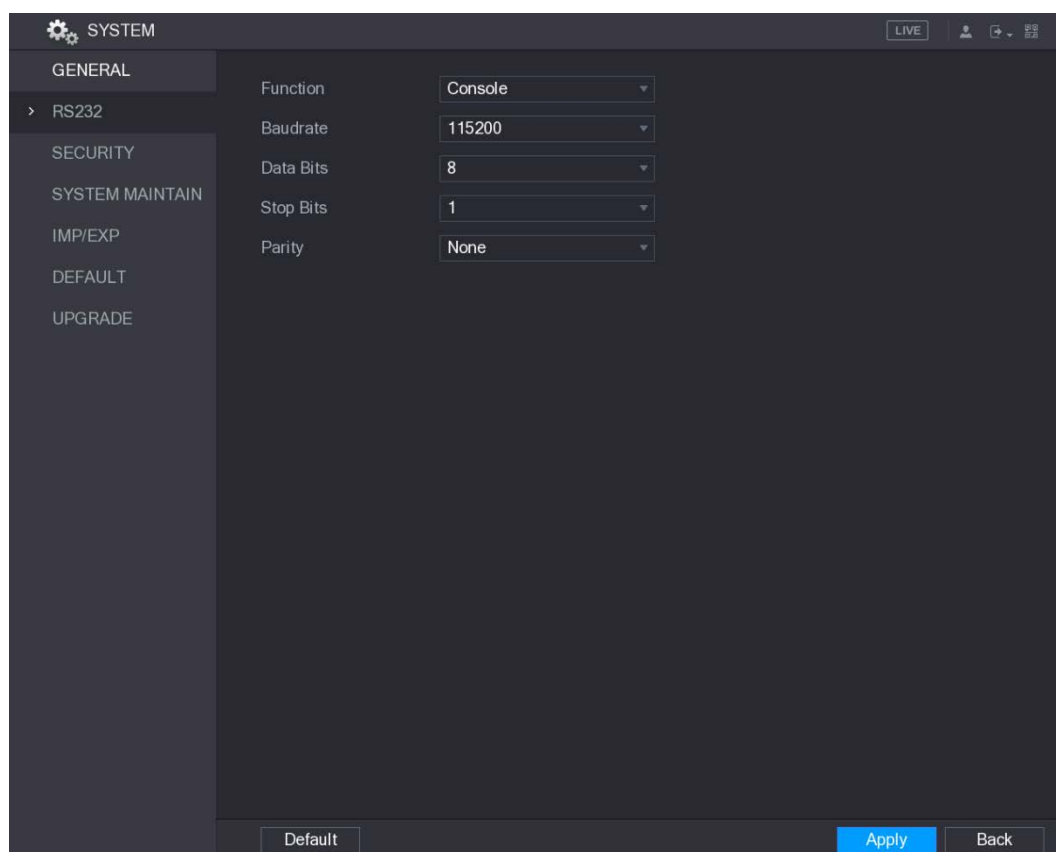


## 5.18.2 Configuring RS-232 Port Settings

**Step 1** Select Main Menu > STORAGE > RS232.



Figure 5-226 RS-232



**Step 2** Configure the settings for RS-232 port parameters.

Table 5-73 RS-232 parameters

Parameter	Description
Function	<p>In the Function list, select the protocol for the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Console: Debug by connecting a mini terminal software.</li> <li>● Keyboard: Control the Device by connecting a dedicated keyboard.</li> <li>● Adapter: Transit data by connecting to PC.</li> <li>● Protocol COM: This function is for card overlay.</li> <li>● NetKeyboard: Control the Device by connecting a dedicated keyboard to the LAN port.</li> <li>● PTZ Matrix: Connect the video matrix for control.</li> </ul> <p>The default setting is <b>Console</b>.</p>
Baudrate	<p>In the <b>Baudrate</b> list, select a value for baudrate length. The default setting is <b>115200</b>.</p>
Data Bits	<p>In the <b>Data Bits</b> list, select <b>5, 6, 7, or 8</b>. The default setting is <b>8</b>.</p>
Stop Bits	<p>In the <b>Stop Bits</b> list, select <b>1, 1.5, or 2</b>.</p>
Parity	<p>In the <b>Parity</b> list, select <b>None, Odd, Even, Mark, or Null</b>. The default setting is <b>None</b>.</p>

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.18.3 Configuring Security Settings

To ensure the network security and protect data, you can configure the access permission to the Device from host IP (host IP means the PC or server that has an IP).


- Allowlist includes the host IP that are permitted to access the Device.
- Blocklist includes the host IP that are not permitted to access the Device.
- Update time allowlist includes the host IP that are permitted to sync the Device time.

### 5.18.3.1 Configuring Access Right

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Access Right**.

**Step 2** Configure the settings for the security parameters.

Table 5-74 Security parameters

Parameter	Description
Type	In the Type list, you can select Limits of network-allowlist, Limits of network-blocklist, or Updata time-allowlist.
Enable	Enable the security settings.
Start Address	Enter a single IP address or a start IP address of a network segment.
Add IP Address	Click <b>Add IP Address</b> to add a single IP address.
End Address	Enter the end IP address of a network segment.
Add IP Segment	Click <b>Add IP Segment</b> to add the IP addresses from the start IP through the end IP.  The system supports up to 64 IP addresses.

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

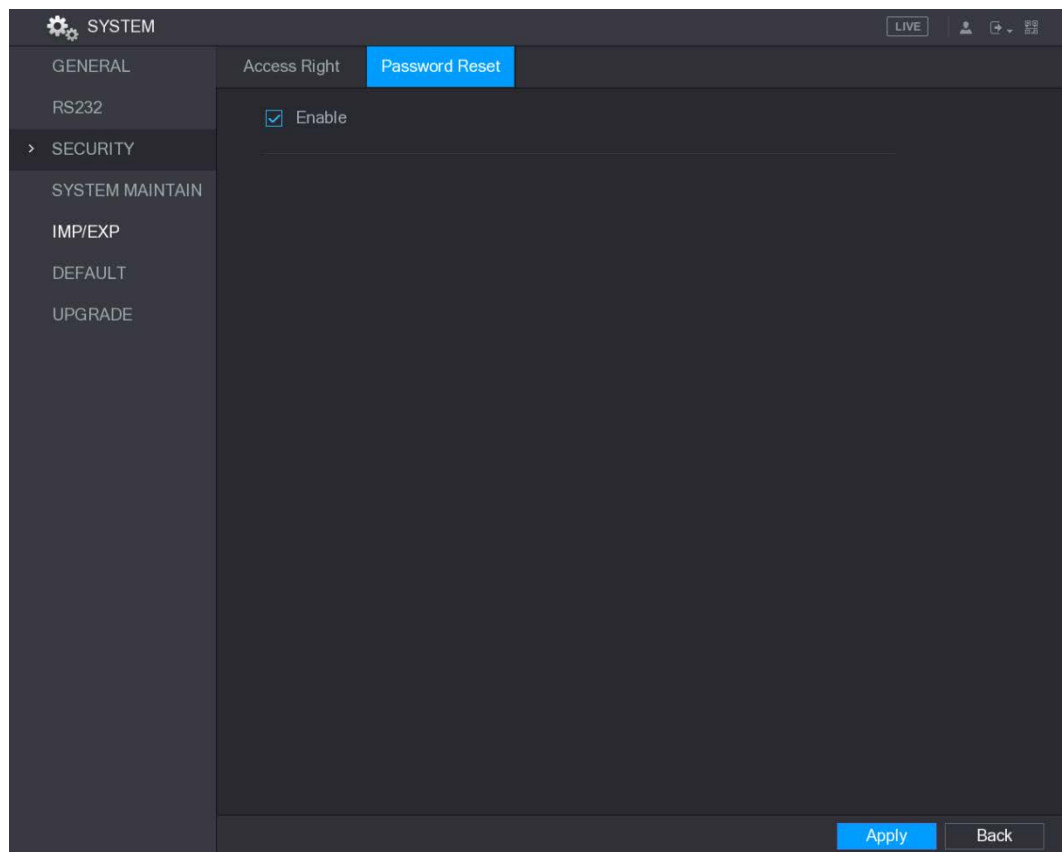
### 5.18.3.2 Enabling Password Reset

Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > SECURITY > Password Reset**, the **Password Reset** interface is displayed. The **Enable** check box is selected by default.



If you clear the **Enable** check box, you can only use the security questions to reset the password.  
Make sure you have set the security questions before clearing the check box.

Figure 5-227 Password reset

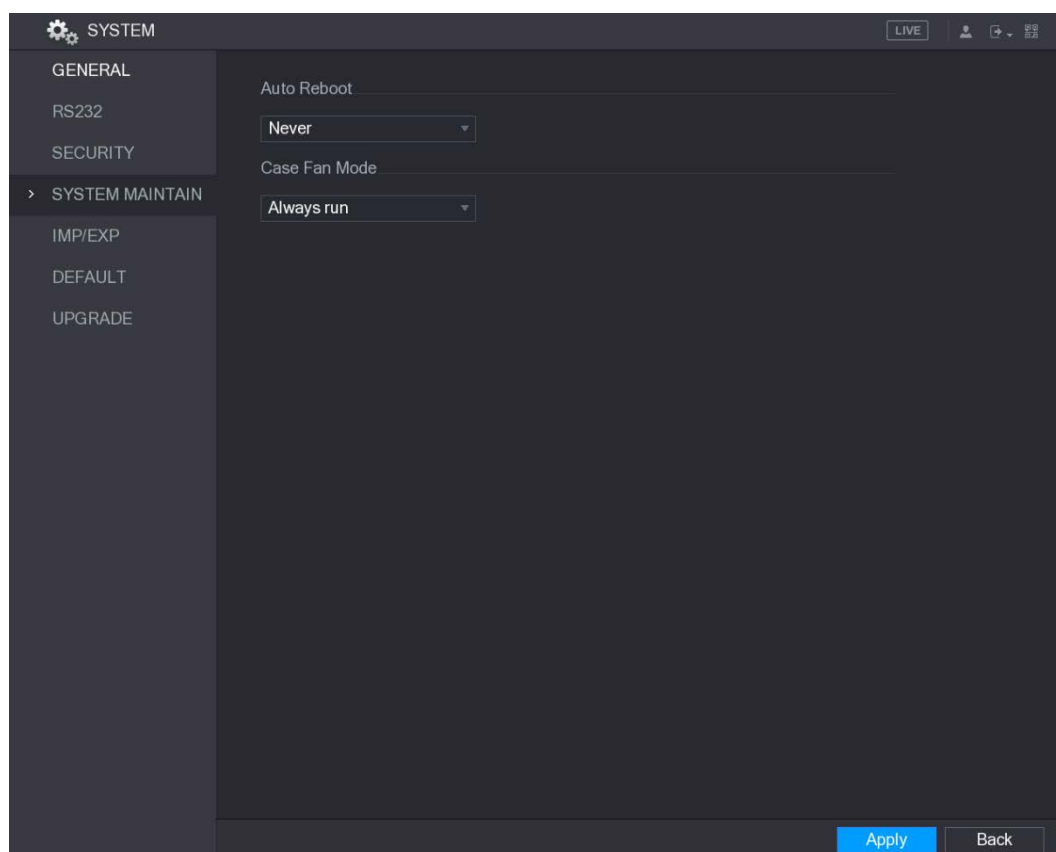


## 5.18.4 Configuring System Maintenance Settings

When the Device has been running for a long time, you can configure the auto reboot when the Device is not working. You can also configure the case fan mode to reduce noise and extend the service life.


**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > SYSTEM MAINTAIN**.

Figure 5-228 System maintain



**Step 2** Configure the settings for the system maintenance parameters.

Table 5-75 Maintenance parameters

Parameter	Description
Auto Reboot	In the <b>Auto Reboot</b> list, select the reboot time.
Case Fan Mode	<p>In the <b>Case Fan Mode</b> list, you can select <b>Always run</b> or <b>Auto</b>. If you select <b>Auto</b>, the case fan will stop or start according to the external conditions such as the Device temperature.</p> <p> Not all models support this function, and it is only supported on the local configuration interface.</p>

**Step 3** Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.18.5 Exporting and Importing System Settings

You can export or import the Device system settings if there are several Devices that require the same setup.



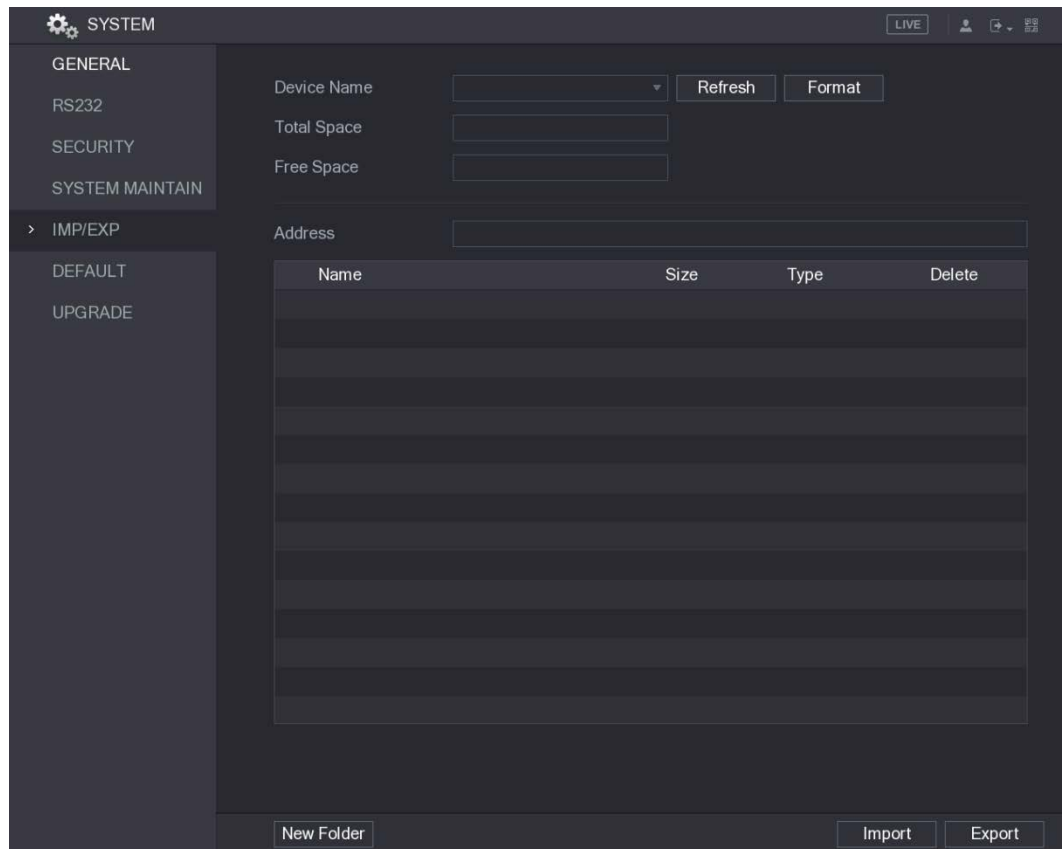
- The **IMP/EXP** interface cannot be opened if the backup operation is ongoing on the other interfaces.
- When you open the **IMP/EXP** interface, the system refreshes the devices and sets the current directory as the first root directory.

- Click **Format** to format the USB storage device.

## Exporting System Settings

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP.**

Figure 5-229 IMP/EXP

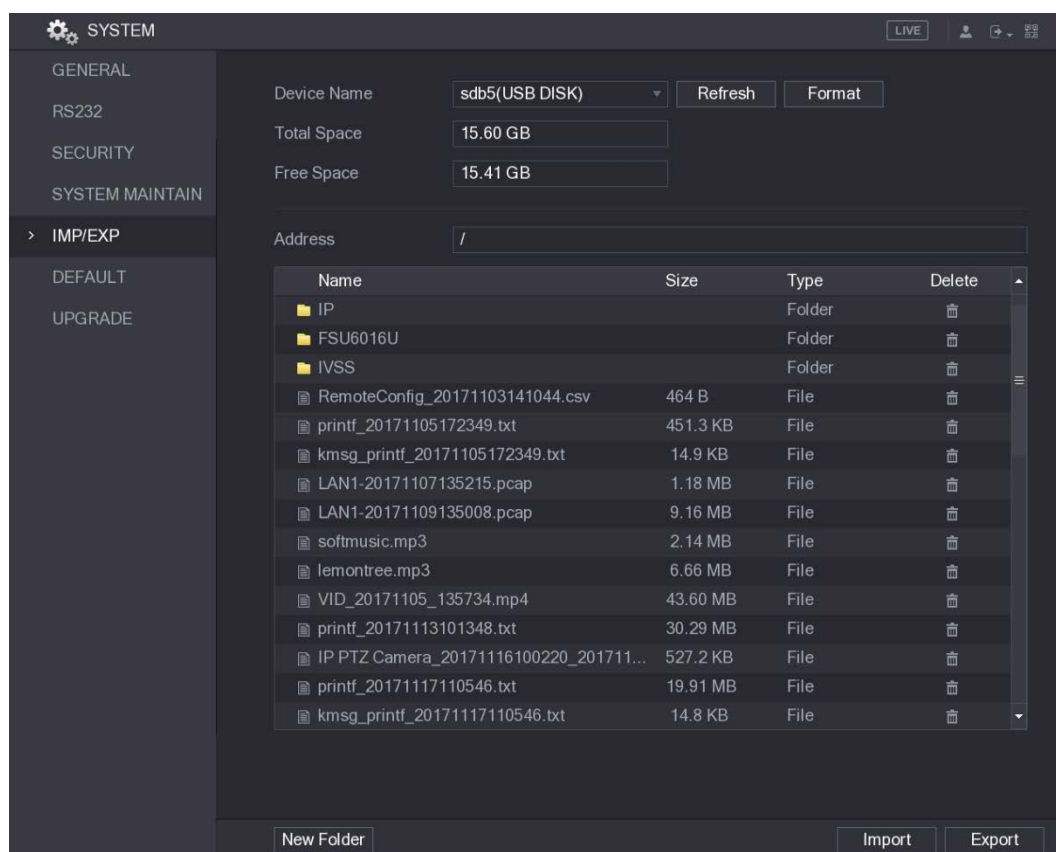


**Step 2** Insert a USB storage device into one of the USB ports on the Device.

**Step 3** Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed

Figure 5-230 Connected USB storage device



**Step 4** Click **Export**.

There is a folder under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]". Double-click this folder to view the backup files.

## Importing System Settings

**Step 1** Insert a USB storage device containing the exported configuration files from another Device) into one of the USB ports on the Device.

**Step 2** Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > IMP/EXP**.

The **IMP/EXP** interface is displayed.

**Step 3** Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed.

**Step 4** Click on the configuration folder (under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]") that you want to import.

**Step 5** Click **Import**.

The Device will reboot after the imported is succeeded.

## 5.18.6 Restoring Default Settings

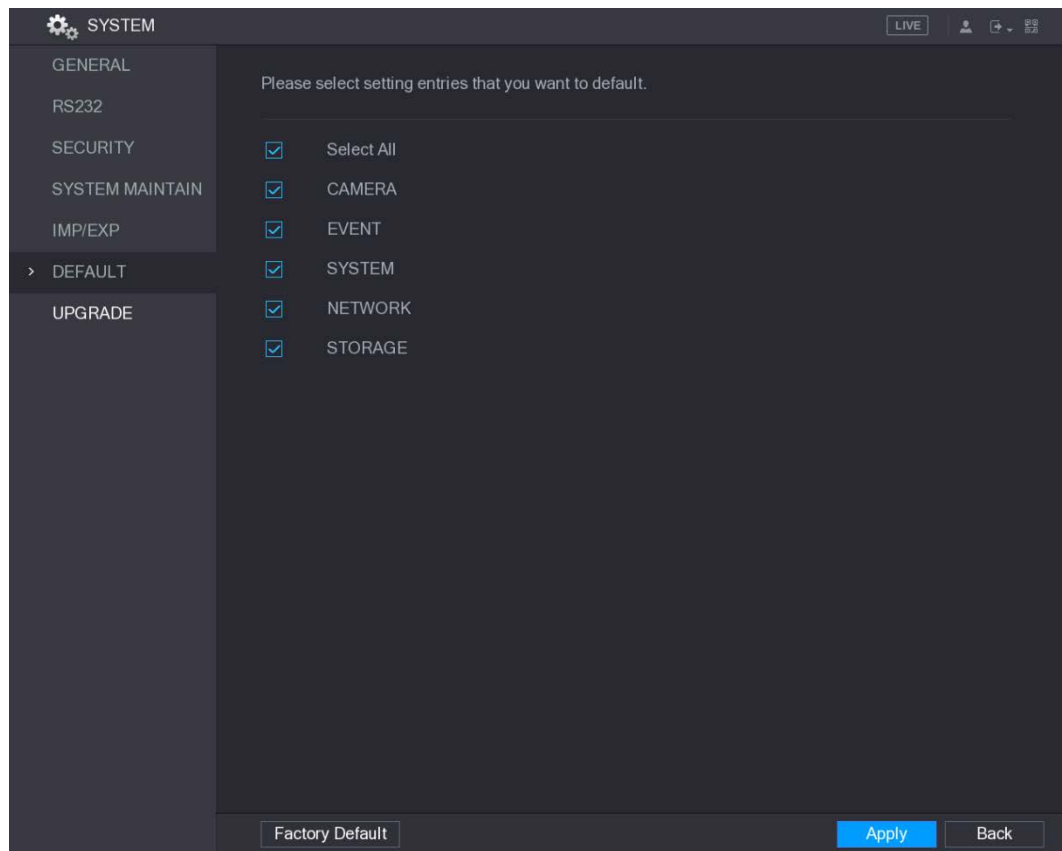


Only Admin account supports this function.

You can select the settings that you want to restore to the factory default.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > DEFAULT**.

Figure 5-231 Default



**Step 2** Restore the settings.

- Select the settings that you want to restore, and then click **Apply**. The system starts restoring the selected settings.
- Click **Factory Default**, and then click **OK**. The system starts restoring the whole settings.

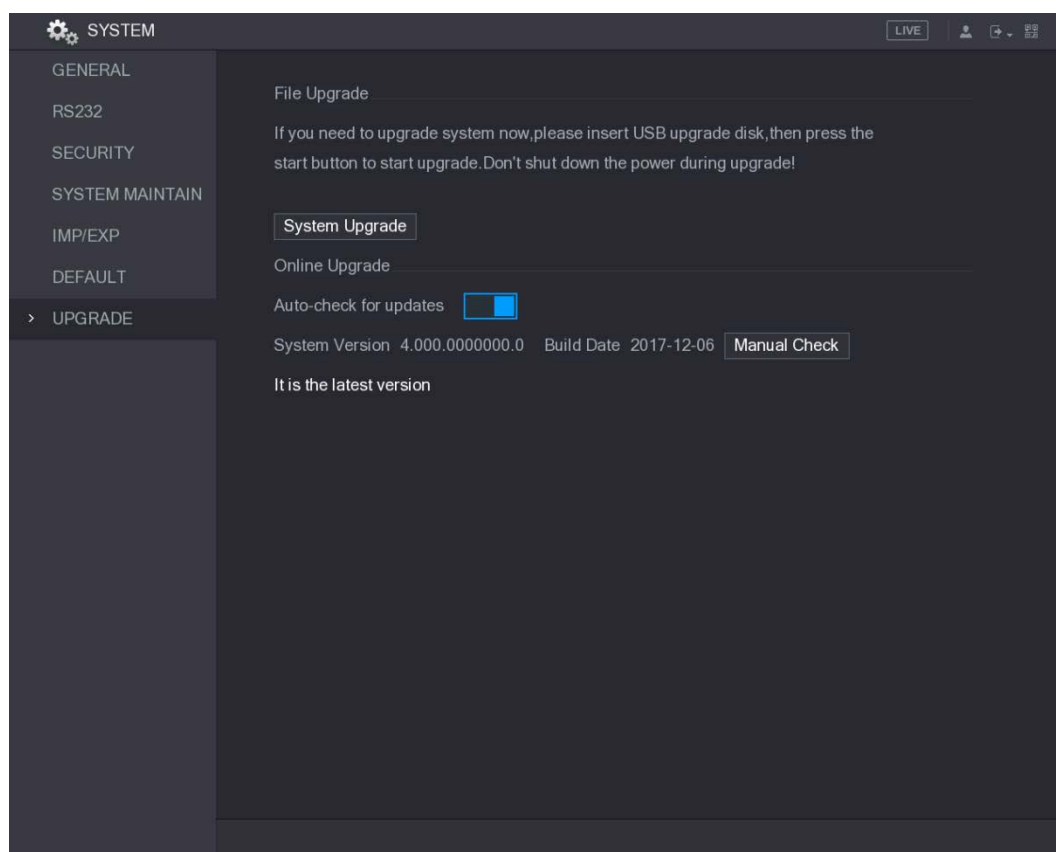
## 5.18.7 Upgrading the Device

### 5.18.7.1 Upgrading File

**Step 1** Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.

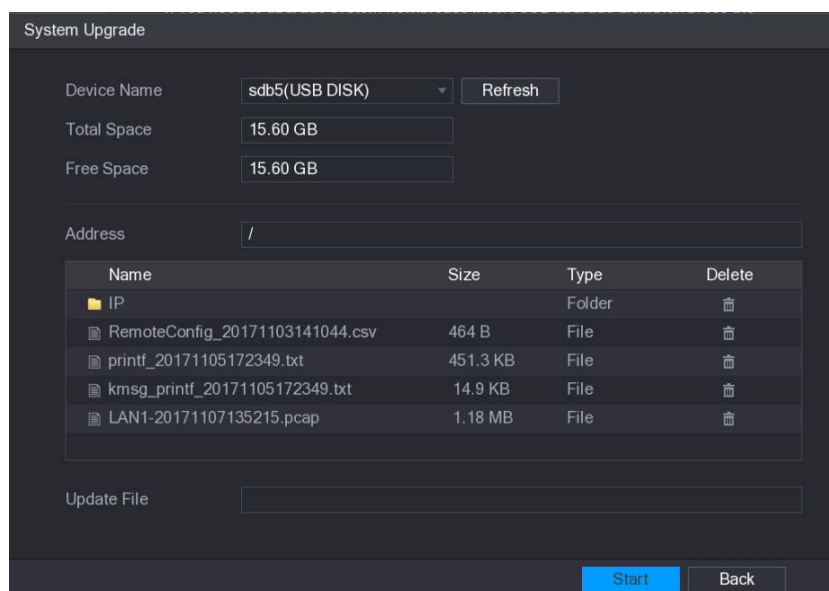
**Step 2** Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE**.

Figure 5-232 Upgrade



**Step 3** Click **System Upgrade**.

Figure 5-233 System upgrade



**Step 4** Click the file that you want to upgrade.

The selected file is displayed in the **Update File** box.

**Step 5** Click **Start**.



## 5.18.7.2 Performing Online Upgrade

When the Device is connected to Internet, you can use online upgrade function to upgrade the system.

Before using this function, you need to check if there is any new version by auto check or manual check.

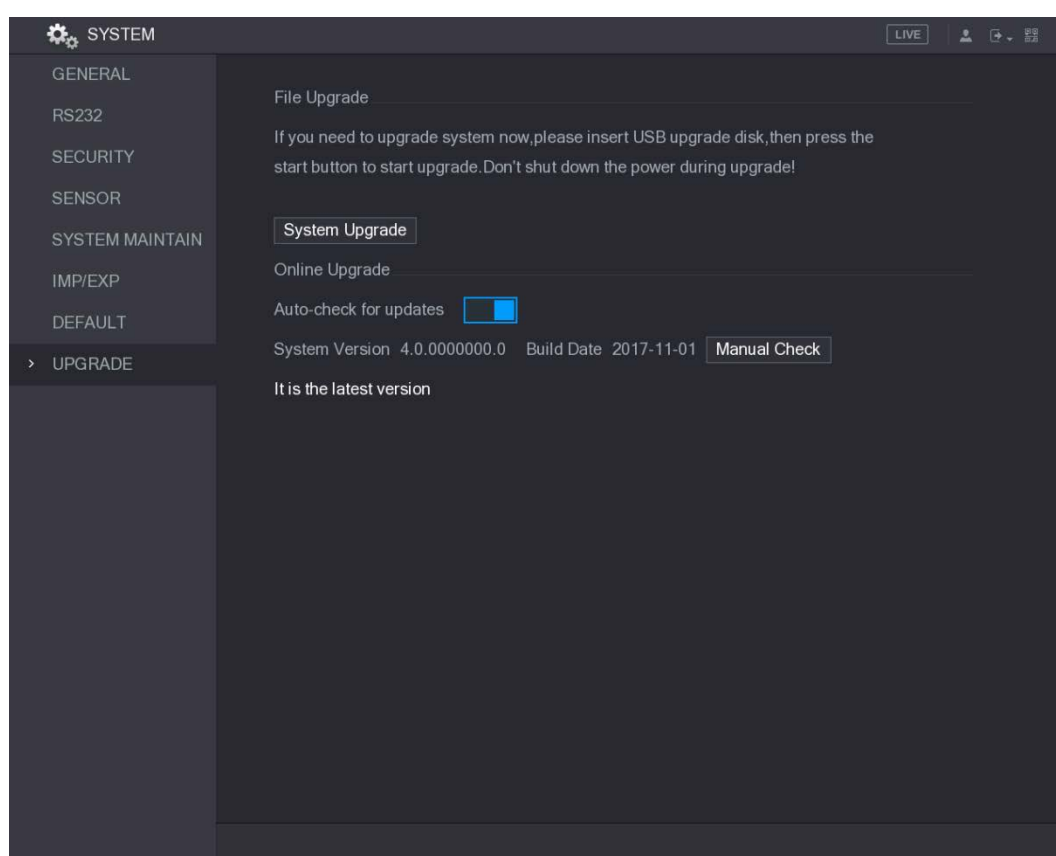
- Auto check: The Device checks if there is any new version available at intervals.
- Manual check: Perform real-time check if there is any new version available.



Ensure the correct power supply and network connection during upgrading; otherwise the upgrading might be failed.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > UPGRADE**.

Figure 5-234 Upgrade



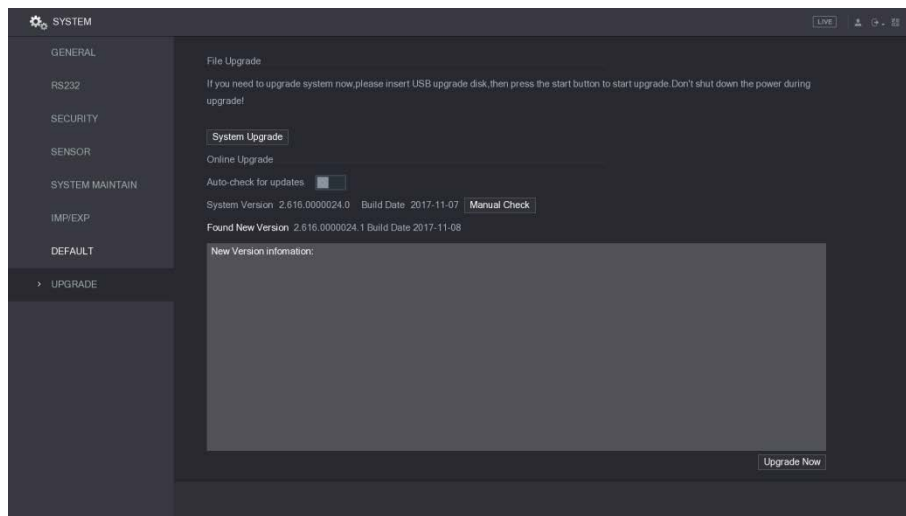
**Step 2** Check if there is any new version available.

- Auto check: Enable Auto-check for updates.
- Manual check: Click **Manual Check**.

The system starts checking the new versions. After checking is completed, the check result is displayed.

- If the "It is the latest version" text is displayed, you do not need to upgrade.
- If the text indicating there is a new version, please go the step 3.

Figure 5-235 Check result



**Step 3** Click **Upgrade Now**.

### 5.18.7.3 Uboot Upgrading



- Under the root directory in the USB storage device, there must be "u-boot.bin.img" file and "update.img" file saved, and the USB storage device must be in FAT32 format.
- Make sure the USB storage device is inserted; otherwise the upgrading cannot be performed.

When starting the Device, the system automatically checks if there is a USB storage device connected and if there is any upgrade file, and if yes and the check result of the upgrade file is correct, the system will upgrade automatically. The Uboot upgrade can avoid the situation that you have to upgrade through +TFTP when the Device is halted.

## 5.19 Viewing Information

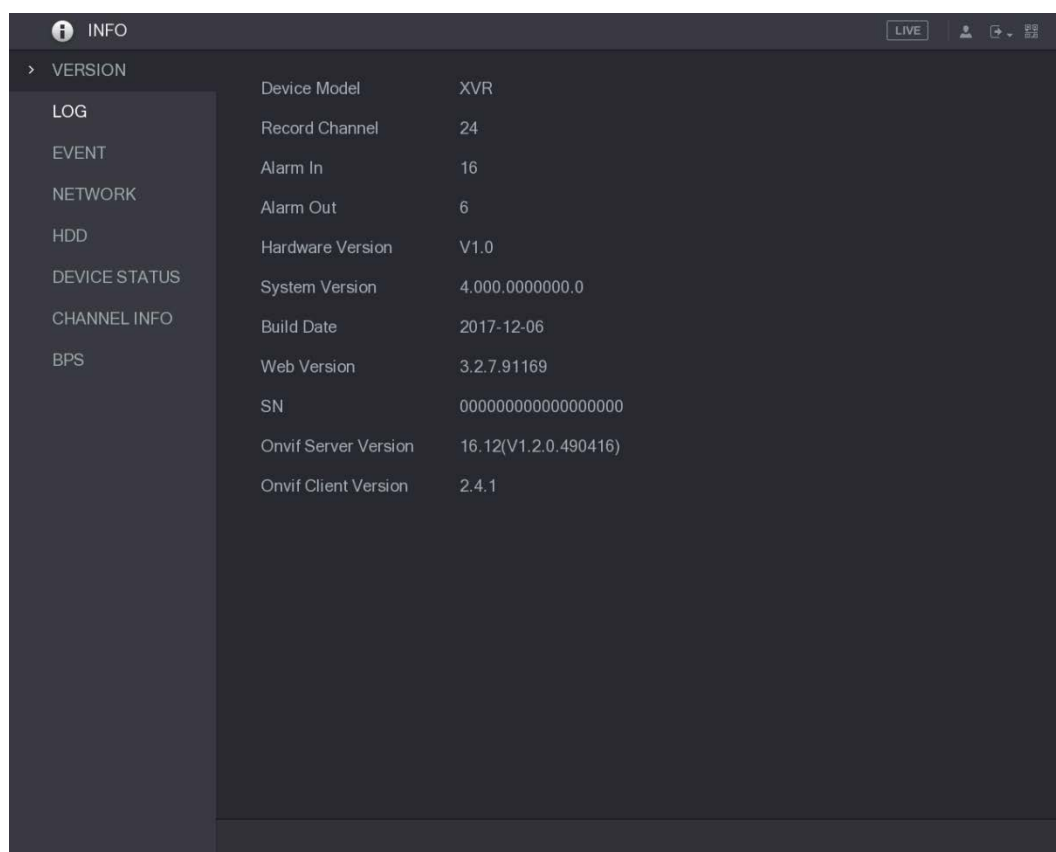
You can view the information such as log information, HDD information, and version details

### 5.19.1 Viewing Version Details

You can view the version details such as device model, system version, and build date.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > VERSION**, the **VERSION** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-236 Version



## 5.19.2 Viewing Log Information

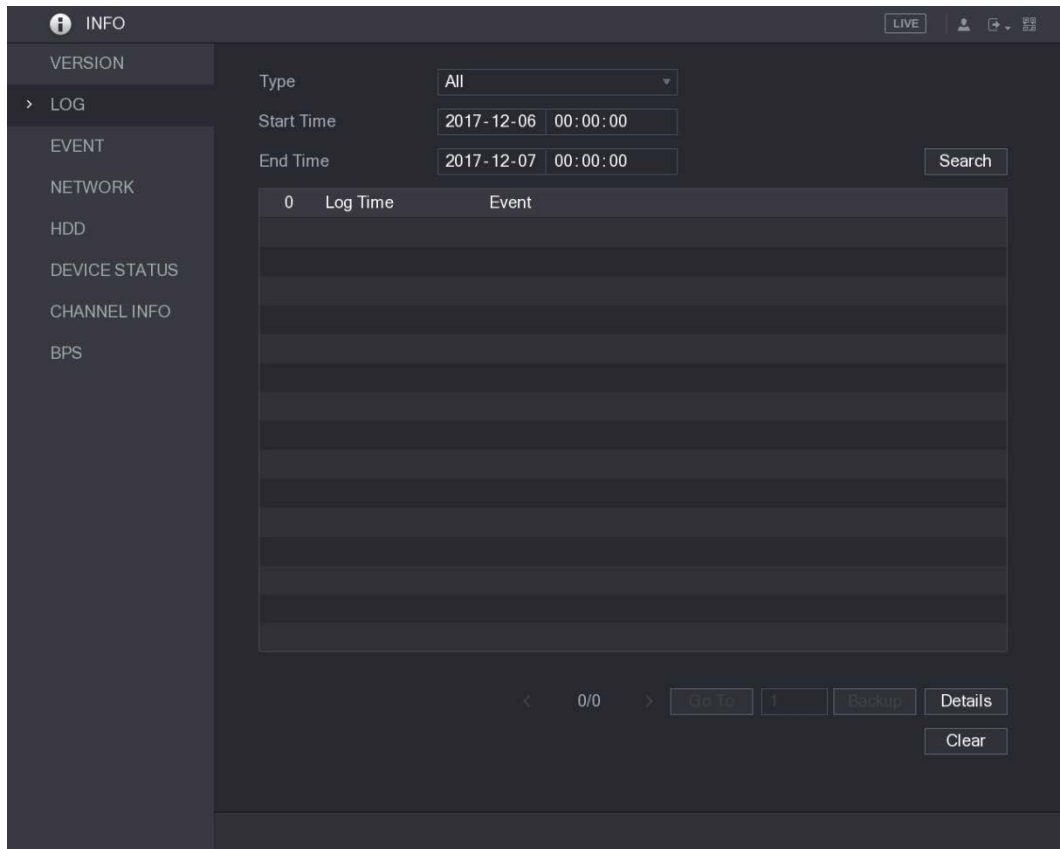
You can view and search the log information.



- If there is no HDD installed, the system can save up to 10,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed and has been formatted, the system can save up to 500,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed, the logs about system operations are saved in the memory of the Device and other types of logs are saved into the HDD. If there is no HDD installed, the other types of logs are also saved in the memory of the Device.
- When formatting the HDD, the logs will not be lost. However, if you take out the HDD from the Device, the logs might be lost.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > INFO > LOG**.

Figure 5-237 Log



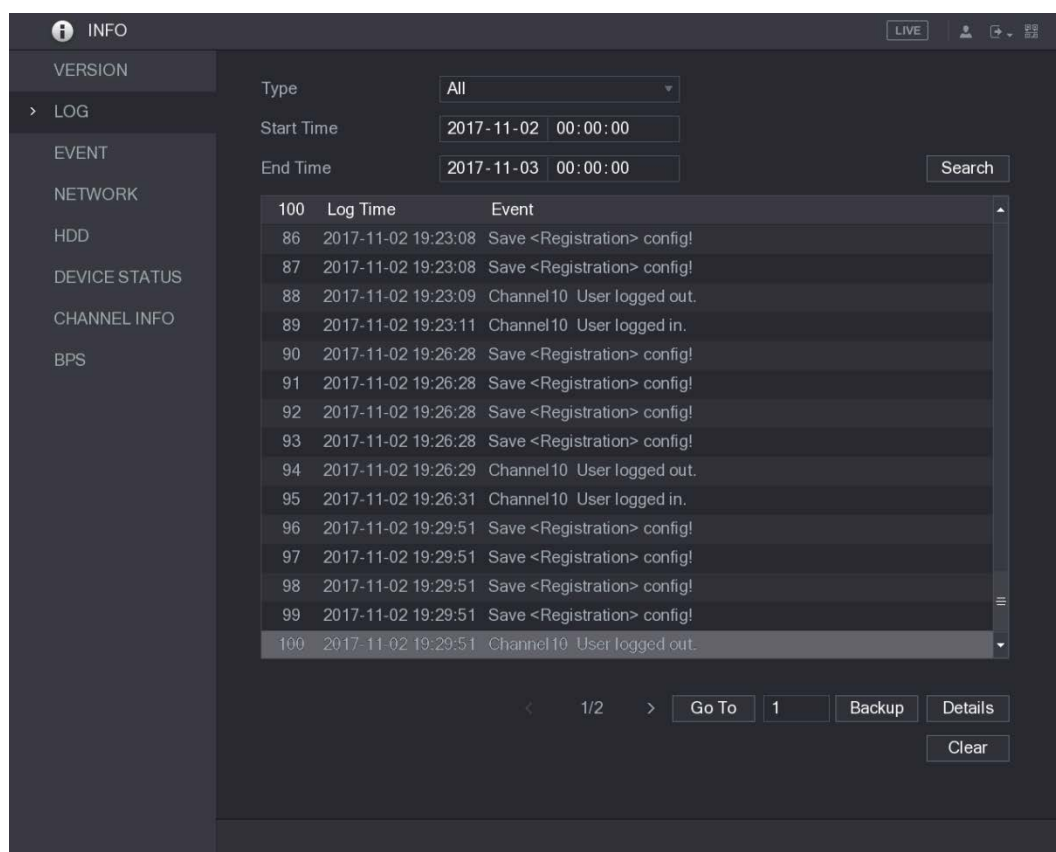
The screenshot shows the 'LOG' section of the Dahua interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation options: INFO, VERSION, LOG (selected), EVENT, NETWORK, HDD, DEVICE STATUS, CHANNEL INFO, and BPS. The main area contains search filters: 'Type' set to 'All', 'Start Time' set to '2017-12-06 00:00:00', and 'End Time' set to '2017-12-07 00:00:00'. A 'Search' button is to the right of the end time. Below the filters is a table with columns '0', 'Log Time', and 'Event'. The table is currently empty. At the bottom, there are pagination controls showing '< 0/0 >' and buttons for 'Go To', '1', 'Backup', 'Details', and 'Clear'.

**Step 2** In the **Type** list, select the log type that you want to view (**System, Config, Storage, Record, Account, Clear, Playback, and Connection**) or select **All** to view all logs.

**Step 3** In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period to search, and then click **Search**.

The search results are displayed.

Figure 5-238 Search results



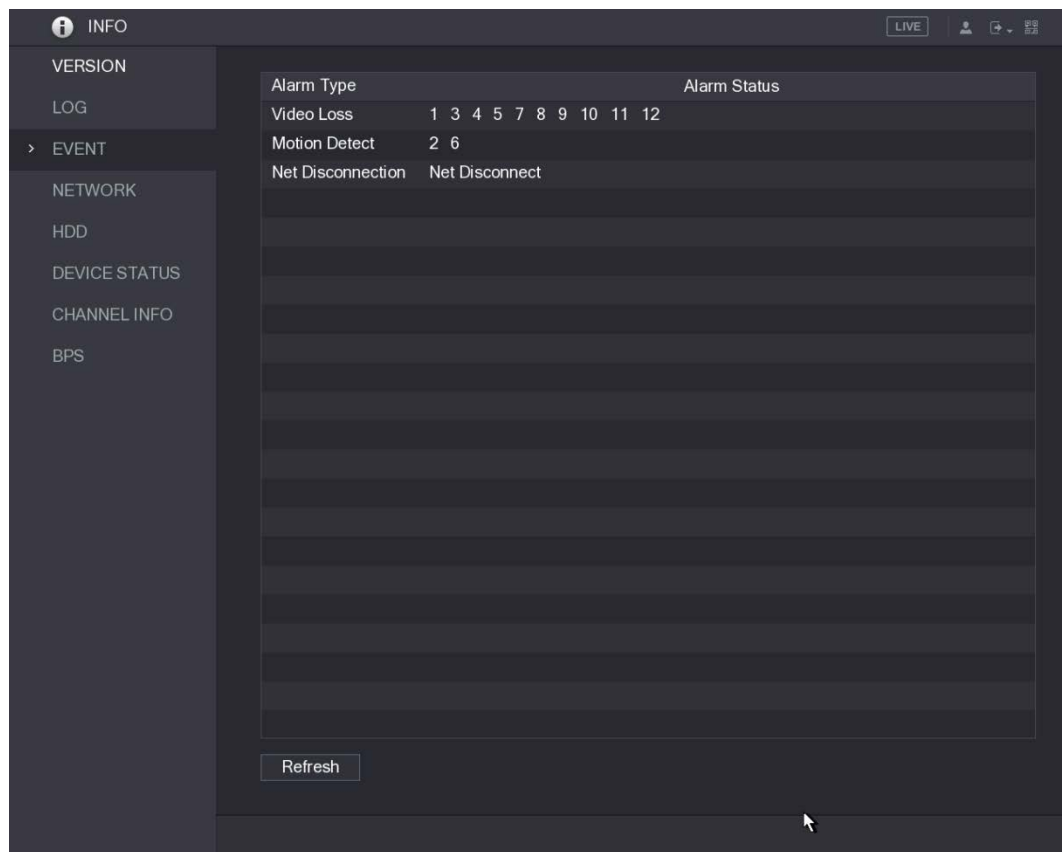
- Click **Details** or double-click the log that you want to view, the **Detailed Information** interface is displayed. Click **Next** or **Previous** to view more log information.
- Click **Backup** to back up the logs into the USB storage device.
- Click **Clear** to remove all logs.

### 5.19.3 Viewing Event Information

You can view the event information of the Device and channel.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > EVENT**, the **EVENT** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-239 Event



## 5.19.4 Viewing Network Information

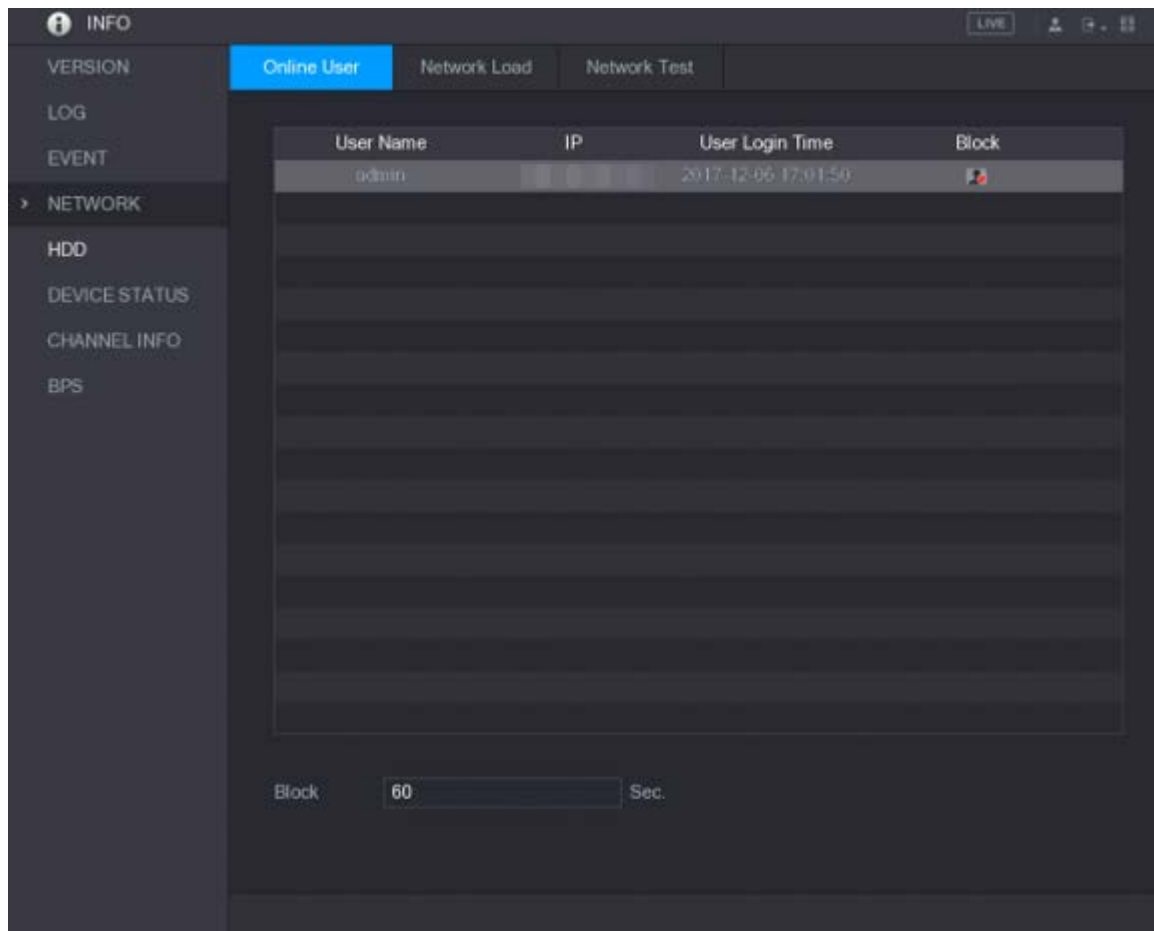
You can view the online users, network data transmission details, and test network. For details about testing network, see "5.14.2.1 Testing the Network."


### 5.19.4.1 Viewing Online Users

You can view the online user information and block any user for a period of time.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Online users**.

Figure 5-240 Online user



To block an online user, click  and then enter the time that you want to block this user. The maximum value you can set is 65535.

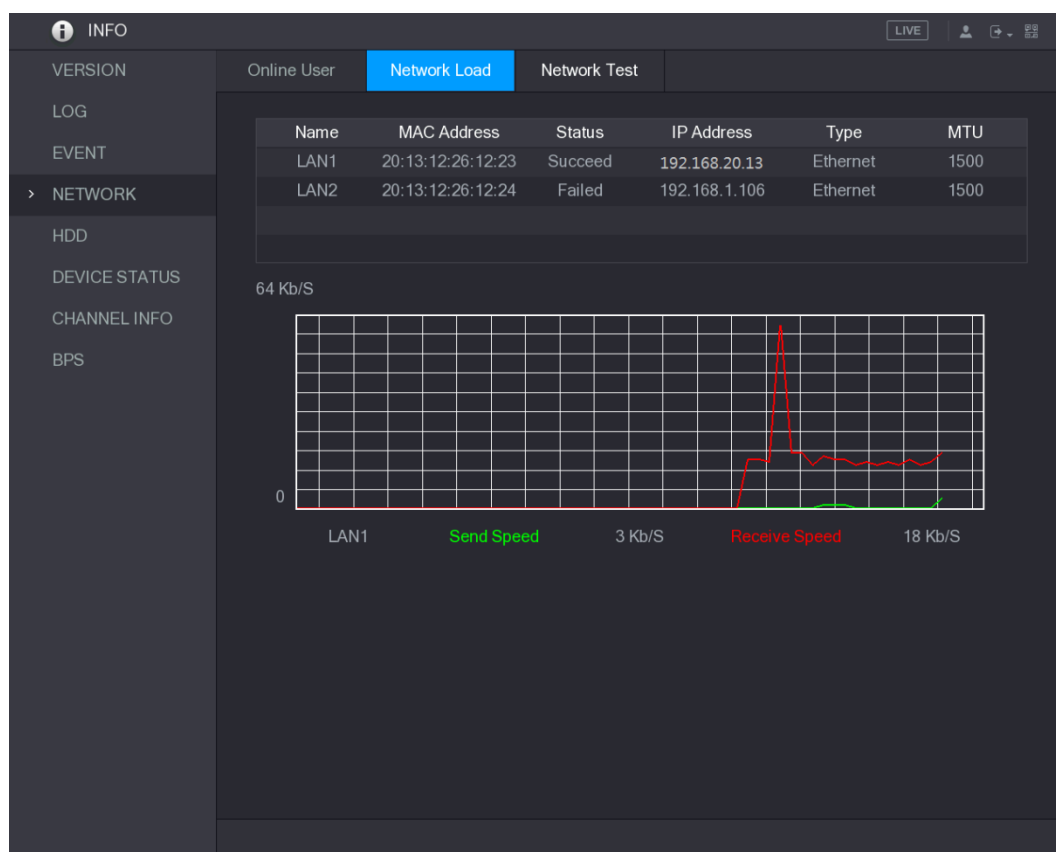
The system detects every 5 seconds to check if there is any user added or deleted, and update the user list timely.

### 5.19.4.2 Viewing the Network Load

Network load means the data flow which measures the transmission capability. You can view the information such as data receiving speed and sending speed.

**Step 1** Select **Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Load**.

Figure 5-241 Network load



**Step 2** Click the LAN name that you want to view, for example, LAN1.  
The system displays the information of data sending speed and receiving speed.



- The default display is LAN1 load.
- Only one LAN load can be displayed at one time.

## 5.19.5 Viewing HDD Information

You can view the HDD quantity, HDD type, total space, free space, status, and S.M.A.R.T information.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > HDD**, the **HDD** interface is displayed.



Figure 5-242 HDD

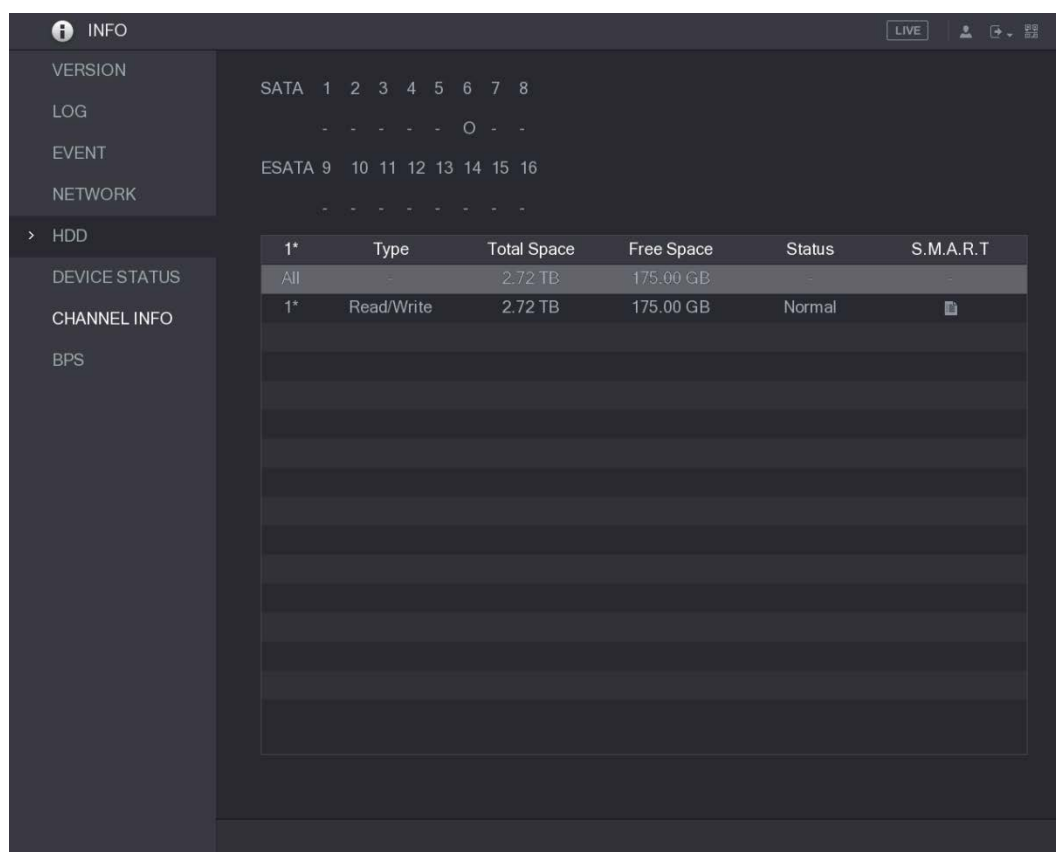


Table 5-76 HDD parameters

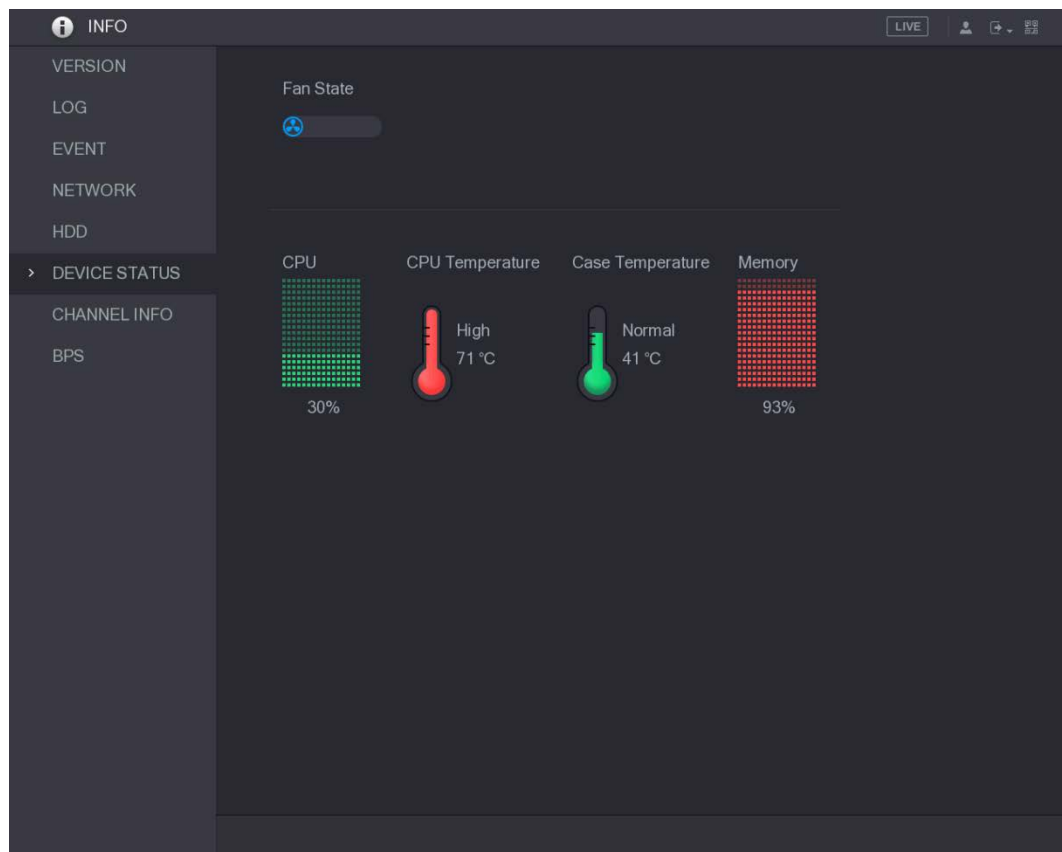
Parameter	Description
SATA	Indicates the quantity of HDD that can be installed. The total quantity is different depending on the model you purchased. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○: HDD is in normal working status.</li> <li>-: No HDD is installed.</li> </ul>
No.	Indicates the number of the currently connected HDD. * means the current working HDD.
Type	Indicates HDD type.
Total Space	Indicates the total capacity of HDD.
Free Space	Indicates the usable capacity of HDD.
Status	Indicates the status of the HDD to show if it is working normally.
S.M.A.R.T	View the S.M.A.R.T reports from HDD detecting.

## 5.19.6 Viewing Device Status

You can view the information such as CPU temperature and memory usage to know the device status.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > DEVICE STATUS**.

Figure 5-243 Device status

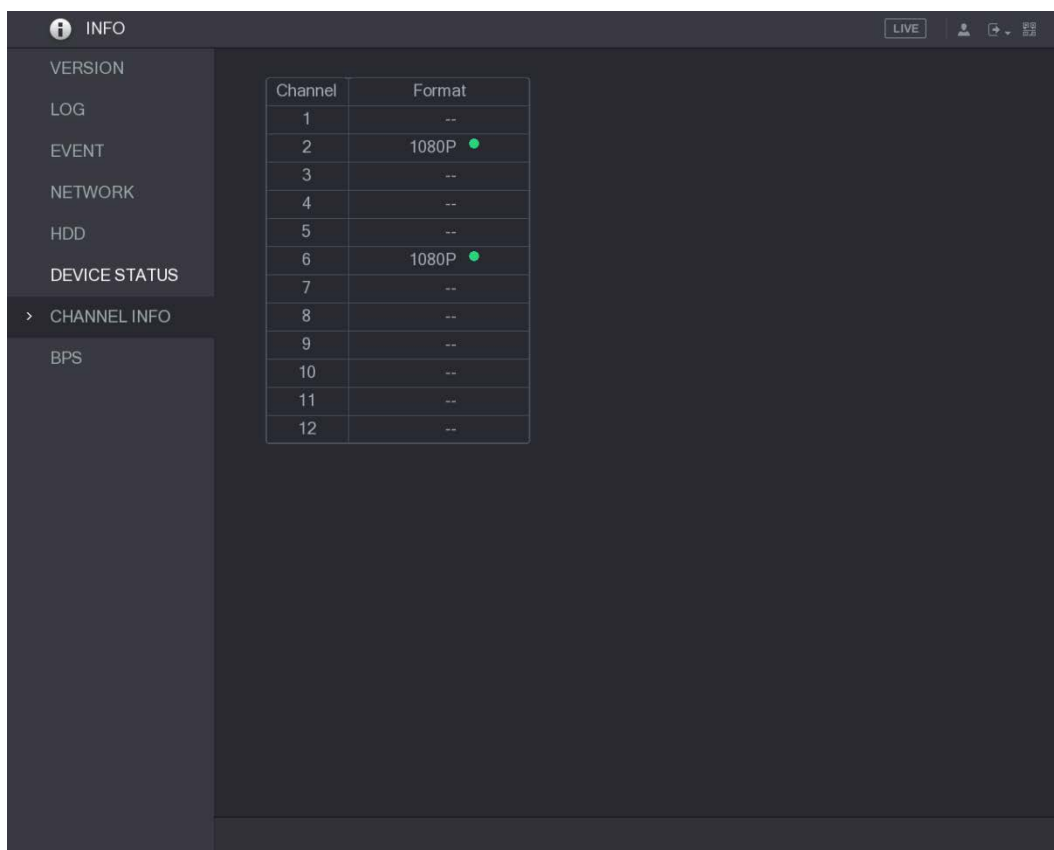


### 5.19.7 Viewing Channel Information

You can view the camera information connected to each channel.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > CHANNEL INFO**.

Figure 5-244 Channel info



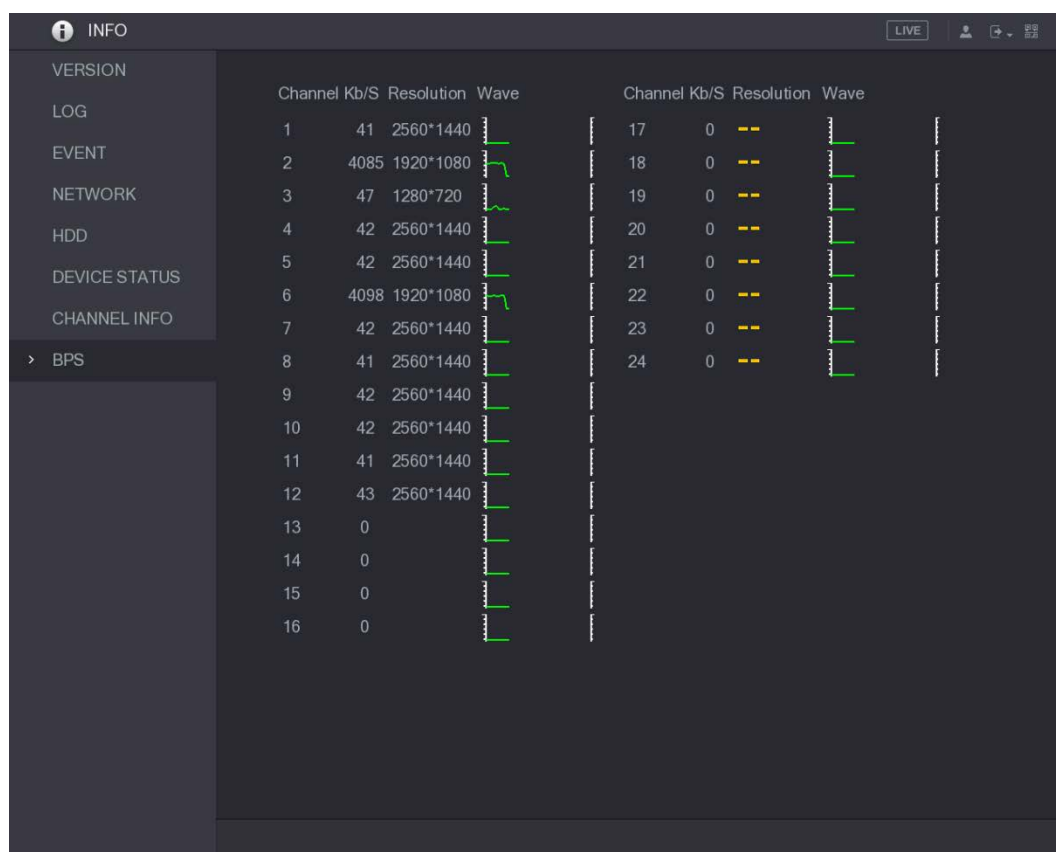
Channel	Format
1	--
2	1080P ●
3	--
4	--
5	--
6	1080P ●
7	--
8	--
9	--
10	--
11	--
12	--

## 5.19.8 Viewing Data Stream Information

You can view the real-time data stream rate and resolution of each channel.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > BPS**.

Figure 5-245 BPS



## 5.20 Logout the Device

On the upper-right of the Main Menu interface or on any interface after you have entered the Main

Menu, click .

- Select **Logout**, you will log out the device.
- Select **Reboot**, the Device will be rebooted.

Select **Shutdown**, the Device will be turned off.

## 6 Web Operations



- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Besides web, you can use our Smart PSS to log in to the device. For detailed information, please refer to Smart PSS user's manual.

### 6.1 Connecting to Network



- The factory default IP of the Device is 192.168.1.108.
- The Device supports monitoring on different browsers such as Safari, fire fox, Google on Apple PC to perform the functions such as multi-channel monitoring, PTZ control, and device parameters configurations.

Step 1 Check to make sure the Device has connected to the network.

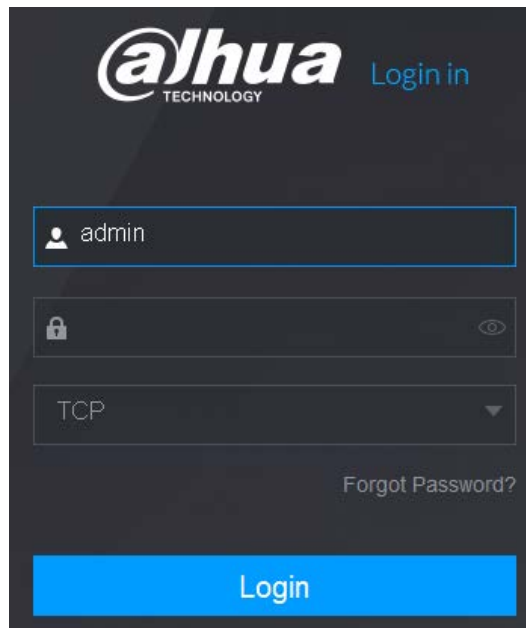
Step 2 Configure the IP address, subnet mask and gateway for the PC and the Device. For details about network configuration of the Device, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."

Step 3 On your PC, check the network connection of the Device by using "ping \*\*\*.\*\*\*.\*\*\*.\*\*\*". Usually the return value of TTL is 255.

### 6.2 Logging in to the Web


Step 1 Open the IE browser, enter the IP address of the Device, and then press Enter.

Figure 6-1 Login

The image shows a login interface for Dahua Technology. At the top, the Dahua logo and the text "Login in" are displayed. Below this, there are three input fields: a username field containing "admin", a password field with a lock icon and a toggle eye icon, and a dropdown menu currently showing "TCP". To the right of the password field is a link that says "Forgot Password?". At the bottom, there is a large blue button labeled "Login".

Step 2 Enter the user name and password.



- The default administrator account is **admin**. The password is the one that was configured during initial settings. To security your account, it is recommended to keep the password properly and change it regularly.
- Click  to display the password.
- If you forgot the password, click **Forgot Password?** to reset the password. For details about resetting the password, see "6.3 Resetting Password."

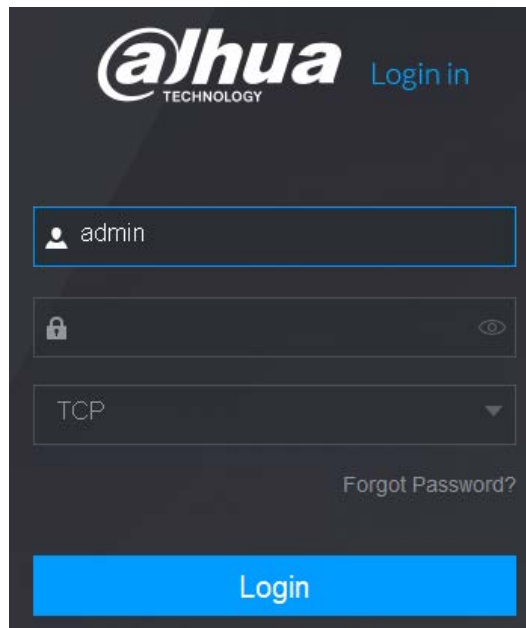
Step 3 Click **Login**.

## 6.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password through the reserved email address when you forget the password of admin account.

Step 1 Log in to the web of the Device.

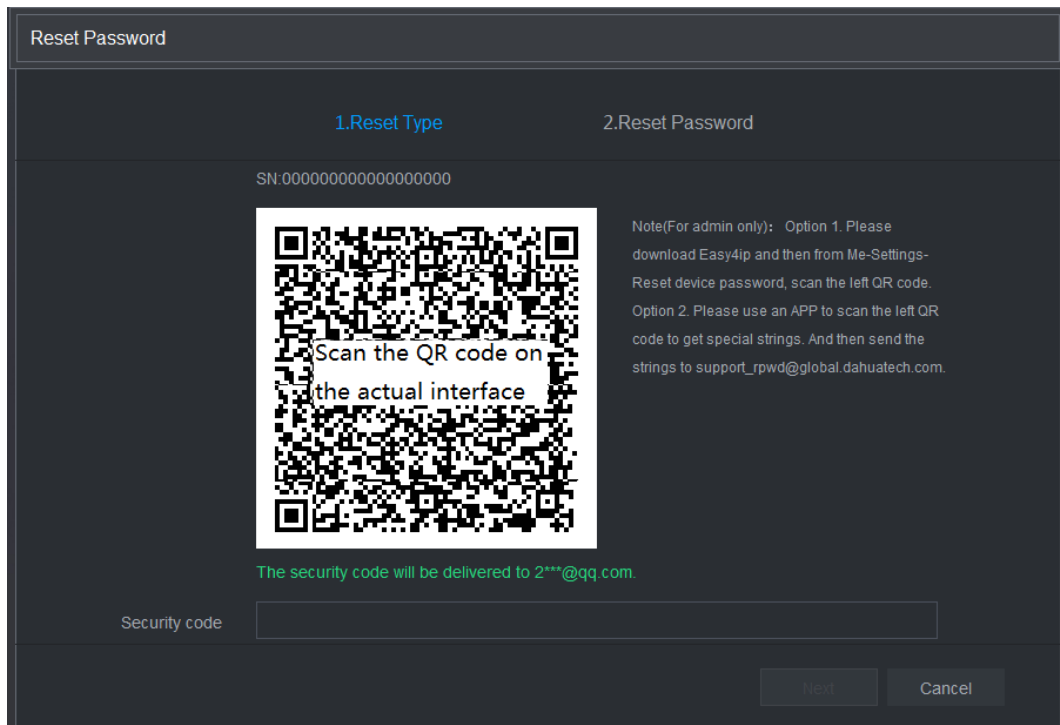
Figure 6-2 Login



The login interface features the Dahua Technology logo at the top left and a 'Login in' link at the top right. Below the logo is a text input field containing 'admin'. Underneath is a password input field with a lock icon and a toggle eye icon. A dropdown menu is set to 'TCP'. To the right of the dropdown is a 'Forgot Password?' link. At the bottom is a large blue 'Login' button.

- Step 2** Click **Forgot Password?**.  
The **Reset the password** interface is displayed.

Figure 6-3 Reset password



The 'Reset Password' interface is divided into two tabs: '1.Reset Type' and '2.Reset Password'. Under '1.Reset Type', there is a text field for 'SN:00000000000000000000' and a QR code. A text box over the QR code says 'Scan the QR code on the actual interface'. To the right of the QR code, a note states: 'Note(For admin only): Option 1. Please download Easy4ip and then from Me-Settings-Reset device password, scan the left QR code. Option 2. Please use an APP to scan the left QR code to get special strings. And then send the strings to support\_rpwd@global.dahuatech.com.' Below the QR code, a green message says 'The security code will be delivered to 2\*\*\*@qq.com.' At the bottom left is a 'Security code' label next to an input field. At the bottom right are 'Next' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- Step 3** Follow the onscreen instructions to scan the QR code and get the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to get the security code once again, please refresh the interface.

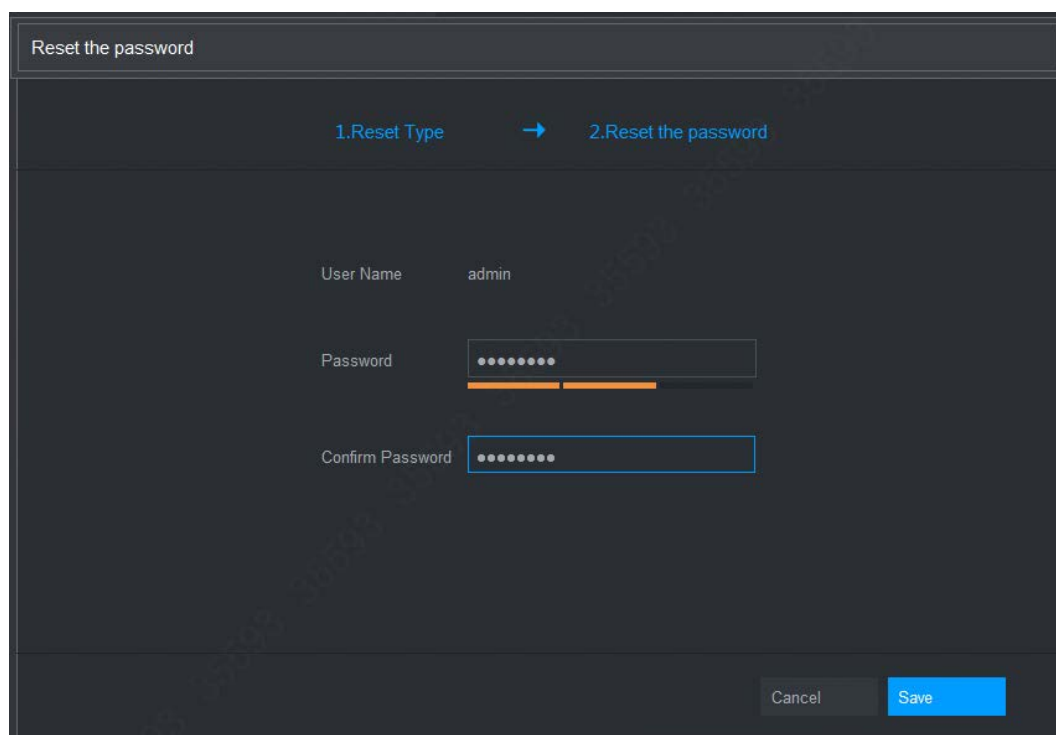
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Wrong security code entrance up to five times will cause the security code locked for five minutes. After five minutes, you can continue to use this security code.

**Step 4** In the **Security code** box, enter the security code received in your reserved email box.

**Step 5** Click **Next**.

The new password resetting interface is displayed.

Figure 6-4 New password



**Step 6** In the **Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.



The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contain at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding "", "", ";", ":" and "&").

**Step 7** Click **Save**. The password resetting is started.

After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed to indicate the result and you will see the login interface is displayed. Then you can use the new password to log in to the web.









## 6.4 Introducing Web Main Menu


After you have logged in to the web, the main menu is displayed.

Figure 6-5 Main menu



Table 6-1 Main menu description

No.	Icon	Description
1		Includes configuration menu through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.
2	None	Displays system date and time.
3		When you point to  , the current user account is displayed.
4		Click  , select <b>Logout</b> , <b>Reboot</b> , or <b>Shutdown</b> according to your actual situation.
5		Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."</li> </ul>

No.	Icon	Description
6		Displays the web main menu.
7	None	<p>Includes eight function tiles: <b>LIVE</b>, <b>VIDEO</b>, <b>ALARM</b>, <b>IVS</b>, <b>IoT</b>, <b>BACKUP</b>, <b>DISPLAY</b>, and <b>AUDIO</b>. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>LIVE</b>: You can perform the operations such as viewing real-time video, configuring channel layout, setting PTZ controls, and using smart talk and instant record functions if needed.</li> <li>● <b>VIDEO</b>: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.</li> <li>● <b>ALARM</b>: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions.</li> <li>● <b>IVS</b>: Configure the behavior detections by drawing rules for detecting tripwire, intrusion, abandoned objects, and missing objects.</li> <li>● <b>IoT</b>: You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera and configure the alarm event settings.</li> <li>● <b>BACKUP</b>: Search and back up the video files to the local PC or external storage device such as USB storage device.</li> <li>● <b>DISPLAY</b>: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function.</li> <li>● <b>AUDIO</b>: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.</li> </ul>

## 7 FAQ

### 1. DVR cannot boot up properly.

There are following possibilities:

- Input power is not correct.
- Power connection is not correct.
- Power switch button is damaged.
- Program upgrade is wrong.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with HDD jumper configuration.
- Seagate DB35.1, DB35.2, SV35 or Maxtor 17-g has compatibility problem. Please upgrade to the latest version to solve this problem.
- Front panel error.
- Main board is damaged.

### 2. DVR frequently shuts down or stops running.

There are following possibilities:

- Input voltage is not stable or it is too low.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with jumper configuration.
- Button power is not enough.
- Front video signal is not stable.
- Working environment is too harsh, too much dust.
- Hardware malfunction.

### 3. Hard disk cannot be detected.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD is broken.
- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD cable connection is loose.
- Main board SATA port is broken.

### 4. There is no video output whether it is one-channel, multiple-channel or all-channel output.

There are following possibilities:

- Program is not compatible. Please upgrade to the latest version.
- Brightness is 0. Please restore factory default setup.
- There is no video input signal or it is too weak.
- Check privacy mask setup or your screen saver.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

### 5. Real-time video color is distorted.

There are following possibilities:

- When using BNC output, NTSC and PAL setup is not correct. The real-time video becomes black and white.
- DVR and monitor resistance is not compatible.
- Video transmission is too long or degrading is too huge.
- DVR color or brightness setup is not correct.

### 6. Cannot search local records.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD is broken.
- Upgraded program is not compatible.
- The recorded file has been overwritten.
- Record function has been disabled.

#### **7. Video is distorted when searching local records.**

There are following possibilities:

- Video quality setup is too low.
- Program read error, bit data is too small. There is mosaic in the full screen. Please restart the DVR to solve this problem.
- HDD data jumper error.
- HDD malfunction.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### **8. No audio under monitor state.**

There are following possibilities:

- It is not a power picker.
- It is not a power acoustics.
- Audio cable is damaged.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### **9. There is audio under monitor state but no audio under playback state.**

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct. Please enable audio function.
- Corresponding channel has no video input. Playback is not continuous when the screen is blue.

#### **10. System time is not correct.**

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct.
- Battery contact is not correct or voltage is too low.
- Crystal oscillator is broken.

#### **11. Cannot control PTZ on DVR.**

There are following possibilities:

- Front panel PTZ error.
- PTZ decoder setup, connection or installation is not correct.
- Cable connection is not correct.
- PTZ setup is not correct.
- PTZ decoder and DVR protocol is not compatible.
- PTZ decoder and DVR address is not compatible.
- When there are several decoders, please add 120 Ohm between the PTZ decoder A/B cables furthest end to delete the reverberation or impedance matching. Otherwise the PTZ control is not stable.
- The distance is too far.

#### **12. Motion detection function does not work.**

There are following possibilities:

- Period setup is not correct.
- Motion detection zone setup is not correct.

- Sensitivity is too low.
- For some versions, there is hardware limit.

### **13. Cannot log in client-end or web.**

There are following possibilities:

- For Windows 98 or Windows ME user, please update your system to Windows 2000 sp4. Or you can install client-end software of lower version. Please note right now, our DVR is not compatible with Windows VISTA control.
- ActiveX control has been disabled.
- No dx8.1 or higher. Please upgrade display card driver.
- Network connection error.
- Network setup error.
- Password or user name is invalid.
- Client-end is not compatible with DVR program.

### **14. There is only mosaic no video when preview or playback video file remotely.**

There are following possibilities:

- Network fluency is not good.
- Client-end resources are limit.
- There is multiple-cast group setup in DVR. This mode can result in mosaic. Usually we do not recommend this mode.
- There is privacy mask or channel protection setup.
- Current user has no right to monitor.
- DVR local video output quality is not good.

### **15. Network connection is not stable.**

There are following possibilities:

- Network is not stable.
- IP address conflict.
- MAC address conflict.
- PC or DVR network card is not good.

### **16. Burn error /USB back error.**

There are following possibilities:

- Burner and DVR are in the same data cable.
- System uses too much CPU resources. Please stop record first and then begin backup.
- Data amount exceeds backup device capacity. It may result in burner error.
- Backup device is not compatible.
- Backup device is damaged.

### **17. Keyboard cannot control DVR**

There are following possibilities:

- DVR serial port setup is not correct.
- Address is not correct.
- When there are several switchers, power supply is not enough.
- Transmission distance is too far.

### **18. Alarm signal cannot be disarmed.**

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.

- Alarm output has been open manually.
- Input device error or connection is not correct.
- Some program versions may have this problem. Please upgrade your system.

**19. Alarm function is null.**

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm cable connection is not correct.
- Alarm input signal is not correct.
- There are two loops connect to one alarm device.

**20. Remote control does not work.**

There are following possibilities:

- Remote control address is not correct.
- Distance is too far or control angle is too small.
- Remote control battery power is low.
- Remote control is damaged or DVR front panel is damaged.

**21. Record storage period is not enough.**

There are following possibilities:

- Camera quality is too low. Lens is dirty. Camera is installed against the light. Camera aperture setup is not correct.
- HDD capacity is not enough.
- HDD is damaged.

**22. Cannot playback the downloaded file.**

There are following possibilities:

- There is no media player.
- No DXB8.1 or higher graphic acceleration software.
- There is no DivX503Bundle.exe control when you play the file transformed to AVI via media player.
- No DivX503Bundle.exe or ffdshow-2004 1012 .exe in Windows XP OS.

**23. Forgot local menu operation password or network password**

Please contact your local service engineer or our sales person for help. We can guide you to solve this problem.

**24. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate for this website is for other address.**

Please create server certificate again.

**25. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate is not trusted.**

Please download root certificate again.

**26. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate has expired or is not valid yet.**

Please make sure your PC time is the same as the device time.

**27. I connect the general analog camera to the device, there is no video output.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check camera power supplying, data cable connection and other items.
- This series device does not support the analog camera of all brands. Please make sure the device supports general standard definition analog camera.

**28. I connect the standard definition analog camera or the coaxial camera to the device, there is no video output.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.
- For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE** to select corresponding channel type and then restart the DVR.

**29. I cannot connect to the IP channel.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check the camera is online or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, user name, password, connection protocol, and port number).
- The camera has set the allowlist (Only the specified devices can connect to the camera).

**30. After I connected to the IP channel, the one-window output is OK, but there is no multiple-window output.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check the sub stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera sub stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).

**31. After I connected to the IP channel, the multiple-window output is OK, but there is no one-window output.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check there is video from the IP channel or not. Please go to the **Main Menu > INFO > BPS** to view bit stream real-time information.
- Check the main stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the main stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check camera network transmission has reached the threshold or not. Please check the online user of the camera.

**32. After I connected to the IP channel, there is no video output in the one-window or the multiple-window mode. But I can see there is bit stream.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check the main stream/sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream/sub stream resolution or not (such as 1080P, 720P, 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check the camera setup. Please make sure It supports the products of other manufacturers.

**33. DDNS registration failed or cannot access the device domain name.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device is connected to the WAN. Please check the device has got the IP address if the PPPoE can dial. If there is a router, please check the router to make sure the device IP is online.
- Check the corresponding protocol of the DDNS is enabled. Check the DDNS function is OK or not.
- Check DNS setup is right or not. Default Google DNS server is 8.8.8.8, 8.8.5.5. You can use different DNS provided by your ISP.

**34. I cannot use the P2P function on my cell phone or the WEB.**

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device P2P function is enabled or not. (Main menu->Setting->Network->P2P)

- Check the device is in the WAN or not.
- Check cell phone P2P login mode is right or not.
- It is the specified device P2P login port or not when you are using P2P client.
- Check user name or password is right or not.
- Check P2P SN is right or not. You can use the cell phone to scan the QR code on the device P2P interface (**Main Menu > Network > P2P**), or you can use the version information of the WEB to confirm. (For some previous series products, the device SN is the main board SN, it may result in error.)

### 35. I connect the standard definition camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the DVR supports standard definition signal or not. Only some series product supports analog standard definition signal, coaxial signal input.
- Check channel type is right or not. For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE** to select corresponding channel type (such as analog) and then restart the DVR. In this way, the DVR can recognize the analog standard definition.
- Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

### 36. I cannot connect to the IP camera.

There are following possibilities:

- Check DVR supports IP channel or not. Only some series products support A/D switch function, it can switch analog channel to the IP channel to connect to the IP camera. From **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE**, select the last channel to switch to the IP channel. Some series product products support IP channel extension, it supports N+N mode.
- Check the IPC and the DVR is connected or not. Please go to the **Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION** to search to view the IP camera is online or not. Or you can go to the **Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test**, you can input IP camera IP address and then click the Test button to check you can connect to the IP camera or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, manufacturer, port, user name, password, and remote channel number).

## Daily Maintenance

- Please use the brush to clean the board, socket connector and the chassis regularly.
- The device shall be soundly earthed in case there is audio/video disturbance. Keep the device away from the static voltage or induced voltage.
- Please unplug the power cable before you remove the audio/video signal cable, RS-232 or RS-485 cable.
- Do not connect the TV to the local video output port (VOUT). It may result in video output circuit.
- Always shut down the device properly. Please use the shutdown function in the menu, or you can press the power button in the front panel for at least three seconds to shut down the device. Otherwise it may result in HDD malfunction.
- Please make sure the device is away from the direct sunlight or other heating sources. Please keep the sound ventilation.
- Please check and maintain the device regularly.



# Appendix 1 Glossary

The abbreviations in this glossary are related to the Manual.

Appendix Table 1-1 Glossary

Abbreviations	Full term
BNC	Bayonet Nut Connector
CBR	Constant Bit Rate
CIF	Common Intermediate Format
DDNS	Dynamic Domain Name Service
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
DST	Daylight Saving Time
DVR	Digital Video Recorder
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
HDD	Hard Disk Drive
HDMI	High Definition Multimedia Interface
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
IoT	Internet of Things
IP	Internet Protocol
IVS	Intelligent Video System
LAN	Local Area Network
MAC	Media Access Control
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
NTP	Network Time Protocol
NTSC	National Television Standards Committee
ONVIF	Open Network Video Interface Forum
PAL	Phase Alteration Line
PAT	Port Address Translation
POS	Point of Sale
PPPoE	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet
PSS	Professional Surveillance Software
PTZ	Pan Tilt Zoom
RCA	Radio Corporation of American
RTSP	Real Time Streaming Protocol
S.M.A.R.T	Self-Monitoring-Analysis and Reporting Technology
SATA	Serial Advanced Technology Attachment
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UPnP	Universal Plug and Play

Abbreviations	Full term
VBR	Variable Bit Rate
VGA	Video Graphics Array
WAN	Wide Area Network

## Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation

Calculate total capacity needed by each DVR according to video recording (video recording type and video file storage time).

**Step 1** According to Formula (1) to calculate storage capacity  $q_i$  that is the capacity of each channel needed for each hour, unit MB.

$$\text{Formula (1): } q_i = d_i \div 8 \times 3600 \div 1024$$

In the formula:  $d_i$  means the bit rate, unit Kbit/s

**Step 2** After video time requirement is confirmed, according to Formula (2) to calculate the storage capacity  $m_i$ , which is storage of each channel needed unit MB.

$$\text{Formula (2): } m_i = q_i \times h_i \times D_i$$

In the formula:

- $h_i$  means the recording time for each day (hour)
- $D_i$  means number of days for which the video shall be kept

**Step 3** According to Formula (3) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in the DVR during **scheduled video recording**.

$$\text{Formula (3): } q_T = \sum_{i=1}^c m_i$$

In the formula:  $c$  means total number of channels in one DVR

**Step 4** According to Formula (4) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in DVR during **alarm video recording (including motion detection)**.

$$\text{Formula (4): } q_T = \sum_{i=1}^c m_i \times a\%$$

In the formula:  $a\%$  means alarm occurrence rate

You can refer to the following table for the file size in one hour per channel. (All the data listed below are for reference only.)

Appendix Table 2-1 HDD capacity

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
96 Kbps	42 MB	128 Kbps	56 MB
160 Kbps	70 MB	192 Kbps	84 MB
224 Kbps	98 MB	256 Kbps	112 MB

Bit stream size (max)	File size	Bit stream size (max)	File size
320 Kbps	140 MB	384 Kbps	168 MB
448 Kbps	196 MB	512 Kbps	225 MB
640 Kbps	281 MB	768 Kbps	337 MB
896 Kbps	393 MB	1024 Kbps	450 MB
1280 Kbps	562 MB	1536 Kbps	675 MB
1792 Kbps	787 MB	2048 Kbps	900 MB

## Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices

### Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list

Appendix Table 3-1 Compatible USB

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	512 MB
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	1 GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2 GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	256 MB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	512 MB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	1 GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	2 GB
Kingston	DataTraveler II	1 GB
Kingston	DataTraveler II	2 GB
Kingston	DataTraveler	1 GB
Kingston	DataTraveler	2 GB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	128 MB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	256 MB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	512 MB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	1 GB
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	2 GB
Kingax	Super Stick	128 MB
Kingax	Super Stick	256 MB
Kingax	Super Stick	512 MB
Kingax	Super Stick	1 GB
Kingax	Super Stick	2 GB
Netac	U210	128 MB
Netac	U210	256 MB
Netac	U210	512 MB
Netac	U210	1 GB
Netac	U210	2 GB
Netac	U208	4 GB
Teclast	Ti Cool	128 MB
Teclast	Ti Cool	256 MB
Teclast	Ti Cool	512 MB
Teclast	Ti Cool	1 GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2 GB
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	8 GB
Sandisk	Ti Cool	2 GB
Sandisk	Hongjiao	4 GB

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
Lexar	Lexar	256 MB
Kingston	Data Traveler	1 GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	16 GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	32 GB
Aigo	L8315	16 GB
Sandisk	250	16 GB
Kingston	Data Traveler Locker+	32 GB
Netac	U228	8 GB

## Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list

Appendix Table 3-2 Compatible SD card

Manufacturer	Standard	Capacity	Card type
Transcend	SDHC6	16 GB	Big
Kingston	SDHC4	4 GB	Big
Kingston	SD	2 GB	Big
Kingston	SD	1 GB	Big
Sandisk	SDHC2	8 GB	Small
Sandisk	SD	1 GB	Small

## Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list

Appendix Table 3-3 Compatible portable HDD

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
YDStar	YDstar HDD box	40 GB
Netac	Netac	80 GB
Iomega	Iomega RPHD-CG" RNAJ50U287	250 GB
WD Elements	WCAVY1205901	1.5 TB
Newsmy	Liangjian	320 GB
WD Elements	WDBAAR5000ABK-00	500 GB
WD Elements	WDBAAU0015HBK-00	1.5 TB
Seagate	FreeAgent Go(ST905003F)	500 GB
Aigo	H8169	500 GB

## Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List

Appendix Table 3-4 Compatible USB DVD

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	SE-S084
BenQ	LD2000-2K4

## Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List

Appendix Table 3-5 Compatible SATA DVD

Manufacturer	Model
LG	GH22NS30
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.A
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.F
Samsung	SH-224BB/CHXH
SONY	DRU-V200S
SONY	DRU-845S
SONY	AW-G170S
Pioneer	DVR-217CH

## Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List



Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. Here we recommend HDD of 500 GB to 4 TB capacity.

Appendix Table 3-6 Compatible SATA HDD

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST1000VM002	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST2000VM003	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST3000VM002	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST4000VM000	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST1000VX000	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST2000VX000	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST3000VX000	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST1000VX002	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST2000VX004	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST3000VX004	3 TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX001	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX005	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX003	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX008	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX006	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX010	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX000	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX007	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST5000VX0001	5 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0001	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0023	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0003	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0002	8 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0022	8 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST10000VX0004	10 TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD (Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST1000VX003	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	(Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST2000VX005	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	(Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST3000VX005	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	(Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST4000VX002	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	(Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST5000VX0011	5 TB	SATA
Seagate	(Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST6000VX0011	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	(Support HDD data recovery offered by Seagate)	ST8000VX0012	8 TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD10EURX (EOL)	1 TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD20EURX (EOL)	2 TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD30EURX (EOL)	3 TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD40EURX (EOL)	4 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURX	1 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURX	2 TB	SATA



Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURX	3 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURX	4 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURX	5 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURX	6 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PUZX	8 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURZ	1 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURZ	2 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURZ	3 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURZ	4 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURZ	5 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURZ	6 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PURZ	8 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD4NPURX	4 TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD6NPURX	6 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA100V	1 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA200V	2 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA300V	3 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA200V	2 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA300V	3 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA400V	4 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA400V	4 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA500V	5 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST1000NM0033	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST2000NM0033	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST3000NM0033	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST4000NM0033	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST1000NM0055	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST2000NM0055	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST3000NM0005	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST4000NM0035	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST6000NM0115	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST8000NM0055	8 TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST10000NM0016	10 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST4000NM0024	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SATA interface)	ST6000NM0024	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST1000NM0023	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST2000NM0023	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST3000NM0023	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST4000NM0023	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0014	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST1000NM0045	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST2000NM0045	2 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST3000NM0025	3 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST4000NM0025	4 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0095	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0034	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST8000NM0075	8 TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1003FBYZ	1 TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1004FBYZ (replace WD1003FBYZ)	1 TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2000FYYZ	2 TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2004FBYZ (replace WD2000FYYZ)	2 TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD3000FYYZ	3 TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD4000FYYZ	4 TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD2000F9YZ	2 TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD3000F9YZ	3 TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4000F9YZ	4 TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4002FYYZ	4 TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6001FSYZ	6 TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6002FRYZ	6 TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD8002FRYZ	8 TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS724030ALA640	3 TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS726060ALE610	6 TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728060ALE600	6 TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728080ALE600	8 TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726020AL5210	2 TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726040AL5210	4 TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726060AL5210	6 TB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST320VT000	320 GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST500VT000	500 GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST2000LM003 (EOL)	2 TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD050V	500 GB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD100V	1 TB	SATA
SAMSUNG	HN-M101MBB	HN-M101MBB (EOL)	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise series	ST1000NX0313	1 TB	SATA
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise series	ST2000NX0253	2 TB	SATA

## Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List



Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. And you can use the USB cable with the model recommended to set USB burner.

Appendix Table 4-1 Compatible CD/DVD

Manufacturer	Model	Port Type	Type
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S70U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	AW-G170S	SATA	DVD-RW
Samsung	TS-H653A	SATA	DVD-RW
Panasonic	SW-9588-C	SATA	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
BenQ	5232WI	USB	DVD-RW

## Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List

Please refer to the following table form compatible displayer list.

Appendix Table 5-1 Compatible displayer

Brand	Model	Dimension (Unit: inch)
BENQ (LCD)	ET-0007-TA	19-inch (wide screen)
DELL (LCD)	E178FPc	17-inch
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T4	17-inch
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T3	17-inch
HFNOVO (LCD)	LXB-L17C	17-inch
SANGSUNG (LCD)	225BW	22-inch (wide screen)
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-FD17069HB	17-inch
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-HF769A	17-inch
HFNOVO (CRT)	LX-GJ556D	17-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2494HS	24-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2350	23-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2250	22-inch
Samsung (LCD)	P2370G	23-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2043	20-inch
Samsung (LCD)	2243EW	22-inch
Samsung (LCD)	SMT-1922P	19-inch
Samsung (LCD)	T190	19-inch
Samsung (LCD)	T240	24-inch
LG (LCD)	W1942SP	19-inch
LG (LCD)	W2243S	22-inch
LG (LCD)	W2343T	23-inch
BENQ (LCD)	G900HD	18.5-inch
BENQ (LCD)	G2220HD	22-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	230E	23-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220CW9	23-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220BW9	24-inch
PHILIPS (LCD)	220EW9	25-inch

## Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher

Appendix Table 6-1 Compatible switcher

Brand	Model	network working mode
D-Link	DES-1016D	10/100M self-adaptive
D-Link	DES-1008D	10/100M self-adaptive
Ruijie	RG-S1926S	Five network modes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• AUTO</li><li>• HALF-10M</li><li>• FULL-10M</li><li>• HALF-100M</li><li>• FULL-100M</li></ul>
H3C	H3C-S1024	10/100M self-adaptive
TP-LINK	TL-SF1016	10/100M self-adaptive
TP-LINK	TL-SF1008+	10/100M self-adaptive

## Appendix 7 Earthing

### Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge

Surge is a short current or voltage change during a very short time. In the circuit, it lasts for microsecond. In a 220 V circuit, the 5 KV or 10 KV voltage change during a very short time (about microseconds) can be called a surge. The surge comes from two ways: external surge and internal surge.

- The external surge: The external surge mainly comes from the thunder lightning. Or it comes from the voltage change during the on/off operation in the electric power cable.
- The internal surge: The research finds 88% of the surge from the low voltage comes from the internal of the building such as the air conditioning, elevator, electric welding, air compressor, water pump, power button, duplicating machine and other device of inductive load.

The lightning surge is far above the load level the PC or the micro devices can support. In most cases, the surge can result in electric device chip damage, PC error code, accelerating the part aging, data loss and etc. Even when a small 20 horsepower inductive engine boots up or stops, the surge can reach 3000 V to 5000 V, which can adversely affect the electronic devices that use the same distribution box.

To protect the device, you need to evaluate its environment, the lighting affection degree objectively. Because surge has close relationship with the voltage amplitude, frequency, network structure, device voltage-resistance, protection level, ground and etc. The thunder proof work shall be a systematic project, emphasizing the all-round protection (including building, transmission cable, device, ground and etc.). There shall be comprehensive management and the measures shall be scientific, reliable, practical and economic. Considering the high voltage during the inductive thundering, the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard on the energy absorbing step by step theory and magnitude classification in the protection zone, you need to prepare multiple precaution levels.

You can use the lightning rod, lightning strap or the lightning net to reduce the damage to the building, personal injury or the property.

The lightning protection device can be divided into three types:

- Power lightning arrester: There are 220 V single-phase lightning arrester and 380 V three-phase lightning arrester (mainly in parallel connection, sometimes use series connection). You can parallel connect the power lightning arrester in the electric cable to reduce the short-time voltage change and release the surge current. From the BUS to the device, there are usually three levels so that system can reduce the voltage and release the current step by step to remove the thunderstorm energy and guarantee the device safety. You can select the replaceable module type, the terminal connection type and portable socket according to your requirement.
- Signal lightning arrester: This device is mainly used in the PC network, communication system. The connection type is serial connection. Once you connected the signal lightning arrester with the signal port, it can cut the channel of the thunderstorm to the device, and on the other hand, it can discharge the current to the ground to guarantee the device proper work. The signal lightning arrester has many specifications, and widely used in many devices such as telephone, network, analog communication, digital communication, cable TV and satellite antenna. For all the input port, especially those from the outdoor, you need to install the signal lightning arrester.

- Antenna feed cable lightning arrester: It is suitable for antenna system of the transmitter or the device system to receive the wireless signal. It uses the serial connection too.

Please note, when you select the lightning arrester, please pay attention to the port type and the earthing reliability. In some important environment, you need to use special shielded cable. Do not parallel connect the thunder proof ground cable with the ground cable of the lightning rod. Please make sure they are far enough and grounded respectively.

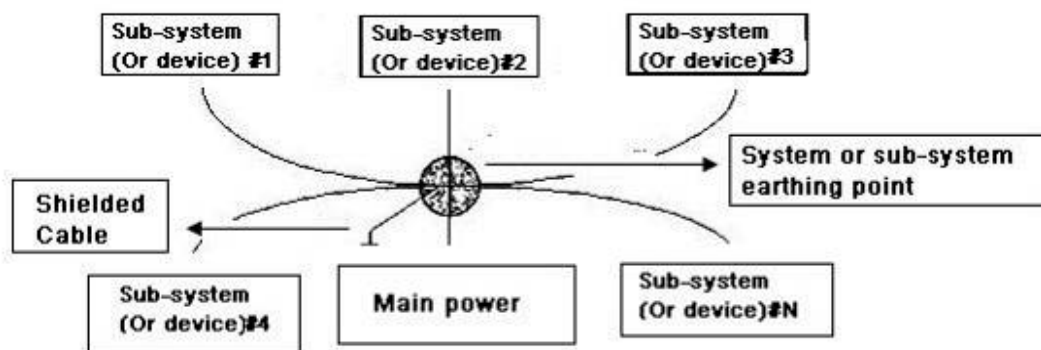
## Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes

We all know the earthing is the most complicated technology in the electromagnetism compatibility design since there is no systematic theory or module. The earthing has many modes, but the selection depends on the system structure and performance.

The following are some successfully experience from our past work.

- **One-point ground:** In the following figure you can see there is a one-point ground. This connection provides common point to allow signal to be transmitted in many circuits. If there is no common point, the error signal transmission occurred. In the one-point ground mode, each circuit is just grounded only and they are connected at the same point. Since there is only one common point, there is no circuit and so, there is no interference.

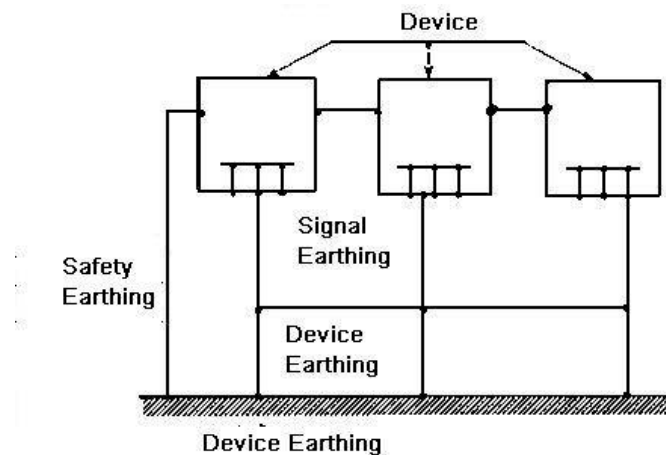
Appendix Figure 7-1 One-point ground



- **Multiple-point ground:** In the following figure, you can see the internal circuit uses the chassis as the common point. While at the same time, all devices chassis use the earthing as the common point. In this connection, the ground structure can provide the lower ground resistance because when there are multiple-point grounds; each ground cable is as short as possible. And the parallel cable connection can reduce the total conductance of the ground conductor. In the high-frequency circuit, you need to use the multiple-point ground mode and each cable needs to connect to the ground. The length shall be less than the 1/20 of the signal wavelength.

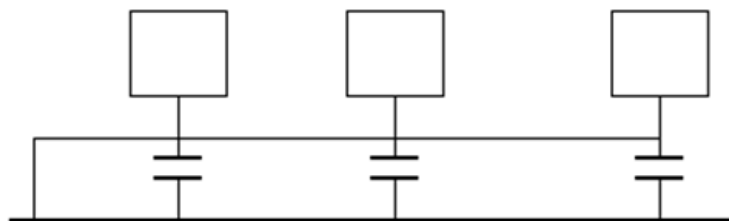


Appendix Figure 7-2 Multiple-point ground



- Mixed ground:** The mixed ground consists of the feature of the one-point ground and multiple-point ground. For example, the power in the system needs to use the one-point ground mode while the radio frequency signal requires the multiple-point ground. So, you can use the following figure to earth. For the direct current (DC), the capacitance is open circuit and the circuit is one-point ground. For the radio frequency signal, the capacitance is conductive and the circuit adopts multiple-point ground.

Appendix Figure 7-3 Mixed ground



When connecting devices of huge size (the device physical dimension and connection cable is big comparing with the wave path of existed interference), then there is possibility of interference when the current goes through the chassis and cable. In this situation, the interference circuit path usually lies in the system ground circuit.

When considering the earthing, you need to think about two aspects: One is the system compatibility, and the other is the external interference coupling into the earth circuit, which results in system error. For the external interference is not regular, it is not easy to resolve.

## Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System

- The monitor system shall have sound thunder proof earthing to guarantee personnel safety and device safety.
- The monitor system working ground resistance shall be less than  $1\Omega$ .
- The thunder proof ground shall adopt the special ground cable from the monitor control room to the ground object. The ground cable adopts copper insulation cable or wire and its ground

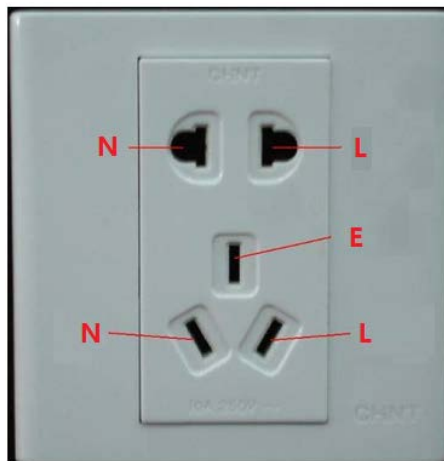
section shall be more than 20mm<sup>2</sup>.

- The ground cable of the monitor system cannot short circuit or mixed connected with the strong alternative current cable.
- For all the ground cables from the control room to the monitor system or ground cable of other monitor devices, please use the copper resistance soft cable and its section shall be more than 4mm<sup>2</sup>.
- The monitor system usually can adopt the one-point ground.
- Please connect the ground end of 3-pin socket in the monitor system to the ground port of the system (protection ground cable)

## Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter

For 220 VAC socket, from the top to the bottom, E (ground cable), N (neutral cable), L (live cable). Please refer to the following figure.

Appendix Figure 7-4 Socket



There is a shortcut way to check these cables connection is standard or not (not the accurate check).



In the following operations, the multimeter range shall be at 750 V.

### For E (earth cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750 VAC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the E port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current earth cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can know there is inductive current and the earth cable connection is not proper.

Appendix Figure 7-5 Check earth cable



### For L (live cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750 VAC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the L port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 125, then you can see current live cable connection is standard. If the value is less than 60, then you can know current live cable connection is not proper or it is not the live cable at all.

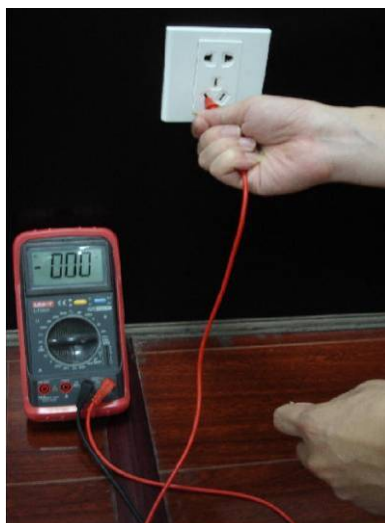
Appendix Figure 7-6 Check live cable



### For N (Neutral cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750 VAC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the N port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current N cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can see there is inductive current and the neutral cable connection is not proper. If the value is 120, then you can know that you have misconnected the neutral cable to the live cable.

Appendix Figure 7-7 Check neutral cable



## Appendix 8 RJ45-RS232 Connection Cable Definition

Here we are going to make standard RS-232 port and standard RJ-45 (T568B).

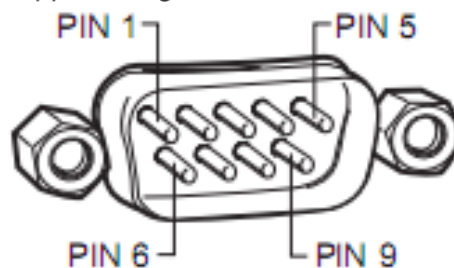
Please refer to the following figure for RJ-45 cable definition.

Appendix Figure 8-1 RJ-45 cable



Please refer to the following figure for RS-232 pin definition.

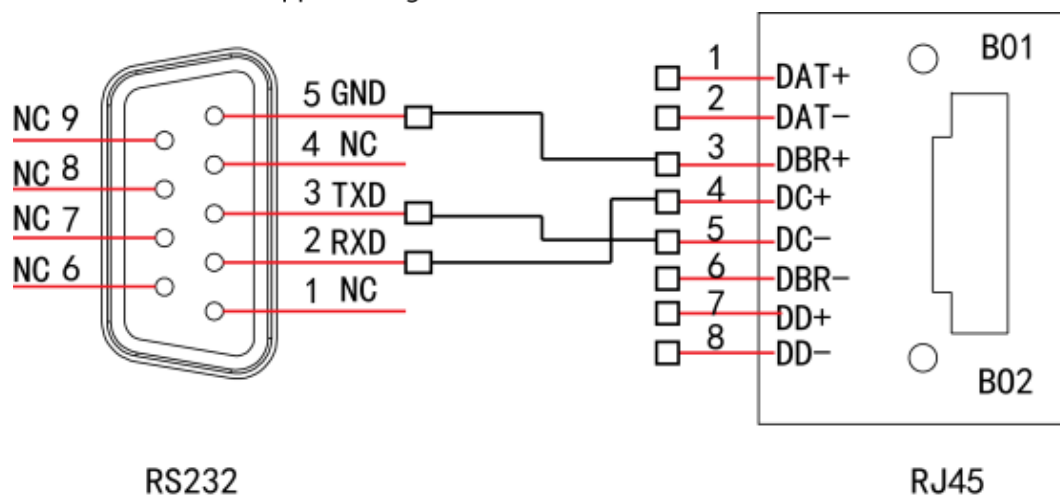
Appendix Figure 8-2 RS-232



### Cross Connection

Please refer to the following figure for connection information.

Appendix Figure 8-3 Cross connection



Please refer to the following table for detailed crossover cable connection information.

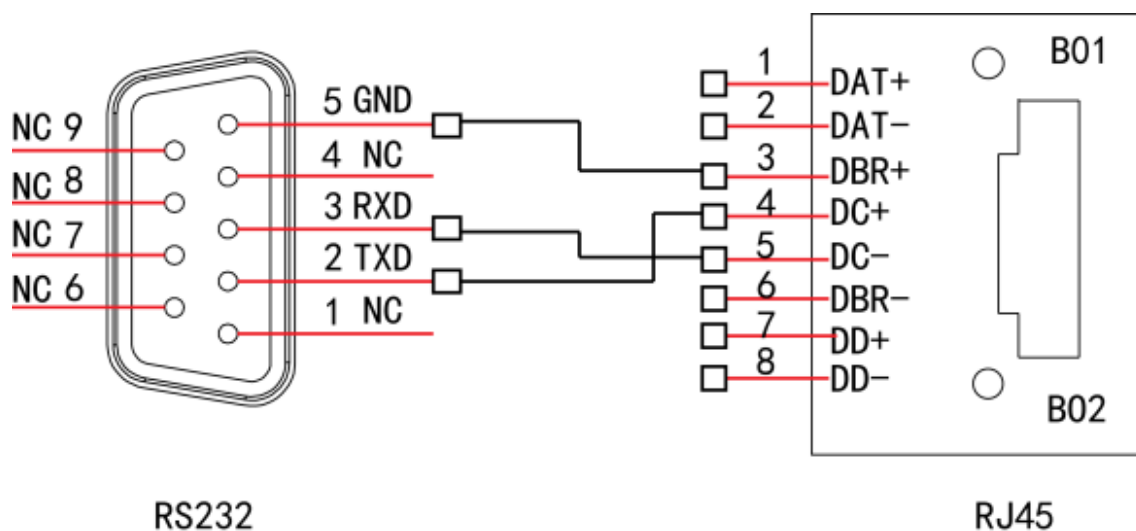
Appendix Table 8-1 Crossover cable connection

RJ-45 (T568B)	RJ-45 (Network cable)	RS-232	Signal Description
4	Blue	2	RXD
5	White and blue	3	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

## Straight Connection

Please refer to the following figure for straight cable connection information.

Appendix Figure 8-4 Straight cable connection



Please refer to the following table for straight connection information.

Appendix Table 8-2 Straight connection

RJ-45 (T568B)	RJ-45 (Network cable)	RS-232	Signal Description
4	Blue	3	RXD
5	White and blue	2	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

## Appendix 9 Cybersecurity Recommendations

Cybersecurity is more than just a buzzword: it's something that pertains to every device that is connected to the internet. IP video surveillance is not immune to cyber risks, but taking basic steps toward protecting and strengthening networks and networked appliances will make them less susceptible to attacks. Below are some tips and recommendations on how to create a more secured security system.

### **Mandatory actions to be taken for basic device network security:**

#### **1. Use Strong Passwords**

Please refer to the following suggestions to set passwords:

- The length should not be less than 8 characters;
- Include at least two types of characters; character types include upper and lower case letters, numbers and symbols;
- Do not contain the account name or the account name in reverse order;
- Do not use continuous characters, such as 123, abc, etc.;
- Do not use overlapped characters, such as 111, aaa, etc.;

#### **2. Update Firmware and Client Software in Time**

- According to the standard procedure in Tech-industry, we recommend to keep your device (such as NVR, DVR, IP camera, etc.) firmware up-to-date to ensure the system is equipped with the latest security patches and fixes. When the device is connected to the public network, it is recommended to enable the "auto-check for updates" function to obtain timely information of firmware updates released by the manufacturer.
- We suggest that you download and use the latest version of client software.

### **"Nice to have" recommendations to improve your device network security:**

#### **1. Physical Protection**

We suggest that you perform physical protection to device, especially storage devices. For example, place the device in a special computer room and cabinet, and implement well-done access control permission and key management to prevent unauthorized personnel from carrying out physical contacts such as damaging hardware, unauthorized connection of removable device (such as USB flash disk, serial port), etc.

#### **2. Change Passwords Regularly**

We suggest that you change passwords regularly to reduce the risk of being guessed or cracked.

#### **3. Set and Update Passwords Reset Information Timely**

The device supports password reset function. Please set up related information for password reset in time, including the end user's mailbox and password protection questions. If the information changes, please modify it in time. When setting password protection questions, it is suggested not to use those that can be easily guessed.

#### **4. Enable Account Lock**

The account lock feature is enabled by default, and we recommend you to keep it on to guarantee the account security. If an attacker attempts to log in with the wrong password several times, the corresponding account and the source IP address will be locked.

#### **5. Change Default HTTP and Other Service Ports**

We suggest you to change default HTTP and other service ports into any set of numbers between 1024~65535, reducing the risk of outsiders being able to guess which ports you are using.

#### **6. Enable HTTPS**

We suggest you to enable HTTPS, so that you visit Web service through a secure communication channel.

#### **7. MAC Address Binding**

We recommend you to bind the IP and MAC address of the gateway to the device, thus reducing the risk of ARP spoofing.

#### **8. Assign Accounts and Privileges Reasonably**

According to business and management requirements, reasonably add users and assign a minimum set of permissions to them.

#### **9. Disable Unnecessary Services and Choose Secure Modes**

If not needed, it is recommended to turn off some services such as SNMP, SMTP, UPnP, etc., to reduce risks.

If necessary, it is highly recommended that you use safe modes, including but not limited to the following services:

- SNMP: Choose SNMP v3, and set up strong encryption passwords and authentication passwords.
- SMTP: Choose TLS to access mailbox server.
- FTP: Choose SFTP, and set up strong passwords.
- AP hotspot: Choose WPA2-PSK encryption mode, and set up strong passwords.

#### **10. Audio and Video Encrypted Transmission**

If your audio and video data contents are very important or sensitive, we recommend that you use encrypted transmission function, to reduce the risk of audio and video data being stolen during transmission.

Reminder: encrypted transmission will cause some loss in transmission efficiency.

#### **11. Secure Auditing**

- Check online users: we suggest that you check online users regularly to see if the device is logged in without authorization.
- Check device log: By viewing the logs, you can know the IP addresses that were used to log in to your devices and their key operations.

#### **12. Network Log**

Due to the limited storage capacity of the device, the stored log is limited. If you need to save the log for a long time, it is recommended that you enable the network log function to ensure that the critical logs are synchronized to the network log server for tracing.

#### **13. Construct a Safe Network Environment**

In order to better ensure the safety of device and reduce potential cyber risks, we recommend:

- Disable the port mapping function of the router to avoid direct access to the intranet devices from external network.
- The network should be partitioned and isolated according to the actual network needs. If there are no communication requirements between two sub networks, it is suggested to use VLAN, network GAP and other technologies to partition the network, so as to achieve the network isolation effect.



- Establish the 802.1x access authentication system to reduce the risk of unauthorized access to private networks.
- Enable IP/MAC address filtering function to limit the range of hosts allowed to access the device.

ENABLING A SAFER SOCIETY AND SMARTER LIVING

ZHEJIANG DAHUA VISION TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD.

Address: No.1199 Bin'an Road, Binjiang District, Hangzhou, P. R. China | Website: [www.dahuasecurity.com](http://www.dahuasecurity.com) | Postcode: 310053

Email: [overseas@dahuatech.com](mailto:overseas@dahuatech.com) | Fax: +86-571-87688815 | Tel: +86-571-87688883